zoom-zoom

mazda

MAZDA MX-5

Owner's Manual

Image photo

MAZDA MX-5

Zoom-Zoom

All children instinctively know it.

A few adults still remember it.

One unique car company refuses to outgrow it.

In grown-up language, it means the exhilaration and

liberation that come from experiencing sheer motion.

But as usual, children put it much better and simply call it " Go Zoom-Zoom."

We practice it every day.

It's why we build the kind of cars we do.

Zoom-Zoom.

Can we re-awaken it in you today?

A Word to Mazda Owners

Thank you for choosing a Mazda. We at Mazda design and build vehicles with complete customer satisfaction in mind.

To help ensure enjoyable and trouble-free operation of your Mazda, read this manual carefully and follow its recommendations.

Regular servicing of your vehicle by an expert repairer helps maintain both its roadworthiness and its resale value. A world-wide network of Authorised Mazda Repairers can help you with their professional servicing expertise.
Their specially trained personnel are best qualified to service your Mazda vehicle properly and exactly. Also, they are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools and equipment specially developed for servicing Mazda vehicles. When maintenance or service is necessary we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

We assure you that all of us at Mazda have an ongoing interest in your motoring pleasure and in your full satisfaction with your Mazda product.

Mazda Motor Corporation
HIROSHIMA, JAPAN

Important Notes About This Manual
Keep this manual in the boot as a handy reference for the safe and enjoyable use of your Mazda. Should you resell the vehicle, leave this manual with it for the next owner.

All specifications and descriptions are accurate at the time of printing. Because improvement is a constant goal at Mazda, we reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice and without obligation.

Please be aware that this manual applies to all models, equipment and options. As a result, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

©2016 Mazda Motor Corporation
Oct. 2016 (Print1)

How to Use This Manual

We want to help you get the most driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your owner's manual, when read from cover to cover, can do that in many ways.

Illustrations complement the words of the manual to best explain how to enjoy your Mazda. By reading your manual, you can find out about the features, important safety information, and driving under various road conditions.

The symbol below in this manual means "Do not do this" or "Do not let this happen".

References to left hand and right hand are made as if facing in the same direction the vehicle faces. Although this manual explains a left-hand-drive model, it also applies to right-hand-drive models.

Index: A good place to start is the Index, an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

You'll find several WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTEs in the manual.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which bodily injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE provides information and sometimes suggests how to make better use of your vehicle.

The following symbol, located on some parts of the vehicle, indicates that this manual contains information related to the part.
Please refer to the manual for a detailed explanation.

Table of Contents

Pictorial Index 1

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

Essential Safety Equipment 2

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Before Driving 3

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

When Driving 4

Information concerning safe driving and stopping.

Interior Features 5

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

Maintenance and Care 6

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

If Trouble Arises 7

Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

Customer Information 8

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Specifications 9

Technical information about your Mazda.

Index 10

1 Pictorial Index

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

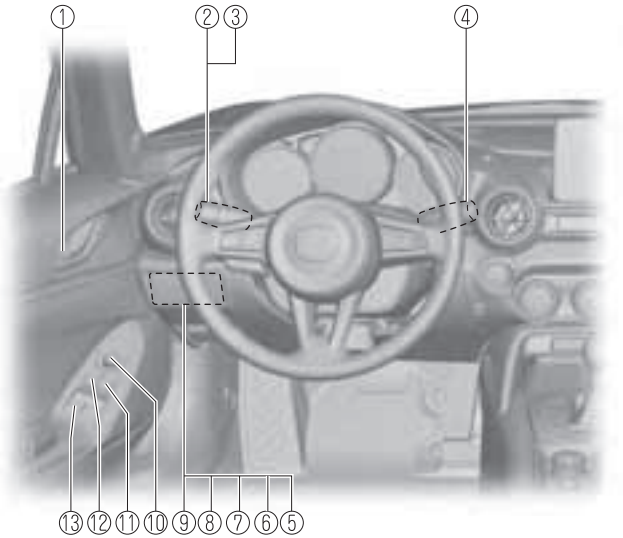
Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)..... 1-2
Interior Equipment (View A) 1-2
Interior Equipment (View B) 1-4
Interior Equipment (View C) 1-5

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model) 1-7
Interior Equipment (View A) 1-7
Interior Equipment (View B) 1-9
Interior Equipment (View C) 1-10

Exterior Overview..... 1-12
Convertible Top (Soft Top) 1-12
Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)..... 1-13

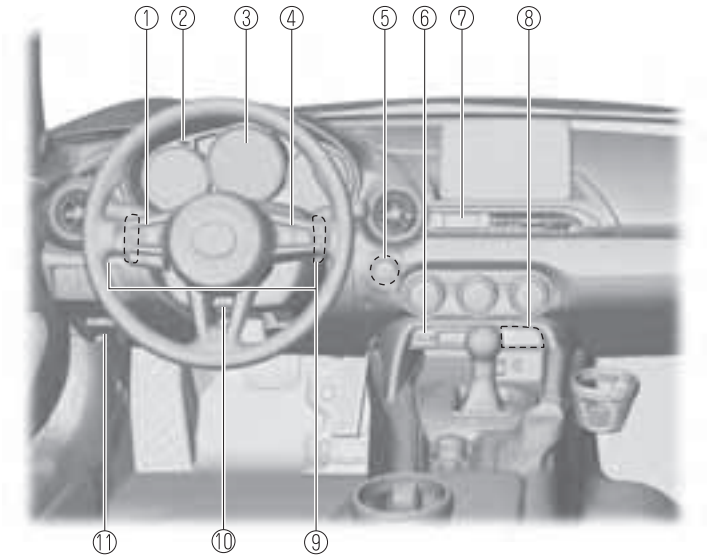
Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View A)



① Door-lock knob ..... page 3-20
② Turn and lane-change signal ..... page 4-71
③ Lighting control..... page 4-63
④ Wiper and washer lever..... page 4-72
⑤ DSC OFF switch ..... page 4-89
⑥ Tyre pressure monitoring system set switch ..... page 4-143
⑦ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch..... page 4-117
⑧ LDWS switch..... page 4-109
⑨ i-stop OFF switch..... page 4-21
⑩ Outside mirror switch..... page 3-30
⑪ Door-lock switch..... page 3-17
⑫ Power window lock switch ..... page 3-36
⑬ Power window switches..... page 3-34

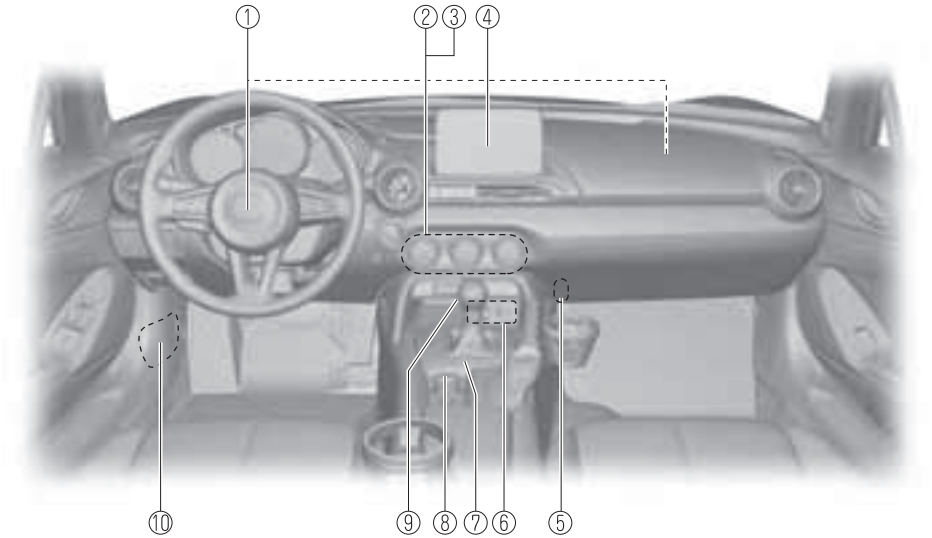
Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)



① Audio control switches..... page 5-69
② Instrument panel illumination knob ..... page 4-28
③ Instrument cluster..... page 4-24
④ Cruise control switches ..... page 4-134
⑤ Push button start..... page 4-4
⑥ Retractable fastback switch..... page 3-51
⑦ Hazard warning flasher switch..... page 4-79
⑧ Seat warmer switches..... page 2-6
⑨ Steering shift switches ..... page 4-55
⑩ Lock release lever ..... page 3-29
⑪ Bonnet release handle ..... page 6-14

Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View B)

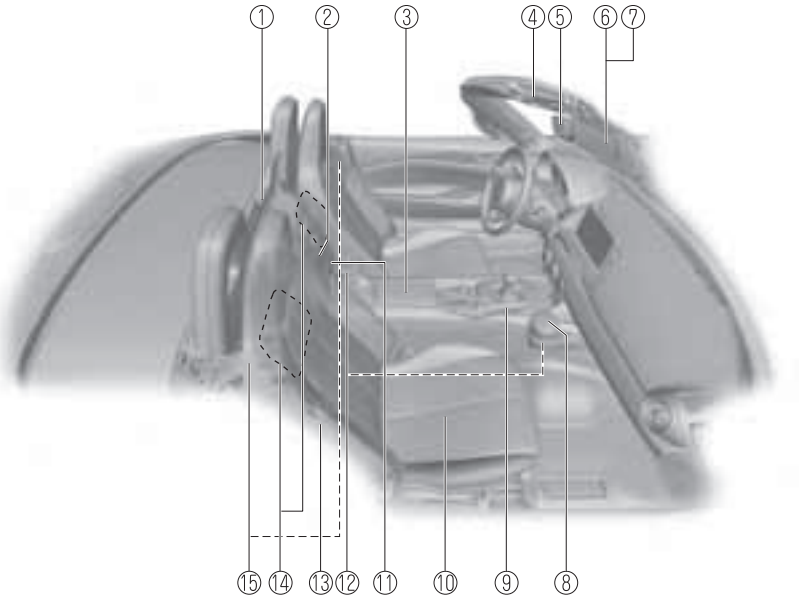


① SRS air bags ..... page 2-33
② Air-conditioning system ..... page 5-2
③ Rear window defogger switch ..... page 4-77
④ Audio system ..... page 5-14
⑤ Accessory socket ..... page 5-125
⑥ External input terminal ..... page 5-71
⑦ Drive selection switch ..... page 4-98
⑧ Commander switch ..... page 5-44
⑨ Shift lever/Selector lever ..... page 4-48, 4-51
⑩ Fuse block (Left side) ..... page 6-47

 The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Interior Equipment (View C)

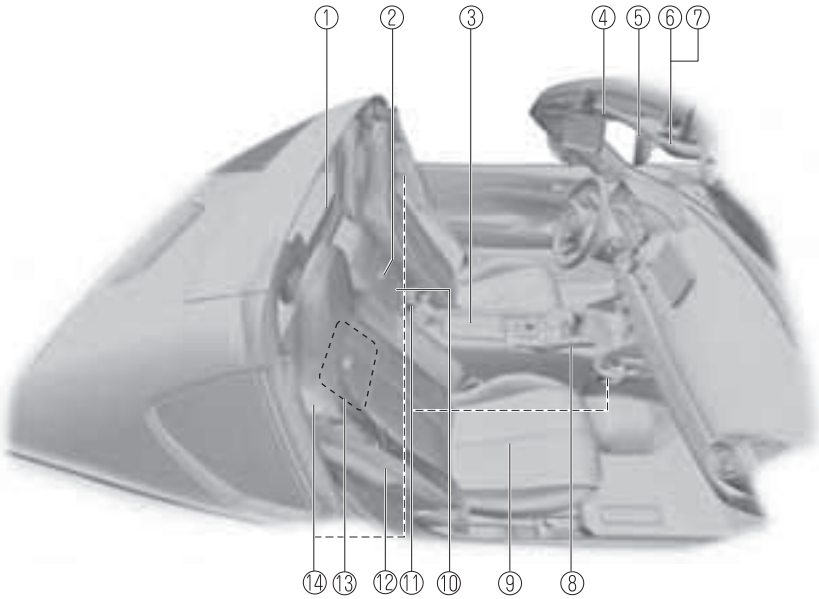
▼Convertible Top (Soft Top)



① Windblocker ..... page 5-133
② Seat side box ..... page 5-131
③ Console box ..... page 5-131
④ Interior light ..... page 5-123
⑤ Rearview mirror ..... page 3-32
⑥ Sunvisor ..... page 5-123
⑦ Vanity mirror ..... page 5-123
⑧ Removable ashtray ..... page 5-133
⑨ Parking brake ..... page 4-82
⑩ Seats ..... page 2-5
⑪ DVD/CD player ..... page 5-14
⑫ Cup holders ..... page 5-126
⑬ SRS air bag ..... page 2-33
⑭ Back trim storage boxes ..... page 5-132
⑮ Seat belt ..... page 2-9

Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

▼Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)

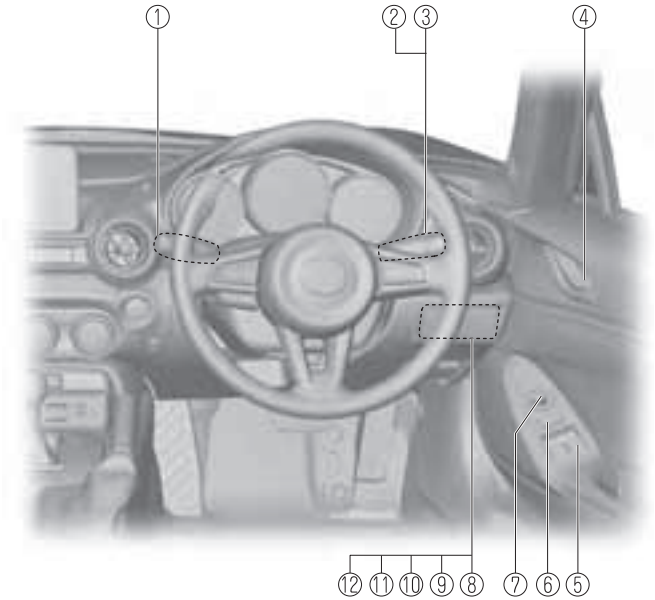


① Windblocker ..... page 5-133
② Seat side box ..... page 5-131
③ Console box ..... page 5-131
④ Interior light ..... page 5-123
⑤ Rearview mirror ..... page 3-32
⑥ Sunvisor ..... page 5-123
⑦ Vanity mirror ..... page 5-123
⑧ Parking brake ..... page 4-82
⑨ Seats ..... page 2-5
⑩ DVD/CD player ..... page 5-14
⑪ Cup holders ..... page 5-126
⑫ SRS air bag ..... page 2-33
⑬ Back trim storage box ..... page 5-132
⑭ Seat belt ..... page 2-9

 The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

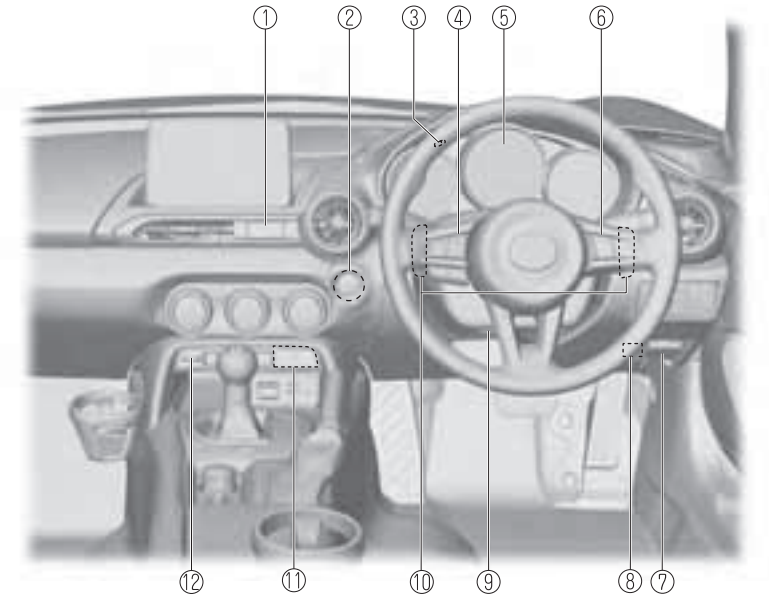
Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View A)



① Wiper and washer lever ..... page 4-72
② Turn and lane-change signal ..... page 4-71
③ Lighting control ..... page 4-63
④ Door-lock knob ..... page 3-20
⑤ Power window switches ..... page 3-34
⑥ Power window lock switch ..... page 3-36
⑦ Outside mirror switch ..... page 3-30
⑧ DSC OFF switch ..... page 4-89
⑨ Tyre pressure monitoring system set switch ..... page 4-143
⑩ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch ..... page 4-117
⑪ LDWS switch ..... page 4-109
⑫ i-stop OFF switch ..... page 4-21

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

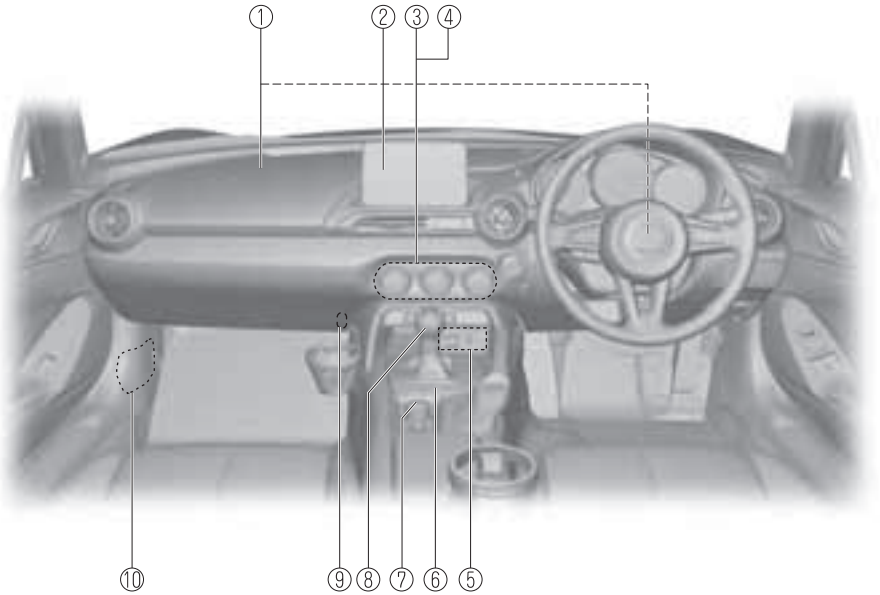


① Hazard warning flasher switch ..... page 4-79
② Push button start ..... page 4-4
③ Instrument panel illumination knob ..... page 4-28
④ Audio control switches ..... page 5-69
⑤ Instrument cluster ..... page 4-24
⑥ Cruise control switches ..... page 4-134
⑦ Bonnet release handle ..... page 6-14
⑧ Boot release button ..... page 3-22
⑨ Lock release lever ..... page 3-29
⑩ Steering shift switches ..... page 4-55
⑪ Seat warmer switches ..... page 2-6
⑫ Retractable fastback switch ..... page 3-51

 The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View B)



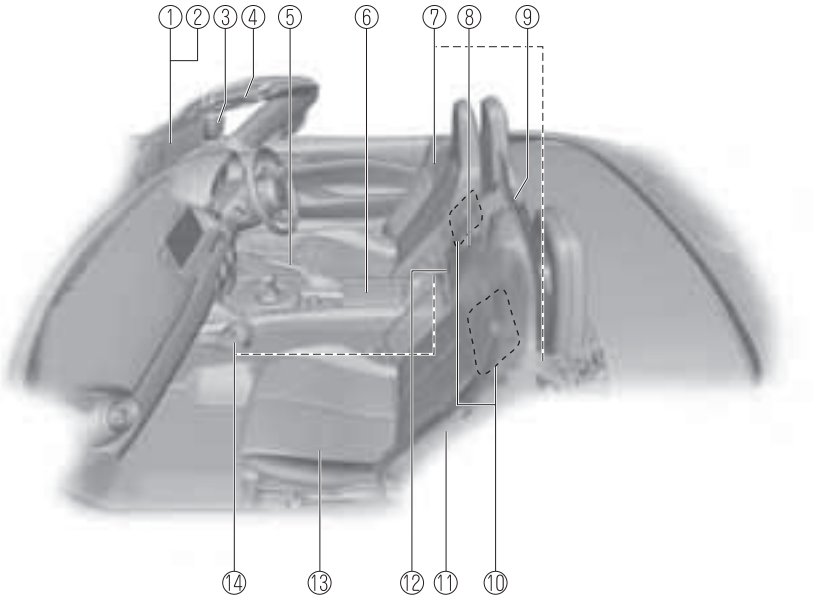
① SRS air bags ..... page 2-33
② Audio system ..... page 5-14
③ Air-conditioning system ..... page 5-2
④ Rear window defogger switch ..... page 4-77
⑤ External input terminal ..... page 5-71
⑥ Drive selection switch ..... page 4-98
⑦ Commander switch ..... page 5-44
⑧ Shift lever/Selector lever ..... page 4-48, 4-51
⑨ Accessory socket ..... page 5-125
⑩ Fuse block (Left side) ..... page 6-47

The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

Interior Equipment (View C)

▼Convertible Top (Soft Top)

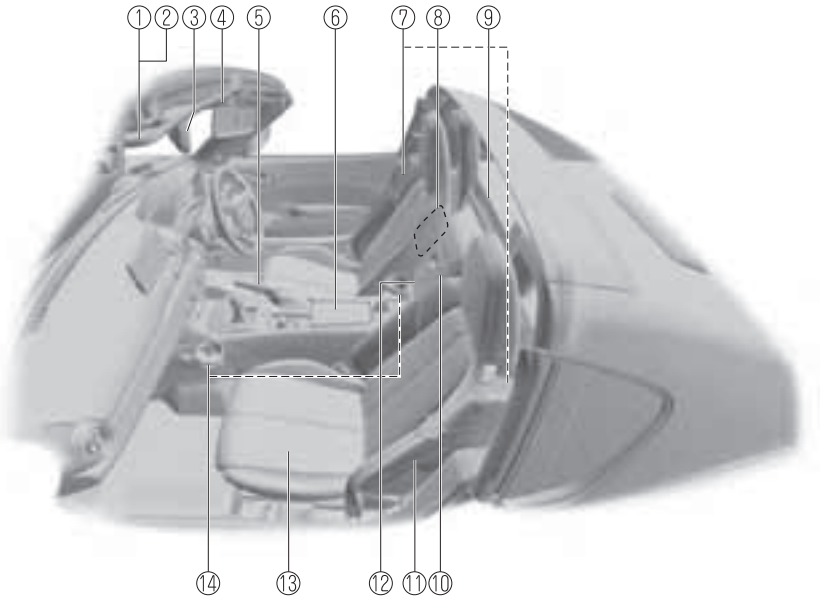


① Sunvisor ..... page 5-123
② Vanity mirror ..... page 5-123
③ Rearview mirror ..... page 3-32
④ Interior light ..... page 5-123
⑤ Parking brake ..... page 4-82
⑥ Console box ..... page 5-131
⑦ Seat belt ..... page 2-9
⑧ Seat side box ..... page 5-131
⑨ Windblocker ..... page 5-133
⑩ Back trim storage boxes ..... page 5-132
⑪ SRS air bag ..... page 2-33
⑫ DVD/CD player ..... page 5-14
⑬ Seats ..... page 2-5
⑭ Cup holders ..... page 5-126

 The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

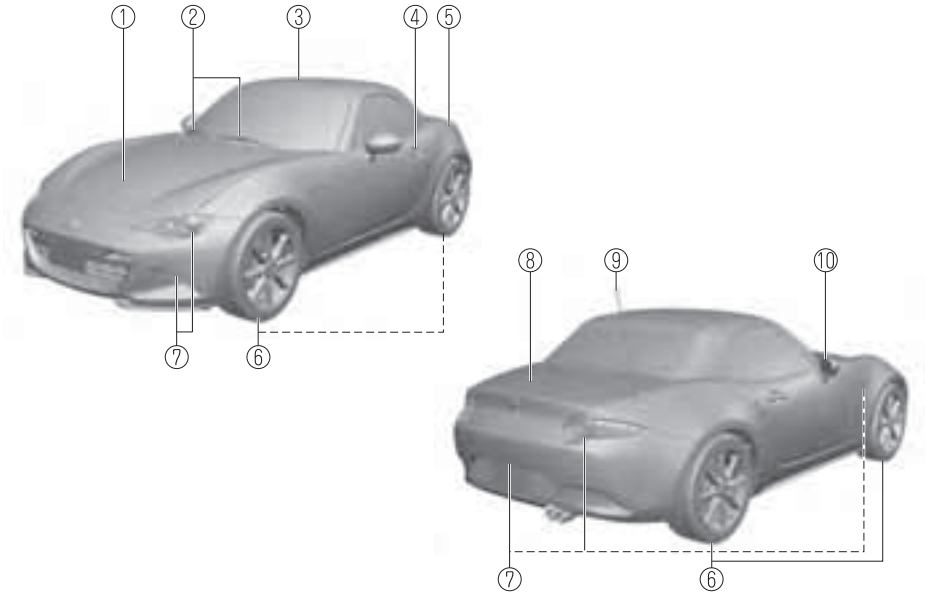
▼Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)



① Sunvisor ..... page 5-123
② Vanity mirror ..... page 5-123
③ Rearview mirror ..... page 3-32
④ Interior light ..... page 5-123
⑤ Parking brake ..... page 4-82
⑥ Console box ..... page 5-131
⑦ Seat belt ..... page 2-9
⑧ Back trim storage box ..... page 5-132
⑨ Windblocker ..... page 5-133
⑩ Seat side box ..... page 5-131
⑪ SRS air bag ..... page 2-33
⑫ DVD/CD player ..... page 5-14
⑬ Seats ..... page 2-5
⑭ Cup holders ..... page 5-126

Exterior Overview

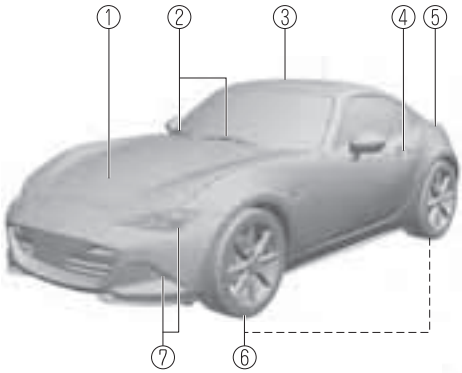
Convertible Top (Soft Top)

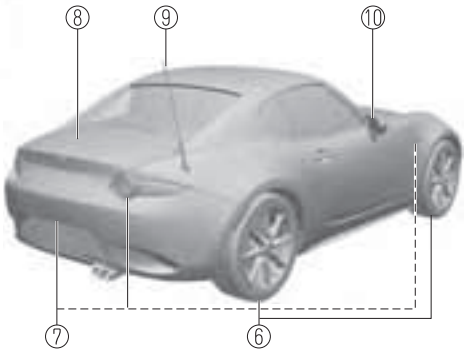


① Bonnet ..... page 6-14
② Windscreen wiper blades ..... page 6-24
③ Convertible Top (Soft Top) ..... page 3-37
④ Doors and keys ..... page 3-13
⑤ Fuel-filler flap ..... page 3-27
⑥ Wheels and Tyres ..... page 6-33
⑦ Exterior lights ..... page 6-38
⑧ Boot Lid ..... page 3-22
⑨ Aerial ..... page 5-14
⑩ Outside mirror ..... page 3-30

 The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)





① Bonnet ..... page 6-14
② Windscreen wiper blades ..... page 6-24
③ Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback) ..... page 3-44
④ Doors and keys ..... page 3-13
⑤ Fuel-filler flap ..... page 3-27
⑥ Wheels and Tyres ..... page 6-33
⑦ Exterior lights ..... page 6-38
⑧ Boot Lid ..... page 3-22
⑨ Aerial ..... page 5-14
⑩ Outside mirror ..... page 3-30

MEMO

2 Essential Safety Equipment

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Seats **2-2**
- Seat Precautions 2-2
- Seat 2-5
- Head Restraints 2-8

Seat Belt Systems **2-9**
- Seat Belt Precautions 2-9
- Seat Belt 2-12
- Seat Belt Warning Systems 2-13
- Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems 2-14

Child Restraint **2-16**
- Child-Restraint Precautions 2-16
- Child-Restraint System Installation 2-21
- Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions Table 2-26
- Installing Child-Restraint Systems 2-29

SRS Air Bags **2-33**
- Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions 2-33
- Supplementary Restraint System Components 2-39
- How the SRS Air Bags Work 2-41
- SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria 2-44
- Limitations to SRS Air Bag 2-45
- Passenger Occupant Classification System* 2-47
- Constant Monitoring 2-52

Active Bonnet **2-53**
- Active Bonnet precautions* 2-53
- How the Active Bonnet Works 2-55

*Some models.

Seat Precautions

⚠ *WARNING*

Make sure the adjustable components of a seat are locked in place:
Adjustable seats and seatbacks that are not securely locked are dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the seat or seatback could move, causing injury. Make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward and rocking the seatback.

Never allow children to adjust a seat:
Allowing children to adjust a seat is dangerous as it could result in serious injury if a child's hands or feet become caught in the seat.

Do not drive with the seatback unlocked:
All of the seatbacks play an important role in your protection in a vehicle. Leaving the seatback unlocked is dangerous as it can allow passengers to be ejected or thrown around and baggage to strike occupants in a sudden stop or collision, resulting in severe injury. After adjusting the seatback at any time, even when there are no other passengers, rock the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is stopped:
Adjusting the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The driver could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

Do not modify or replace the seats:
Modifying or replacing the seats such as replacing the upholstery or loosening any bolts is dangerous. The seats contain air bag components essential to the supplementary restraint system. Such modifications could damage the supplementary restraint system and result in serious injury. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer if there is any need to remove or reinstall the seats.

Do not drive with damaged seats:
Driving with damaged seats, such as seat cushions torn or damaged down to the urethane, is dangerous. A collision, even one not strong enough to inflate the air bags, could damage the seats which contain essential air bag components. If there was a subsequent collision, an air bag may not deploy which could lead to injuries. Always have an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect the seats, seat belt pretensioners and air bags after a collision.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not drive with either seats reclined:
Sitting in a reclined position while the vehicle is moving is dangerous because you do not get the full protection from seat belts. During sudden braking or a collision, you can slide under the lap belt and suffer serious internal injuries. For maximum protection, sit well back and upright.

Do not place an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back:
Putting an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back is dangerous because you will be unable to maintain a safe driving posture and the seat belt cannot function at its full capacity in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Do not place objects under the seat:
The object could get stuck and cause the seat to not be fixed securely, and result in an accident.

Do not stack cargo higher than the seatbacks:
Stacking luggage or other cargo higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, objects can fly around and become projectiles that may hit and injure passengers.

Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:
Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.

Always leave your car locked and keep the car keys safely away from children:
Leaving your car unlocked or the keys in reach of children is dangerous. Children who find their way into the boot through an open boot can become accidentally locked in the boot. This could result in death or brain damage from heat prostration, particularly in the summer. Always lock the doors and the boot.

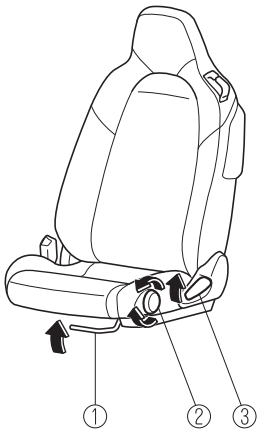
Seats

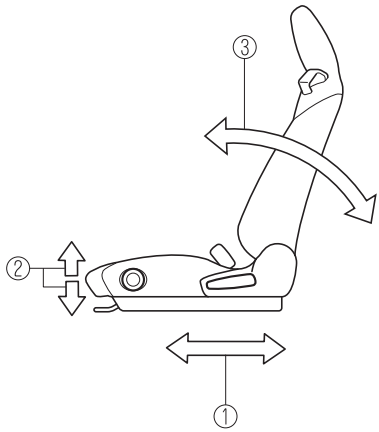
⚠ CAUTION

- When operating a seat, be careful not to put your hands or fingers near the moving parts of the seat or on the side trim to prevent injury.
- When moving the seats, make sure there is no cargo in the surrounding area. If the cargo gets caught it could damage the cargo.
- When moving the seats forward and rearward or returning a rear-reclined seatback to its upright position, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.

Seat

▼Seat Operation





① Seat Slide

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.
Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

② Height Adjustment for Front Edge of Seat Bottom (Driver's Seat)

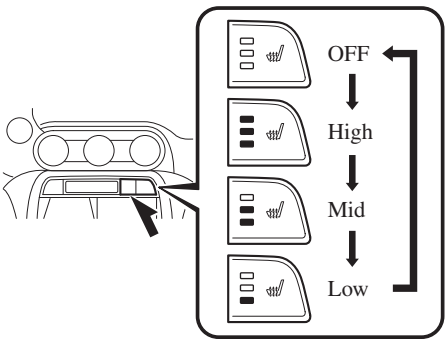
To adjust the height for front edge of the seat bottom, rotate the dial to the desired position.

③ Seat Recline

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.
Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

▼Seat Warmer*

The seats are electrically heated. The ignition must be switched ON.
Press the seat warmer switch while the ignition is switched ON to operate the seat warmer. The indicator lights turn on to indicate that the seat warmer is operating. The mode changes as follows each time the seat warmer switch is pressed.



⚠ *WARNING*

Be careful when using the seat warmer:
The heat from the seat warmer may be too hot for some people, as indicated as follows, and could cause a low-temperature burn.

- ***Infants, small children, elderly people, and physically challenged people***
- ***People with delicate skin***
- ***People who are excessively fatigued***
- ***People who are intoxicated***
- ***People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine***

Do not use the seat warmer with anything having high moisture-retention ability such as a blanket or cushion on the seat:
The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.

Do not use the seat warmer even when taking a short nap in the vehicle:
The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.

Do not place heavy objects with sharp projections on the seat, or insert needles or pins into it:
This could cause the seat to become excessively heated and result in injury from a minor burn.

*Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use organic solvents to clean the seat. It may damage the seat surface and the heater.

NOTE

- If the ignition is switched off while the seat warmer is operating (High, Mid or Low) and then switched ON again, the seat warmer will automatically operate at the temperature set before switching off the ignition.
- Use the seat warmer when the engine is running. Leaving the seat warmer on for long periods with the engine not running could cause the battery power to be depleted.
- The temperature of the seat warmer cannot be adjusted beyond High, Mid and Low because the seat warmer is controlled by a thermostat.

Head Restraints

▼Non-Adjustable Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with non-adjustable head restraints on the driver's and passenger's seatbacks. The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seatbacks and are intended to help protect you and the passenger from neck injury. Adjust the seatbacks to their upright, on-road positions so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

⚠ *WARNING*

Make sure the seatbacks are properly adjusted to their upright, on-road positions before the vehicle is driven:
Driving with the seatbacks not adjusted properly is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

Seat Belt Precautions

Seat belts help to decrease the possibility of severe injury during accidents and sudden stops. Mazda recommends that the driver and passengers always wear seat belts.
All the seats have lap/shoulder belts. These belts have retractors with inertia locks that keep them out of the way when not in use. The locks allow the belts to remain comfortable on users, but they will lock in position during a collision.

⚠ *WARNING*

Always wear your seat belt and make sure all occupants are properly restrained:
Not wearing a seat belt is extremely dangerous. During a collision, occupants not wearing seat belts could hit someone or things inside the vehicle or even be thrown out of the vehicle. They could be seriously injured or even killed. In the same collision, occupants wearing seat belts would be much safer.

Do not wear twisted seat belts:
Twisted seat belts are dangerous. In a collision, the full width of the belt is not available to absorb the impact. This puts more force on the bones beneath the belt, which could cause serious injury or death. So, if your seat belt is twisted, you must straighten the seat belt to remove any twists and to allow the full width of the belt to be used.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:
Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

Do not operate a vehicle with a damaged seat belt:
Using a damaged seat belt is dangerous. An accident could damage the belt webbing of the seat belt in use. A damaged seat belt cannot provide adequate protection in a collision. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect all seat belt systems in use during an accident before they are used again.

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:
Always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.

⚠ *WARNING*

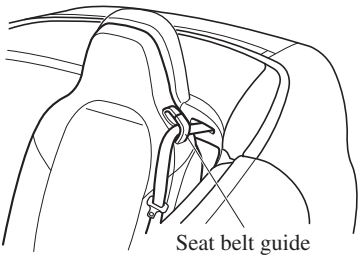
Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:
Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:
The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.

Instructions for Use of Seat Belt Assemblies:
Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.
Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.
It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.
Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.
Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.
No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠ CAUTION

Belt retraction may become difficult if the belts and seat belt guides are soiled, so try to keep them clean. For more details about cleaning the seat belts, refer to "Seat Belt Maintenance" (page 6-64).



▼Pregnant Women and Persons with Serious Medical Conditions

Pregnant women should always wear seat belts. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations.
The lap belt should be worn SNUGLY AND AS LOW AS POSSIBLE OVER THE HIPS.
The shoulder belt should be worn across your shoulder properly, but never across the stomach area.
Persons with serious medical conditions also should wear seat belts. Check with your doctor for any special instructions regarding specific medical conditions.

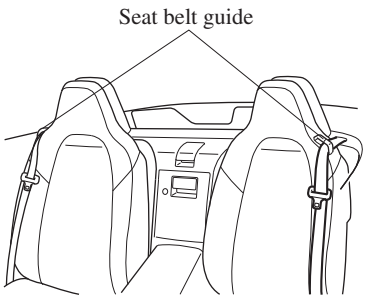
▼Emergency Locking Mode

When the seat belt is fastened, it will always be in the emergency locking mode.
In the emergency locking mode, the belt remains comfortable on the occupant and the retractor will lock in position during a collision.
If the belt is locked and cannot be pulled out, retract the belt once, and then try pulling it out slowly. If this fails, pull the belt strongly one time and loosen, then pull it out again slowly.

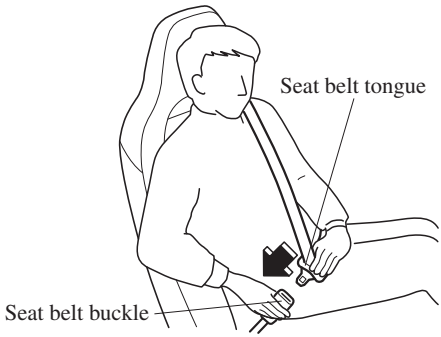
Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

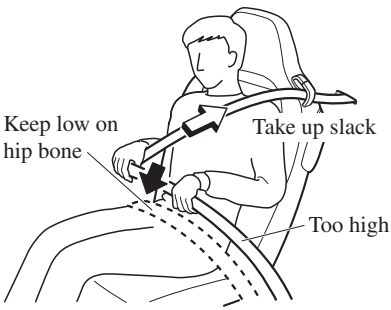
Always wear the seat belt with it correctly routed in its guide:
Wearing a seat belt without the seat belt routed in its guide is dangerous because the seat belt would not be able to provide adequate protection in an accident, which could result in serious injury.



▼Fastening the Seat Belt

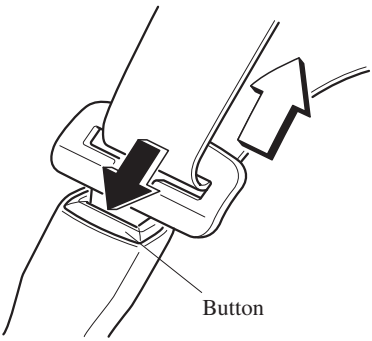


Position the lap belt as low as possible, not on the abdominal area, then adjust the shoulder belt so that it fits snugly against your body.



▼Unfastening the Seat Belt

Depress the button on the seat belt buckle. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.



NOTE
If a belt does not fully retract, inspect it for kinks and twists. If it is still not retracting properly, have it inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Seat Belt Warning Systems

If it detects that the occupant seat belt is unfastened, the warning light or beep alerts the occupant.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
Refer to Seat Belt Warning Beep on page 7-50.

Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems

For optimum protection, the driver and passenger seat belts are equipped with pretensioner and load limiting systems. For both these systems to work properly you must wear the seat belt properly.

Pretensioners:
When a collision is detected, the pretensioners deploy simultaneously with the air bags.
For deployment details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-44).
The seat belt retractors remove slack quickly as the air bags are expanding.
Any time the air bags and seat belt pretensioners have fired they must be replaced.
A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
Refer to Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep on page 7-49.
(With Passenger Occupant Classification System)
In addition, the pretensioner system for the passenger, like the front and side passenger air bag, is designed to only deploy when the passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the passenger's seat.
For details, refer to the passenger occupant classification sensor (page 2-47).

Load limiter:
The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest. While the most severe load on a seat belt occurs in frontal collisions, the load limiter has an automatic mechanical function and can activate in any accident mode with sufficient occupant movement.
Even if the pretensioners have not fired, the load limiting function must be checked by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

⚠ *WARNING*

Wear seat belts only as recommended in this owner's manual:
Incorrect positioning of the driver and passenger seat belts is dangerous. Without proper positioning, the pretensioner and load limiting systems cannot provide adequate protection in an accident and this could result in serious injury. For more details about wearing seat belts, refer to "Fastening the seat belts" (page 2-12).

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:
Always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not modify the components or wiring, or use electronic testing devices on the pretensioner system:
Modifying the components or wiring of the pretensioner system, including the use of electronic testing devices is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable which would prevent it from activating in an accident. The occupants or repairers could be seriously injured.

Properly dispose of the pretensioner system:
Improper disposal of the pretensioner system or a vehicle with non-deactivated pretensioners is dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer safely dispose of the pretensioner system or scrap a pretensioner system equipped vehicle.

NOTE

- The pretensioner system may not operate depending on the type of the collision. For details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-44).
- Some smoke (non-toxic gas) will be released when the air bags and pretensioners deploy. This does not indicate a fire. This gas normally has no effect on occupants, however, those with sensitive skin may experience light skin irritation. If residue from the deployment of the air bags or the pretensioner system gets on the skin or in the eyes, wash it off as soon as possible.

Child-Restraint Precautions

Mazda strongly urges the use of child-restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

Mazda recommends use of a Mazda genuine child-restraint system or one that complies with the UNECE[*1] 44 regulation. If you would like to purchase a Mazda genuine child-restraint system, please contact an Authorised Mazda Dealer.
Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children riding in your vehicle.

*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe.

Whatever child-restraint system you consider, please pick the appropriate one for the age and size of the child, obey the law and follow the instructions that come with the individual child-restraint system.

A child who has outgrown child-restraint systems should use seat belts, both lap and shoulder. If the shoulder belt crosses the neck or face, move the child closer to the centre of the vehicle.

A rear-facing child-restraint system should **NEVER** be used on the passenger seat with the air bag system activated.

(With Passenger Occupant Classification System)
To reduce the chance of injuries caused by deployment of the passenger air bag, the passenger occupant classification sensor work as a part of the supplementary restraint system. This system deactivates the passenger front and side air bags and also the passenger seat belt pretensioner system when the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates.

When an infant or small child sits on the passenger seat, the system shuts off the passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system, so make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates.

For more details, refer to "Passenger occupant classification sensor" (page 2-47).

⚠ *WARNING*

Use the correct size child-restraint system:
For effective protection in vehicle accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child-restraint system depending on age and size. If not, the child could be seriously injured or even killed in an accident.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and always keep the child-restraint system buckled down:
An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH ISOFIX anchors, and attach the corresponding tether anchor.

Always secure a child in a proper child-restraint system:
Holding a child in your arms while the vehicle is moving is extremely dangerous. No matter how strong the person may be, he or she cannot hold onto a child in a sudden stop or collision and it could result in serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Even in a moderate accident, the child may be exposed to air bag forces that could result in serious injury or death to the child, or the child may be slammed into an adult, causing injury to both child and adult.

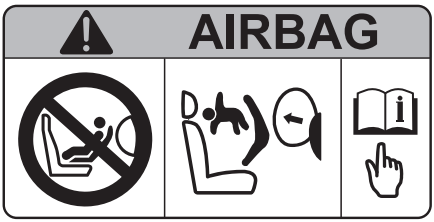
Always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated when using a child-restraint system (With Passenger Occupant Classification System):
Seating a child in a child-restraint system that is installed on the passenger seat with the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light not illuminated is extremely dangerous. In an accident, an air bag could inflate and cause serious injuries or even death to the child seated in the child-restraint system. Always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.
Refer to Passenger Occupant Classification System on page 2-47.

Child Restraint

⚠ *WARNING*

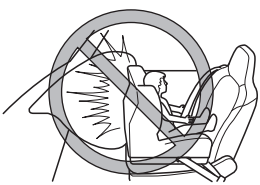
Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
Vehicles with a passenger air bag have a warning label attached as shown below. This warning label is displayed in compliance with regulations.

(Except Taiwan)



(Taiwan)

Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.
If your vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant classification system, always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated, when installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat.



⚠ *WARNING*

Before installing child-restraint system on the passenger seat, move the passenger seat as far back as possible:
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child.
Make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Seating a child in a child-restraint system on the passenger seat is dangerous under certain conditions (With Passenger Occupant Classification System):
Your vehicle is equipped with passenger occupant classification sensor. Even with the passenger occupant classification sensor, if you must use the passenger seat to seat a child, using a child-restraint system on the passenger seat under the following conditions increases the danger of the passenger air bag deploying and could result in serious injury or death to the child.

- ***The passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light does not illuminate when seating a child in the child-restraint system.***
- ***Luggage or other items are placed on the seat with the child in the child-restraint system.***
- ***The seat is washed.***
- ***Liquids are spilled on the seat.***
- ***The passenger seat is moved backward, pushing into luggage or other items placed behind it.***
- ***Luggage or other items are placed between the passenger seat and driver seat.***
- ***An electric device is put on the passenger's seat.***
- ***An additional electrical device, such as a seat warmer is installed to the surface of the passenger seat.***

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over or against the side window of a vehicle with side air bags:
It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over or against the side window, the area of the passenger seat from which the side air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over or against the door could block the side air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. Because the side air bag deploys from the outboard shoulder of the seat, do not allow the child to lean over or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:
Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:
Child-restraint system anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly installed child-restraint systems. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

A seat belt or child-restraint system can become very hot in a closed vehicle during warm weather. To avoid burning yourself or a child, check them before you or your child touches them.

NOTE

(European models)
Your Mazda is equipped with ISOFIX anchors for attachment of ISOFIX child-restraint systems. When using these anchors to secure a child-restraint system, refer to “Using ISOFIX Anchor” (page 2-30).

Child-Restraint System Installation

▼Categories of Child-Restraint Systems

NOTE
When purchasing, ask the manufacturer of the child-restraint system which type of child-restraint system is appropriate for your child and vehicle.

(Europe and countries conforming to the UNECE 44 regulation)
Child-restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the UNECE 44 regulation.

Group	Age	Weight
0	Up to 9 months old	Less than 10 kg (less than 22 lb)
0+	Up to 2 years old	Less than 13 kg (less than 29 lb)
1	8 months to 4 years old	9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)
2	3 to 7 years old	15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)
3	6 to 12 years old	22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)

(Other countries)
Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

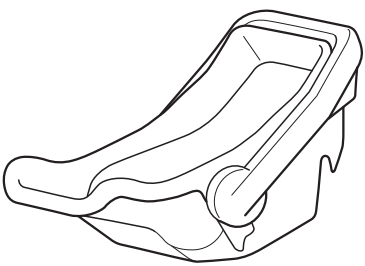
▼Child-Restraint System Types

(Europe and countries conforming to the UNECE 44 regulation)
In this owner's manual, explanation of child-restraint systems secured with seat belts is provided for the following three types of popular child-restraint systems: baby seat, child seat, junior seat.

NOTE

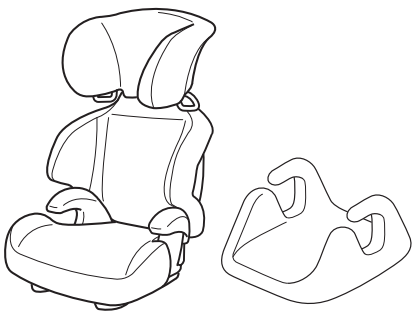
- Installation position is determined by the type of child-restraint system. Always read the manufacturer's instructions and this owner's manual carefully.
- Due to variations in the design of child-restraint systems, vehicle seats and seat belts, all child-restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child-restraint system, it should be tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child-restraint system does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will.

Baby seat
Equal to Group 0 and 0+ of the UNECE 44 regulation.



Child seat
Equal to Group 1 of the UNECE 44 regulation.

Junior seat
Equal to Group 2 and 3 of the UNECE 44 regulation.



(Other countries)
Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

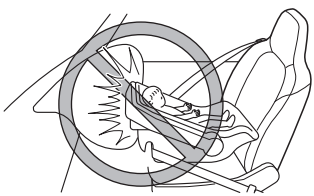
▼Baby Seat Installation Position

A baby seat is used in the rear-facing position only.
Refer to the table, "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" for baby seat installation position (page 2-26).

⚠ WARNING

Always install a baby seat in the correct seat position:
Installing a baby seat without first consulting the table "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" is dangerous. A baby seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat protected by an air bag:
Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!
The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed. If your vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant, always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated, if installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat is unavoidable.



▼Child Seat Installation Position

A child seat is used in front-facing and rear-facing positions depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions in accordance with the appropriate age and size of the child as well as the directions for installing the child-restraint system. Refer to the table, "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" for child seat installation position (page 2-26).

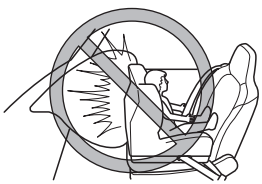
Rear-facing type

⚠ WARNING

Always install a rear-facing child seat in the correct seat position:
Installing a rear-facing child seat without first consulting the table "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" is dangerous. A rear-facing child seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

⚠ *WARNING*

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat protected by an air bag:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed. If your vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant classification system, always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated, if installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat is unavoidable.



Front-facing type

⚠ *WARNING*

Never install a front-facing child seat in the wrong seat position:
Installing a front-facing child seat without first consulting the table "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" is dangerous. A front-facing child seat installed in the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed. Make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Before installing child-restraint system on the passenger seat, move the passenger seat as far back as possible:
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child.
Make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.

▼Junior Seat Installation Position

A junior seat is used in the front-facing position only.

Refer to the table, “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” for junior seat installation position (page 2-26).

⚠ *WARNING*

Always install a junior seat in the correct seat position:
Installing a junior seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A junior seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.

Before installing child-restraint system on the passenger seat, move the passenger seat as far back as possible:*1
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child.
Make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.

****1 The rearmost position may not be suitable for the installation of some child-restraint systems.***

Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions Table

(Europe and countries conforming to the UNECE 16 regulation)
Provided information in the table shows your child-restraint system suitability for various seating position. For installation suitability of other manufacturer child-restraint system, carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child-restraint system.

ISOFIX anchor-secured child-restraint systems

When installing a child-restraint system to the passenger seat, refer to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions and the Using ISOFIX Anchor on page 2-30.

Mass group	Size Class	Fixture	Seat Positions Vehicle ISOFIX positions Passenger seat
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
		(1)	X
GROUP 0 Up to 10 kg (less than 22 lb)	E	ISO/R1	X
		(1)	X
GROUP 0+ Up to 13 kg (less than 29 lb)	E	ISO/R1	IL*1
	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
		(1)	X
GROUP 1 9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
	B	ISO/F2	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	X
		(1)	IL*2
GROUP 2 15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)		(1)	IL*3
GROUP 3 22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)		(1)	IL*3

(1) For the CRS which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child-restraint system(s) recommended for each position.
Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:
IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child-restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child-restraint systems (CRS) given in the attached list.
These ISOFIX CRS are those of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.

*1 A CabrioFix child-restraint attached to an EasyFix Base, both sold by MAXI-COSI®, can be installed.

*2 A Pearl child-restraint attached to an FamilyFix Base, both sold by MAXI-COSI®, can be installed.
*3 BRITAX RÖMER® KIDFIX can be installed. (KIDFIX is no longer in production)

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child-restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.
(Except Europe)
Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed to your Mazda, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

i-Size child-restraint systems

An i-Size child-restraint system can be installed to the specified seat as follows:

	Passenger seat
i-Size child-restraint systems	X

Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:
X = Seating position not suitable for i-Size “universal” child-restraint systems.

NOTE

An i-Size child-restraint system refers to a child-restraint system which has acquired i-Size category certification for the UNECE 129 regulation.

Seat belt-secured child-restraint systems

System group	Age group	Weight group	Child-restraint system type	Passenger seat		
				Without a passenger occupant classification system	With a passenger occupant classification system	
					ON (Air bag enabled)	OFF 2 (Air bag disabled)
GROUP 0	Up to approximately 9 months old	Less than 10 kg (less than 22 lb)	Baby seat	X	X	U
GROUP 0+	Up to approximately 2 years old	Less than 13 kg (less than 29 lb)	Baby seat	X	X	U
GROUP 1	Approximately 8 months to 4 years old	9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	Child seat	L	UF	U
GROUP 2	Approximately 3 to 7 years old	15 kg— 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)	Junior seat	L	UF	U
GROUP 3	Approximately 6 to 12 years old	22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)	Junior seat	L	UF	U

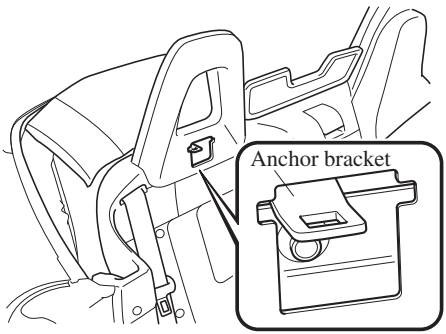
Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:
U = Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
UF = Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
L = For the child restraint systems categorized in this weight group, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed, refer to the accessories catalog.
X = Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
(Refer to the “Accessories Catalog” for installing a Mazda genuine child-restraint system.)

Installing Child-Restraint Systems

▼Anchor Bracket

Anchor brackets for securing child-restraint systems are equipped in the vehicle. Locate anchor position using the illustration.
To install a child-restraint system, always follow the instruction manual accompanying the child-restraint system.

Anchor bracket location
Use the indicated anchor bracket locations when installing a child-restraint system equipped with a tether.



⚠ *WARNING*

Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:
Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

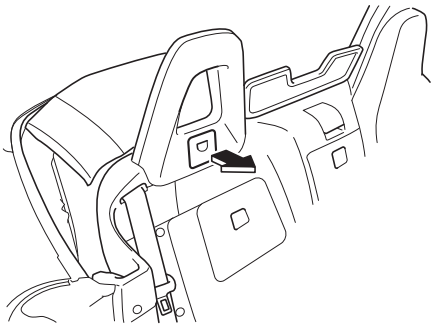
Always route the tether strap between the head restraint and the seatback:
Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.

⚠ CAUTION

When moving the seats forward and rearward, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.

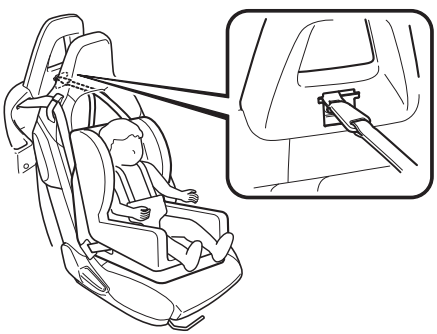
1. Open the convertible top.
2. Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible and then slide it forward about 10 notches (100 mm) so that your hand can be placed behind it (page 2-5).

3. Remove the cover.



NOTE
Be careful not to lost the removed cover.

4. Place the child-restraint on the passenger seat.
5. Pass the tether strap under the head restraint and install it to the tether anchor.
   For the tether strap adjustment method, refer to the child-restraint seat manufacturer’s instructions.



▼Using the Seat Belt

⚠ CAUTION

When moving the seats forward and rearward, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.

When installing a child-restraint system, follow the installation instructions included with the product.
Also, open the convertible top and slide the seat as far back as possible, fold down the seatback as far as possible.

▼Using ISOFIX Anchor*

⚠ WARNING

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the use of the child-restraint system:
An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions.

*Some models.

⚠ *WARNING*

Make sure the child-restraint system is properly secured:
A child-restraint system that is not secured is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, it can become a projectile and hit someone, causing serious injury. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle, put it in the boot or at least make sure it is securely fastened to the ISOFIX anchors.

Make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchor-secured child-restraint system:
Not following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing the child-restraint system is dangerous. If seat belts or a foreign object prevent the child-restraint system from being securely attached to the ISOFIX anchors and the child-restraint system is installed improperly, the child-restraint system could move in a sudden stop or collision causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. When installing the child-restraint system, make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchors. Always follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

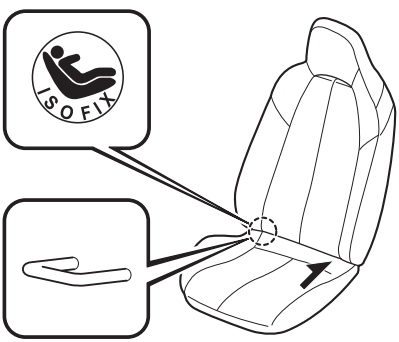
⚠ CAUTION

When moving the seats forward and rearward, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.

1. Open the convertible top.
2. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
3. Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible (page 2-5).*1

   *1 You may need to move the seat forward slightly and recline the back of the seat, in order to assist in the fitment of some child-restraint systems.

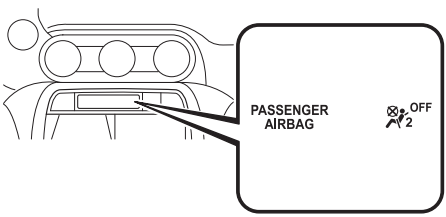
4. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
5. Expand the area between the seat bottom and the seatback slightly to verify the locations of the ISOFIX anchor.



NOTE

The markings above the ISOFIX anchors indicate the locations of the ISOFIX anchors for the attachment of a child-restraint system.

6. Secure the child-restraint system using the ISOFIX anchor, following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instruction.
7. Switch the ignition ON and make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates after installing a child-restraint system on the passenger seat.
   If the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light does not illuminate, remove the child-restraint system, switch the ignition to OFF, and then re-install the child-restraint system (page 2-47).



8. If your child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, that probably means it is very important to properly secure the tether for child safety. Please carefully follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing tethers (page 2-29).

⚠ *WARNING*

<u>Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:</u>
Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

<u>Always route the tether strap between the head restraint and the seatback:</u>
Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.

Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions

The front and side supplementary restraint systems (SRS) include different types of air bags. **Please verify which kinds of air bags are equipped on your vehicle by locating the "SRS AIRBAG" location indicators.** These indicators are visible in the area where the air bags are installed.
The air bags are installed in the following locations:

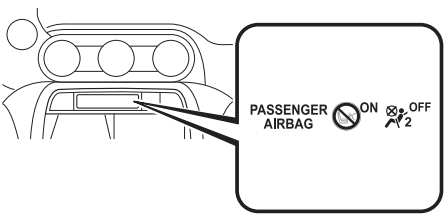
- The steering wheel hub (driver air bag)
- The passenger instrument panel (passenger air bag)
- The outboard sides of the seatbacks (side air bags)

The air bag supplementary restraint systems are designed to provide supplementary protection in certain situations so seat belts are always important in the following ways:

Without seat belt usage, the air bags cannot provide adequate protection during an accident. Seat belt usage is necessary to:

- Keep the occupant from being thrown into an inflating air bag.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries during an accident that is not designed for air bag inflation, such as roll-over or rear impact.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries in frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are not severe enough to activate the air bags.
- Reduce the possibility of being thrown from your vehicle.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries to lower body and legs during an accident because the air bags provide no protection to these parts of the body.
- Hold the driver in a position which allows better control of the vehicle.

If your vehicle is also equipped with a passenger occupant classification system, refer to the Passenger Occupant Classification System (page 2-47) for details.
If your vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant classification system, the passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates for a specified time after the ignition is switched ON.



A child who is too small to use a seat belt must be properly secured using a child-restraint system (page 2-16).

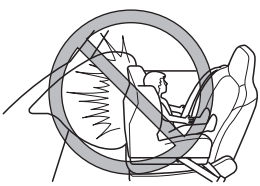
Carefully consider which child-restraint system is necessary for your child and follow the installation directions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ *WARNING*

Seat belts must be worn in air bag equipped vehicles:
Depending only on the air bags for protection during an accident is dangerous. Alone, air bags may not prevent serious injuries. The appropriate air bags can be expected to inflate only in the first accident, such as frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are at least moderate. Vehicle occupants should always wear seat belts.

Always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated when using a child-restraint system (With Passenger Occupant Classification System):
Seating a child in a child-restraint system that is installed on the passenger seat with the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light not illuminated is extremely dangerous. In an accident, an air bag could inflate and cause serious injuries or even death to the child seated in the child-restraint system. Always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.
Refer to Occupant Classification System on page 2-47.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:
NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child. If your vehicle is equipped with on passenger occupant classification system, always make sure the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light is illuminated.



⚠ *WARNING*

Do not sit too close to the driver and passenger air bags:
Sitting too close to the driver and passenger air bag modules or placing hands or feet on them is extremely dangerous. The driver and passenger air bags inflate with great force and speed. Serious injuries could occur if someone is too close. The driver should always hold onto only the rim of the steering wheel. The passenger should keep both feet on the floor. Seat occupants should adjust their seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.

Do not sit too close to a door or lean against doors in vehicles with side air bags:
Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them is extremely dangerous. A side air bag inflates with great force and speed directly out of the outboard shoulder of the seat and expands along the door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door or leaning against a window in the seats. Furthermore, sleeping up against the door or hanging out the driver-side window while driving could block the side air bag and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. Give the side air bags room to work by sitting in the centre of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.

Sit in the centre of the seat and wear seat belts properly:
Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them, or sleeping up against the door or hanging out the windows is extremely dangerous. The side air bags inflate with great force and speed directly expanding along the door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door. Give the side air bags room to work by sitting in the centre of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where driver and passenger air bags deploy:
Attaching an object to the driver and passenger air bag modules or placing something in front of them is dangerous. In an accident, an object could interfere with air bag inflation and injure the occupants.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not attach objects on or around the area where a side air bag deploys:
Attaching objects to the seat in such a way as to cover the outboard side of the seat in any way is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the side air bag, which inflates from the outboard side of the seats, impeding the added protection of the side air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.
Do not hang net bags, map pouches or backpacks with side straps on the seats. Never use seat covers on the seats. Always keep the side air bag modules in your seats free to deploy in the event of a side collision.

Do not touch the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated:
Touching the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated is dangerous. Immediately after inflation, they are very hot. You could get burned.

Never install any front-end equipment to your vehicle:
Installation of front-end equipment, such as frontal protection bar (kangaroo bar, bull bar, push bar, or other similar devices), snowplow, or winches, is dangerous. The air bag crash sensor system could be affected. This could cause air bags to inflate unexpectedly, or it could prevent the air bags from inflating during an accident. Occupants could be seriously injured.

Do not modify the suspension:
Modifying the vehicle suspension is dangerous. If the vehicle's height or the suspension is modified, the vehicle will be unable to accurately detect a collision resulting in incorrect or unexpected air bag deployment and the possibility of serious injuries.

Do not modify a door or leave any damage unrepaired. Always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect a damaged door:
Modifying a door or leaving any damage unrepaired is dangerous. Each door has a side crash sensor as a component of the supplementary restraint system. If holes are drilled in a door, a door speaker is left removed, or a damaged door is left unrepaired, the sensor could be adversely affected causing it to not detect the pressure of an impact correctly during a side collision. If a sensor does not detect a side impact correctly, the side air bags and the seat belt pretensioner may not operate normally which could result in serious injury to occupants.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not modify the supplementary restraint system:
Modifying the components or wiring of the supplementary restraint system is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable. Do not make any modifications to the supplementary restraint system. This includes installing trim, badges, or anything else over the air bag modules. It also includes installing extra electrical equipment on or near system components or wiring. An expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer can provide the special care needed in the removal and installation of seats. It is important to protect the air bag wiring and connections to assure that the bags do not accidentally deploy, and that the passenger occupant classification system and the seats retain an undamaged air bag connection.

Do not place luggage or other objects under the seats:
Placing luggage or other objects under the seats is dangerous. The components essential to the supplementary restraint system could be damaged, and in the event of a side collision, the appropriate air bags may not deploy, which could result in death or serious injury. To prevent damage to the components essential to the supplementary restraint system, do not place luggage or other objects under the seats.

Do not operate a vehicle with damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components:
Expended or damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy or damage them. Only a trained expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer can fully evaluate these systems to see that they will work in any subsequent accident. Driving with an expended or damaged air bag or pretensioner unit will not afford you the necessary protection in the event of any subsequent accident which could result in serious injury or death.

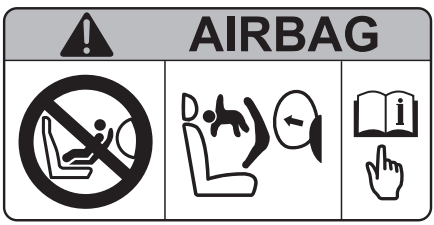
Do not remove interior air bag parts:
Removing any components such as the seats, front instrument panel, the steering wheel, containing air bag parts or sensors is dangerous. These parts contain essential air bag components. The air bag could accidentally activate and cause serious injuries. Always have an Authorised Mazda Repairer remove these parts.

Properly dispose of the air bag system:
Improper disposal of an air bag or a vehicle with live air bags in it can be extremely dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer safely dispose of the air bag system or scrap an air bag equipped vehicle.

NOTE

- When an air bag deploys, a loud inflation noise can be heard and some smoke will be released. Neither is likely to cause injury, however, the texture of the air bags may cause light skin injuries on body parts not covered with clothing through friction.
- Should you sell your Mazda, we urge you to tell the new owner of its air bag systems and that familiarization with all instructions about them, from the Owner's Manual, is important.
- Vehicles with a passenger air bag have a warning label attached as shown below. This warning label is displayed in compliance with regulations.

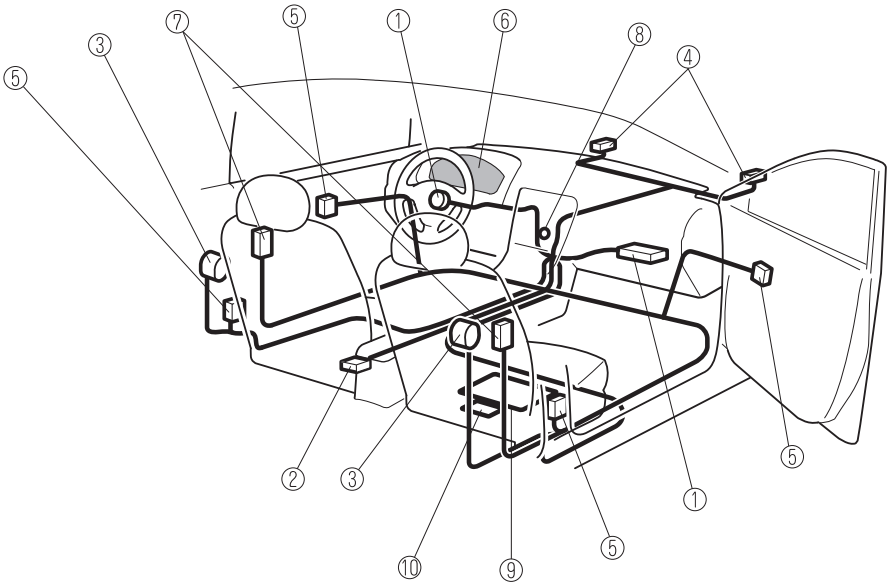
(Except Taiwan)



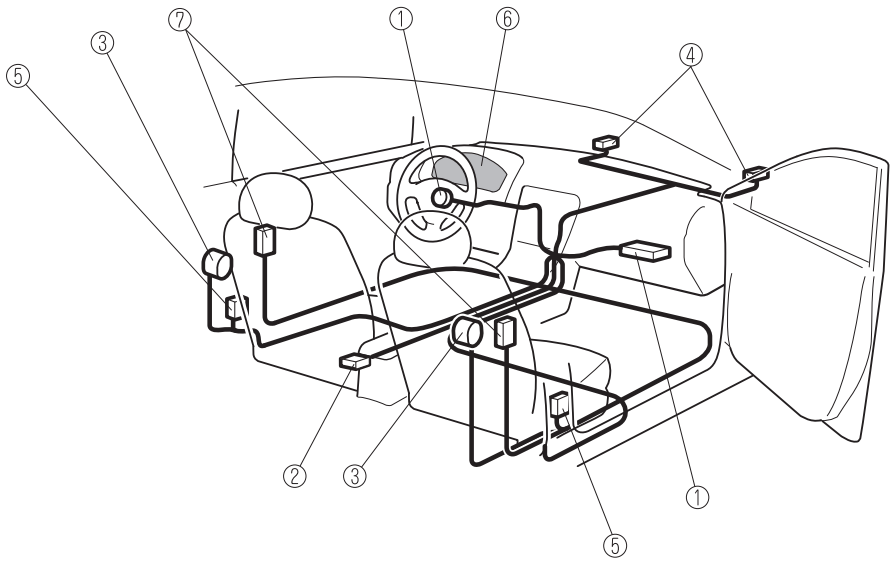
(Taiwan)

Supplementary Restraint System Components

(With Passenger Occupant Classification System)



(Without Passenger Occupant Classification System)



① Driver/Passenger inflators and air bags
② Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
③ Seat belt pretensioners (page 2-14)
④ Front air bag sensors
⑤ Side crash sensors
⑥ Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light (page 4-42)
⑦ Side inflators and air bags
⑧ Passenger air bag deactivation indicator light* (page 2-47)
⑨ Passenger occupant classification sensor* (page 2-47)
⑩ Passenger occupant classification module*

 *Some models.

How the SRS Air Bags Work

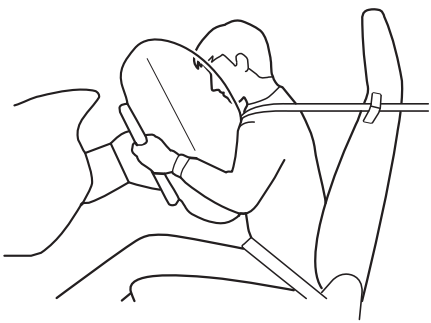
Your Mazda is equipped with the following types of SRS air bags. SRS air bags are designed to work together with the seat belts to help to reduce injuries during an accident. The SRS air bags are designed to provide further protection for passengers in addition to the seat belt functions. Be sure to wear seat belts properly.

▼Seat Belt Pretensioners

The seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions.
In addition, during a side collision, the pretensioner operates on the side in which the collision occurs. The pretensioners operate differently depending on what types of air bags are equipped. For more details about seat belt pretensioner operation, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-44).

▼Driver Air Bag

The driver's air bag is mounted in the steering wheel.
When air bag crash sensors detect a frontal impact of greater than moderate force, the driver's air bag inflates quickly helping to reduce injury mainly to the driver's head or chest caused by directly hitting the steering wheel.
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-44).

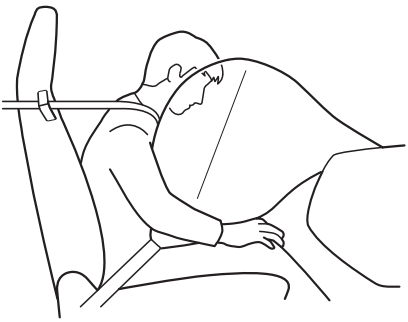


▼Passenger Air Bag

The passenger air bag is mounted in the passenger instrument panel.
The inflation mechanism for the passenger air bag is the same as the driver's air bag.
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-44).

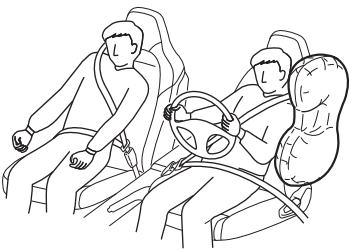
(With Passenger Occupant Classification System)

In addition, the passenger air bag is designed to only deploy when the passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the passenger's seat. For details, refer to the passenger occupant classification system (page 2-47).



▼Side Air Bags

The side air bags are mounted in the outboard sides of the seatbacks.
When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the system inflates the side air bag only on the side in which the vehicle was hit. The side air bag inflates quickly to reduce injury to the driver or passenger's head and chest caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window.
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-44).
(With Passenger Occupant Classification System)
In addition, the passenger side bag is designed to only deploy when the passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the passenger's seat. For details, refer to the passenger occupant classification system (page 2-47).

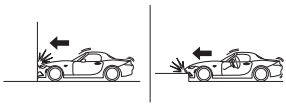
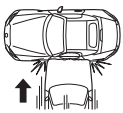
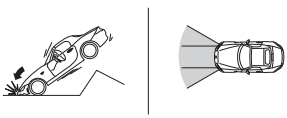


▼Warning Light/Beep

A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
Refer to Warning Sound is Activated on page 7-49.

SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria

This chart indicates the applicable SRS equipment that will deploy depending on the type of collision.
(The illustrations are the representative cases of collisions.)

	Types of collision		
	A severe frontal/near frontal collision	A severe side collision*2	A rear collision
SRS equipment			
			
Seat belt pretensioner	X*1 (both sides)	X*1 (impact side only)	No air bag and seat belt pretensioner will be activated in a rear collision.
Driver air bag	X		
Passenger air bag	X*1		
Side air bag		X*1 (impact side only)	

X : The SRS air bag equipment is designed to deploy in a collision.

*1 **(Passenger Occupant Classification System)**
The passenger front and side air bags and the seat belt pretensioner are designed to deploy when the passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the passenger's seat.

*2 In a side collision, the seat belt pretensioners and the side air bags deploy (only on the side in which the collision occurs).

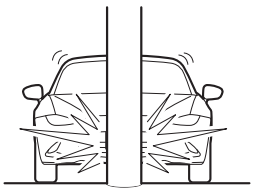
NOTE
In a frontal offset collision, the equipped air bags and pretensioners may all deploy depending on the direction, angle, and rate of impact.

Limitations to SRS Air Bag

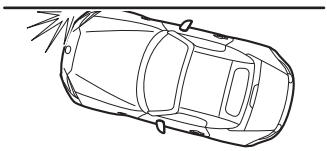
In severe collisions such as those described previously in "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria", the applicable SRS air bag equipment will deploy. However, in some accidents, the equipment may not deploy depending on the type of collision and its severity.

Limitations to front/near front collision detection:
The following illustrations are examples of front/near front collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

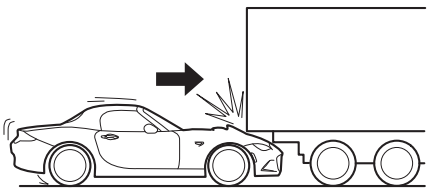
Impacts involving trees or poles



Frontal offset impact to the vehicle

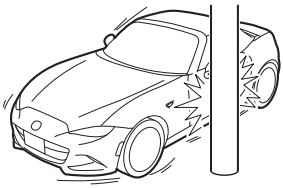


Rear-ending or running under a truck's tail gate

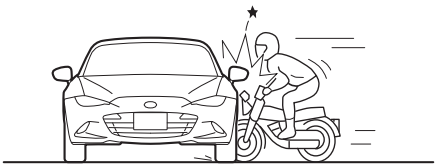


Limitations to side collision detection:
The following illustrations are examples of side collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

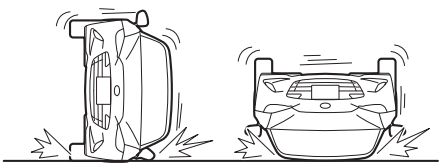
Side impacts involving trees or poles



Side impacts with two-wheeled vehicles



Roll-over



Passenger Occupant Classification System*

First, please read "Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions" (page 2-33) carefully.

▼Passenger Occupant Classification Sensor

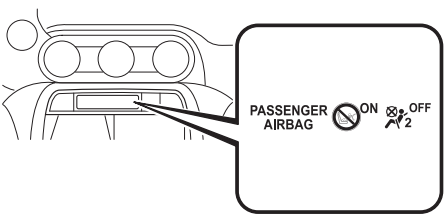
Your vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant classification sensor as a part of the supplementary restraint system. This sensor is equipped in the passenger's seat cushion. This sensor measures the electrostatic capacity of the passenger's seat. The SAS unit is designed to prevent the passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system from deploying if the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on.
To reduce the chance of injuries caused by deployment of the passenger air bag, the system deactivates the passenger front and side air bags and also the seat belt pretensioner system when the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on. Refer to the following table for the passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illumination conditions.

This system shuts off the passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system, so make sure the passenger air bag deactivation indicator light turns on according to the following table.

The air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light flashes and the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates if the sensors have a possible malfunction. If this happens, the passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy.

Passenger air bag deactivation indicator lights

These indicator lights turn on to remind you that the passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner will or will not deploy during a collision.



If the passenger occupant classification sensor is normal, both indicator lights turn on when the ignition is switched ON. The lights turn off after a few seconds. Then, the indicator lights turn on or off under the following conditions:

*Some models.

Passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart

Condition detected by the passenger occupant classification system	Passenger air bag deactivation indicator light	Passenger front and side air bags	Passenger seat belt pretensioner system
Empty (Not occupied)	OFF 2	Deactivated	Deactivated
A child is seated in a child-restraint system*1	OFF 2	Deactivated	Deactivated
Adult*2	ON Turns off after a short period of time.	Ready	Ready

*1 The occupant classification sensor may not detect a child seated on the seat, in a child-restraint system, or a junior seat depending on the child's physical size and seated posture.
*2 If a smaller adult sits on the passenger seat, the sensors might detect the person as being a child depending on the person's physique.

If both of the passenger air bag deactivation indicator lights do not turn on for a specified period of time when the ignition is switched ON or they do not turn on as indicated in the passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart, do not allow an occupant to sit in the passenger seat and consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. The system may not work properly in an accident.

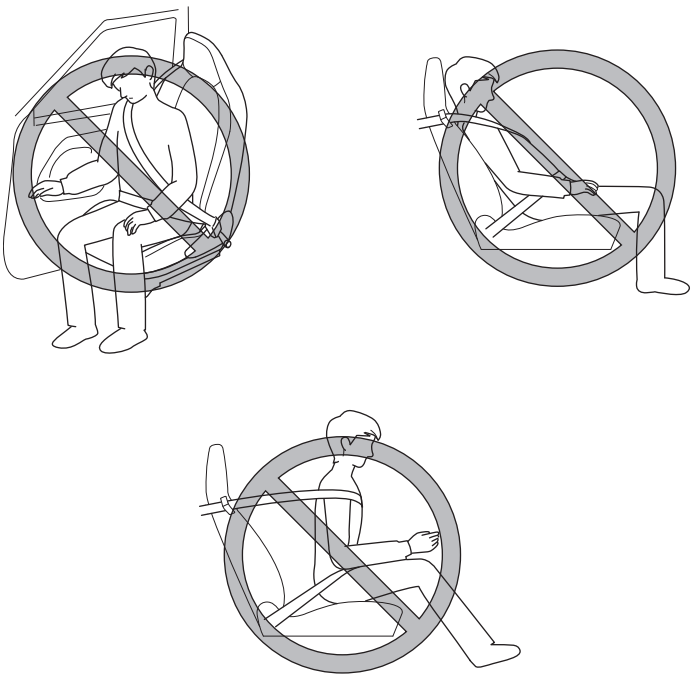
⚠ *WARNING*

Do not allow an occupant in the passenger's seat to sit with a posture which makes it difficult for the passenger occupant classification sensor to detect the occupant correctly:

Sitting in the passenger's seat with a posture which makes it difficult for the passenger occupant classification sensor to detect the occupant correctly is dangerous. If the passenger occupant classification sensor cannot detect the occupant sitting on the passenger's seat correctly, the passenger front and side air bags and pretensioner system may not operate (non-deploy) or they may operate (deploy) accidentally. The passenger will not have the supplementary protection of the air bags or the accidental operation (deployment) of the air bags could result in serious injury or death.

Under the following conditions, the passenger occupant classification sensor cannot detect a passenger sitting on the passenger's seat correctly and the deployment/non-deployment of the air bags cannot be controlled as indicated in the passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart. For example:

- ***A passenger is seated as shown in the following figure:***



⚠ *WARNING*

- ***Luggage or other items placed under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat and driver seat that push up the passenger seat bottom.***
- ***An object, such as a seat cushion, is put on the passenger's seat or between the passenger's back and the seatback.***
- ***A seat cover is put on the passenger's seat.***
- ***Luggage or other items are placed on the seat with the child in the child-restraint system.***
- ***The seat is washed.***
- ***Liquids are spilled on the seat.***
- ***The passenger seat is moved backward, pushing into luggage or other items placed behind it.***
- ***Luggage or other items are placed between the passenger seat and driver seat.***
- ***An electric device is put on the passenger's seat.***
- ***An additional electrical device, such as a seat warmer is installed to the surface of the passenger seat.***

The passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner systems will deactivate if the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on.

⚠ CAUTION

- To assure proper deployment of the front air bag and to prevent damage to the sensor in the seat cushion:
  - Do not place sharp objects on the seat cushion or leave heavy luggage on them.
  - Do not spill any liquids on the seats or under the seats.
- To allow the sensors to function properly, always perform the following:
  - Adjust the seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.
  - If you place your child on the passenger seat, secure the child-restraint system properly and slide the passenger seat as far back as possible within the position in which the child-restraint system can be installed.

NOTE

- The system requires about 10 seconds to alternate between turning the passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system on or off.
- The passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light may turn on repeatedly if luggage or other items are put on the passenger seat, or if the temperature of the vehicle's interior changes suddenly.
- The passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light may turn on for 10 seconds if the electrostatic capacity on the passenger seat changes.
- The air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light might turn on if the passenger seat receives a severe impact.
- If the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light does not turn on after installing a child-restraint system on the passenger seat, first, re-install your child-restraint system according to the procedure in this owner's manual. Then, if the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light still does not turn on, and consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
- If the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on when an occupant is seated directly in the passenger seat, have the passenger re-adjust their posture by sitting with their feet on the floor, and then re-fastening the seat belt. If the passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light remains turned on, slide the passenger seat as far back as possible. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

Constant Monitoring

The following components of the air bag systems and the active bonnet are monitored by a diagnostic system:

- Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- Front air bag sensors
- Air bag modules
- Side crash sensors
- Air bag/Seat belt pretensioner system warning light
- Seat belt pretensioners
- Related wiring

(With Passenger Occupant Classification System)

- Passenger air bag deactivation indicator light
- Passenger occupant classification sensor
- Passenger occupant classification module

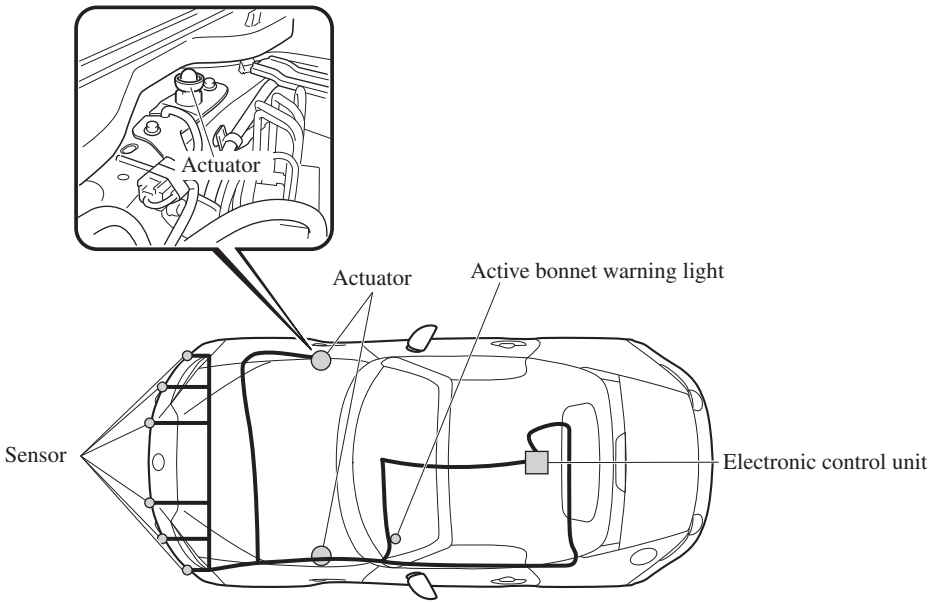
(With Active Bonnet)

- Active bonnet sensors
- Active bonnet modules
- Active bonnet warning light

The diagnostic module continuously monitors the system's readiness. This begins when the ignition is switched ON and continues while the vehicle is being driven.

Active Bonnet precautions*

In the unlikely event that the vehicle were to hit a pedestrian and a certain amount of impact is applied to the front of the vehicle, impact to the head of the pedestrian if it were to hit the bonnet is lessened by the rear area of the bonnet raising instantly to maintain a wide space between it and the parts in the engine compartment. If the sensor installed to the back of the front bumper detects a certain amount of impact by a collision with a pedestrian or other obstruction while the vehicle is being driven at a speed sufficient to activate the system, the system is activated and the bonnet is raised.



⚠ *WARNING*

<u>If the active bonnet has activated, always consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</u>
If the bonnet release handle is pulled after the active bonnet has activated, the bonnet will rise even further. If the vehicle is driven with the bonnet raised it will obstruct visibility and could result in an accident. In addition, do not attempt to push the bonnet back down. Otherwise, it could deform the bonnet or cause injury because the activated bonnet cannot be lowered manually. Before driving the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer after the active bonnet has activated, make sure that the raised bonnet does not obstruct vision and drive the vehicle at a low speed.

*Some models.

Active Bonnet

⚠ CAUTION

Do not touch the actuator directly after the active bonnet has activated. Otherwise, it could result in a burn as the actuator is hot directly after the activation.

▼Operation and Handling

- Always make sure that the bonnet is closed completely before driving. Otherwise, the system may not operate normally.
- The system may not operate for about 8 seconds after the ignition is switched ON.
- Use tyres of the same specified size on all four wheels. If tyres with different sizes are used, the system may not operate normally.
- If something hits the area around the front bumper, the sensor could be damaged even if the active bonnet does not activate. Always consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the vehicle inspected.
- Do not remove or repair parts or wiring for the active bonnet. In addition, do not test the system's circuitry using an electric tester. Otherwise, the active bonnet may activate mistakenly or not operate normally. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for when repairs or replacement servicing is required.
- Do not replace the front bumper, bonnet, suspension, aero parts, or wheels with non-genuine Mazda parts. Otherwise, the system may not operate normally.
- Do not install non-genuine Mazda accessories to the front bumper. In addition, do not install objects on the bonnet. Otherwise, the system may not operate normally.
- Do not close the bonnet excessively or apply a load to the actuator. Otherwise, the actuator could be damaged and cause the system to not operate normally.
- Do not modify the suspension. If the vehicle height or the damping force of the suspensions is changed, the system may not operate normally.
- When equipping parts, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. If parts are installed incorrectly, the active bonnet may not activate normally due to the inability to detect an impact.
- When disposing of the vehicle, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. If the vehicle is not handled correctly, it could result in injury.
- The active bonnet cannot be reused if it has been activated. Have the system replaced at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

How the Active Bonnet Works

▼If the Active Bonnet Activates, Does Not Activate

If the active bonnet activates

The active bonnet activates under the following conditions:

- If the front of the vehicle hits a pedestrian or obstruction while the vehicle is being driven at a speed sufficient to activate the system, the system will activate if a certain amount of impact is applied in a collision even though no trace may remain on the front bumper. In addition, it may activate depending on the level of impact from even a light object, small animal, or other small object.
- The system may also activate if the lower part of the vehicle or the front bumper receives an impact from one of the following situations:
  - The vehicle hits a curb.
  - The vehicle falls into a deep ditch or hole.
  - The vehicle bounces and hits the ground.
  - The front, bottom part of the vehicle contacts the slope of a parking garage, the surface of an even, undulating road, or a protruding or fallen object on the road.

Situations in which the active bonnet may not activate

The active bonnet may not active in the following situations as an impact would be difficult to detect.

- The pedestrian gets hit at an angle or by the side areas on the left and right of the front bumper.
- The vehicle hits a pedestrian who is carrying something such as a bag which can absorb the impact.

Situations in which the system does not activate

The active bonnet does not activate under the following conditions:

- The front bumper gets hit while the vehicle is being driven at a speed insufficient to activate the system.
- The vehicle gets hit from the side or the rear.
- The vehicle rolls or turns over (the active bonnet may operate depending on the accident conditions).

MEMO

3 Before Driving

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

Keys 3-2
Keys 3-2
Keyless Entry System 3-3

Advanced Keyless Entry System 3-9
Advanced Keyless Entry System* 3-9
Operational Range 3-10

Doors and Locks 3-11
Door Locks 3-11
Boot Lid 3-21

Fuel and Emission 3-24
Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions 3-24
Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap 3-27

Steering Wheel 3-29
Steering Wheel 3-29

Mirrors 3-30
Mirrors 3-30

Windows 3-34
Power Windows 3-34

Convertible Top (Soft Top) 3-37
Convertible Top (Soft Top) 3-37

Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback) 3-44
Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback) 3-44

Security System 3-53
Modification and Add-On Equipment 3-53
Immobilizer System 3-53
Theft-Deterrent System* 3-55

Driving Tips 3-59
Running-In 3-59
Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment 3-59
Hazardous Driving 3-60
Floor Mat 3-61
Rocking the Vehicle 3-62
Winter Driving 3-62
Driving In Flooded Area 3-65

Towing 3-66
Towing Caravans and Trailers 3-66

*Some models.

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:
Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed. Children may find these keys to be an interesting toy to play with and could cause the power windows or other controls to operate, or even make the vehicle move.

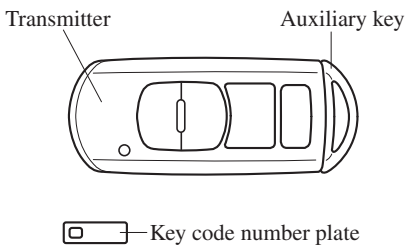
⚠ CAUTION

- Because the key (transmitter) uses low-intensity radio waves, it may not function correctly under the following conditions:
  - The key is carried with communication devices such as cellular phones.
  - The key contacts or is covered by a metal object.
  - The key is near electronic devices such as personal computers.
  - Non-Mazda genuine electronic equipment is installed in the vehicle.
  - There is equipment which discharges radio waves near the vehicle.
- The key (transmitter) may consume battery power excessively if it receives high-intensity radio waves. Do not place the key near electronic devices such as televisions or personal computers.
- To avoid damage to the key (transmitter), DO NOT:
  - Drop the key.
  - Get the key wet.
  - Disassemble the key.
  - Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.
  - Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.
  - Place heavy objects on the key.
  - Put the key in an ultrasonic cleaner.
  - Put any magnetized objects close to the key.

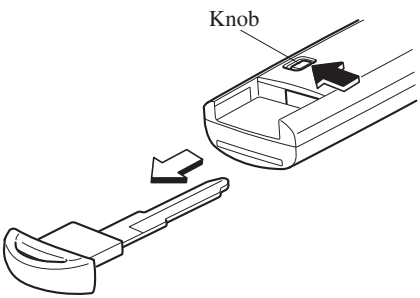
A code number is stamped on the plate attached to the key set; detach this plate and store it in a safe place (not in the vehicle) for use if you need to make a replacement key (auxiliary key).
Also write down the code number and keep it in a separate safe and convenient place, but not in the vehicle.

If your key (auxiliary key) is lost, consult your Authorised Mazda Repairer and have your code number ready.

NOTE
The driver must carry the key to ensure the system functions properly.



To use the auxiliary key, pull out the auxiliary key from the transmitter while pressing the knob.



Keyless Entry System

This system uses the key buttons to remotely lock and unlock the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap, and opens the boot lid.
The system can start the engine without having to take the key out of your purse or pocket.
Operating the theft-deterrent system is also possible on theft-deterrent system-equipped vehicles.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning lights or beeps.
For vehicles with the type A instrument cluster, check the displayed message for more information and, if necessary, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer, according to the indication.

- KEY Warning Light (Red)
  Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
- Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep
  Refer to Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep on page 7-51.
- Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep
  Refer to Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep on page 7-51.

If you have a problem with the key, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

If your key is lost or stolen, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible for a replacement and to make the lost or stolen key inoperative.

⚠ CAUTION

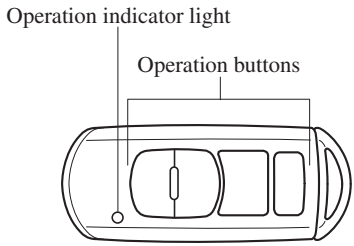
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

- The keyless entry system operation may vary due to local conditions.
- The keyless entry system is fully operational (door/boot lid/fuel-filler flap lock/unlock) when the ignition is switched off. The system does not operate if the ignition is switched to any position other than off.
- If the key does not operate when pressing a button or the operational range becomes too small, the battery may be weak. To install a new battery, refer to Key Battery Replacement (page 6-31).
- Battery life is about one year. Replace the battery with a new one if the KEY indicator light (green) flashes in the instrument cluster (for vehicles with a type A instrument cluster (page 4-42), messages are displayed in the instrument cluster). Replacing the battery about once a year is recommended because the KEY warning light/indicator light may not illuminate or flash depending on the rate of battery depletion.

- Additional keys can be obtained at an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Up to 6 keys can be used with the keyless functions per vehicle. Bring all keys to an Authorised Mazda Repairer when additional keys are required.

▼Transmitter



NOTE

- **(European models)**
  The headlights turn on/off by operating the transmitter. Refer to Leaving Home Light on page 4-69.
- **(With theft-deterrent system)**
  The hazard warning lights flash when the theft-deterrent system is armed or turned off.
  Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-55.
- **(With the advanced keyless function (European models))**
  The setting can be changed so that a beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked/unlocked using the key.
  (With the advanced keyless function (Except European models))
  A beep sound can be heard for confirmation when the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked/unlocked using the key. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.
  The volume of the beep sound can also be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

NOTE

Use the following procedure to change the setting.

1. Switch the ignition off and close both of the doors and the boot lid.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Within 30 seconds of opening the driver's door, press and hold the LOCK button on the key for 5 seconds or longer.
   Both of the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock and the beep sound activates at the currently set volume. The setting changes each time the LOCK button on the key is pressed and the beep sound activates at the set volume. (If the beep sound has been set to not activate, it will not activate.)
4. The setting change is completed by doing any one of the following:
   - Switching the ignition to ACC or ON.
   - Closing the driver's door.
   - Opening the boot lid.
   - Not operating the key for 10 seconds.
   - Pressing any button except the LOCK button on the key.
   - Pressing a request switch.

The operation indicator light flashes when the buttons are pressed.

Lock button

To lock the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap, press the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash once.
(With the advanced keyless function (Except European models))
A beep sound will be heard once.

NOTE

- The doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap cannot be locked by pressing the lock button while any other door is open. The hazard warning lights will also not flash.
- **(With the i-stop function (European models))**
  Removing the key from the vehicle, closing both the doors and pressing the LOCK button on the key while the i-stop function is operating (engine is stopped) will switch the ignition OFF and lock both the doors (Steering wheel also locks).
  Refer to i-stop on page 4-13.
- Make sure both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked after pressing the button.
- **(With double locking system)**
  Pressing the lock button twice within 3 seconds will activate the double locking system.
  Refer to Double Locking System on page 3-13.
- **(With theft-deterrent system)**
  When the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the key while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.

Unlock button

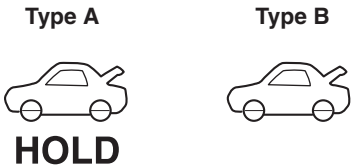
To unlock the doors and the boot lid, press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.
(With the advanced keyless function (Except European models))
A beep sound will be heard twice.

NOTE

- **(Auto re-lock function)**
  After unlocking with the key, both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds. If your vehicle has a theft-deterrent system, the hazard warning lights will flash for confirmation.
  The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
  - A door or the boot lid is opened.
  - The ignition is switched to any position other than off.
- **(With theft-deterrent system)**
  When the doors are unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the key while the theft-deterrent system is turned off, the hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that the system is turned off.

Boot button

To open the boot lid, press and hold the boot button until the boot lid opens.



Intrusion sensor cancel button*

To cancel the intrusion sensor (part of the theft-deterrent system), press the intrusion sensor cancel button within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash three times.
Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-55.

*Some models.

▼Operational Range

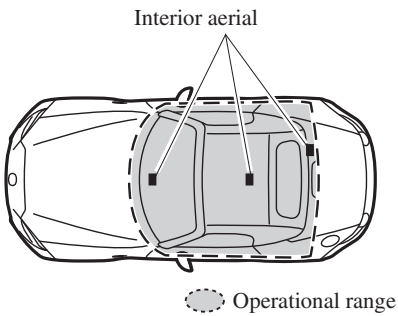
The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

Starting the Engine

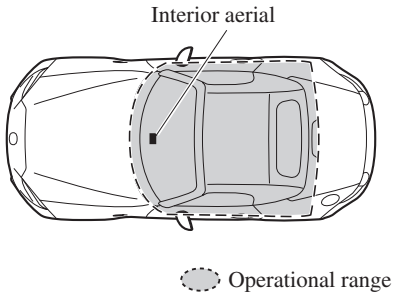
NOTE

- Starting the engine may be possible even if the key is outside of the vehicle and extremely close to a door and window, however, always start the engine from the driver's seat.
  If the vehicle is started and the key is not in the vehicle, the vehicle will not restart after it is shut off and the ignition is switched to off.
- The boot is out of the assured operational range, however, if the key (transmitter) is operable the engine will start.

With the advanced keyless function



Without the advanced keyless function



NOTE

The engine may not start if the key is placed in the following areas:

- Around the instrument panel
- In the storage compartments or the centre console

▼Key Suspend Function

If a key is left in the vehicle, the functions of the key left in the vehicle are temporarily suspended to prevent theft of the vehicle.
To restore the functions, press the unlock button on the functions-suspended key in the vehicle.

Advanced Keyless Entry System*

⚠ WARNING

Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers: ***Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.***

The advanced keyless function allows you to lock/unlock the door and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap, or open the boot lid while carrying the key.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning lights or beeps.

- Request switch Inoperable Warning Beep
  Refer to Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-52.
- Key Left-in-Boot Warning Beep
  Refer to Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-52.
- Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep
  Refer to Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-52.

NOTE

The advanced keyless entry system functions can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details. If the advanced keyless entry system has been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead.
Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-9.

*Some models.

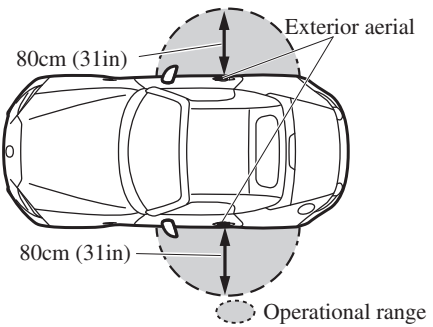
Operational Range

The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

NOTE

When the battery power is low, or in places where there are high-intensity radio waves or noise, the operational range may become narrower or the system may not operate. For determining battery replacement, Refer to Keyless Entry System on page 3-3.

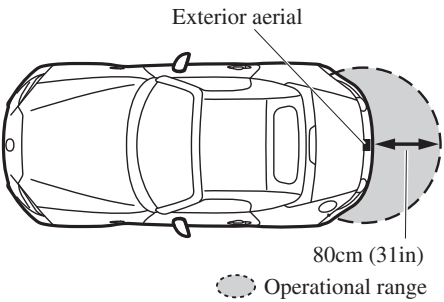
▼Locking, Unlocking the Doors and the Boot Lid



NOTE

- The system may not operate if you are too close to the windows or door handles.
- If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.
  - Around the instrument panel
  - In the storage compartments or the centre console
  - Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone

▼Opening the Boot Lid



Door Locks

⚠ WARNING

Always take all children and pets with you or leave a responsible person with them:
Leaving a child or a pet unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. In hot weather, temperatures inside a vehicle can become high enough to cause brain damage or even death.

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:
Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed.

Always close both the windows and convertible top, lock the doors and take the key with you when leaving your vehicle unattended:
Leaving your vehicle unlocked is dangerous as children could lock themselves in a hot vehicle, which could result in death. Also, a vehicle left unlocked becomes an easy target for thieves and intruders.

After closing the doors, always verify that they are securely closed:
Doors not securely closed are dangerous, if the vehicle is driven with a door not securely closed, the door could open unexpectedly resulting in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before opening a door:
Suddenly opening a door is dangerous. A passing vehicle or a pedestrian could be hit and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- Always confirm the conditions around the vehicle before opening/closing the doors and use caution during strong winds or when parked on an incline. Not being aware of the conditions around the vehicle is dangerous because fingers could get caught in the door or a passing pedestrian could be hit, resulting in an unexpected accident or injury.
- If the power window does not go up or down automatically because the battery is dead, slowly open/close the power window while pressing the glass inward. Otherwise, the power window may contact the convertible top and the door cannot be opened/closed resulting in damage to the window.

NOTE

- Always stop the engine and lock the doors. In addition, to prevent theft of valuables, do not leave them inside the cabin.
- If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.
  - Around the instrument panel
  - In the storage compartments or the centre console
  - Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone
- The vehicle lock-out prevention feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.
  Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap will automatically unlock if they are locked using the power door locks with any door open.
  If both the doors are closed even though the boot lid is open, both the doors and the fuel-filler flap will lock.

NOTE

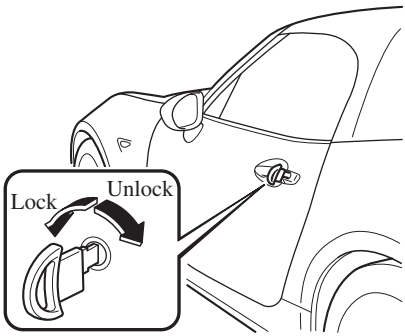
- **(Door unlock (control) system with collision detection)***
  This system automatically unlocks the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap in the event the vehicle is involved in an accident to allow passengers to get out of the vehicle immediately and prevent being trapped inside. While the ignition is switched ON and in the event the vehicle receives an impact strong enough to inflate the air bags, both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are automatically unlocked after about 6 seconds have elapsed from the time of the accident.
  The doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap may not unlock depending on how an impact is applied, the force of the impact, and other conditions of the accident.
  If door-related systems or the battery is malfunctioning, the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap will not unlock.

- When opening a door, the power windows open a little automatically. When closing the door, the power windows close automatically. This is a function for improving the sealability, and it does not mean there is a problem.
  If the vehicle battery is disconnected for vehicle maintenance or other reasons, the power windows will not open or close automatically. If the power windows do not open or close, the automatic open/close mechanism for the windows must be reset.
  Refer to Operating the Power Windows on page 3-34.

*Some models.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Auxiliary Key

Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically when the driver's door is locked using the auxiliary key.
They both unlock when the driver's door is unlocked using the auxiliary key.
Turn the auxiliary key toward the front to lock, toward the back to unlock.



▼Double Locking System*

The double locking system is designed to prevent someone who has broken into your vehicle from opening the door from the inside.

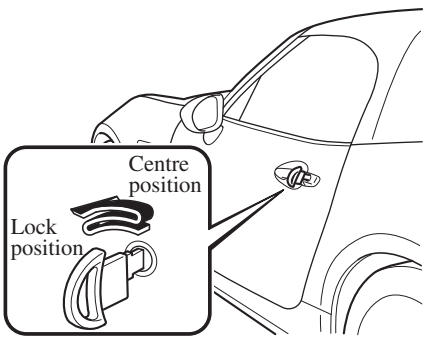
If you have any problems with the double locking system, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

⚠ *WARNING*

Never activate the double locking system with passengers, especially children, still inside the vehicle:
Activating the system with passengers, especially children, still inside the vehicle is dangerous. The passengers cannot open the doors from inside. They would be trapped and subjected to extreme temperatures. This could result in serious injuries or even death.

How to Activate the system

1. Close both the windows and the convertible top.
2. Switch the ignition off and take the key with you.
3. Close both doors and the boot lid.
4. Insert the auxiliary key in the driver's door, turn the auxiliary key to the lock position, and return it to the centre position. Then turn it to the lock position again within 3 seconds.



*Some models.

NOTE

- You can also activate the system by pressing the lock button on the transmitter twice within 3 seconds.
- **(With the advanced keyless function)**
  You can also activate the system by pressing the request switch twice within 3 seconds.

5. The indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds to indicate that the system has been activated.

NOTE

The system cannot be activated when any door is open.

How to Deactivate the System

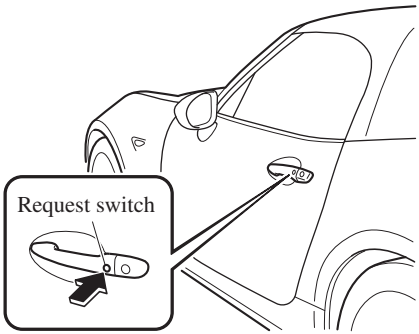
Unlock the driver's door or switch the ignition ON.

NOTE

If the power supply is interrupted (fuse blows or the battery is disconnected), the system can only be deactivated by unlocking a door with the auxiliary key.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch (With the advanced keyless function)

Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap can be locked/unlocked by pressing the request switch while the key is being carried.



To lock

To lock the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap, press the request switch and the hazard warning lights will flash once.
(Except European models)
A beep sound will be heard once.

To unlock

To unlock the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap, press the request switch and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.
(Except European models)
A beep sound will be heard twice.

NOTE

- Confirm that both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are securely locked.
- Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap cannot be locked when any door is open.

NOTE

- It may require a few seconds for the doors to unlock after the request switch is pressed.
- **(European models)**
  The setting can be changed so that a beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked/unlocked using a request switch.
  (Except European models)
  A beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flapare locked/unlocked using the request switch.
  If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.
  The volume of the beep sound can also be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

NOTE

Use the following procedure to change the setting.

1. Switch the ignition off and close both of the doors and the boot lid.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Within 30 seconds of opening the driver's door, press and hold the LOCK button on the key for 5 seconds or longer.
   Both of the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock and the beep sound activates at the currently set volume. The setting changes each time the LOCK button on the key is pressed and the beep sound activates at the set volume. (If the beep sound has been set to not activate, it will not activate.)
4. The setting change is completed by doing any one of the following:
   - Switching the ignition to ACC or ON.
   - Closing the driver's door.
   - Opening the boot lid.
   - Not operating the key for 10 seconds.
   - Pressing any button except the LOCK button on the key.
   - Pressing a request switch.

- **(With theft-deterrent system)**
  The hazard warning lights flash when the theft-deterrent system is armed or turned off.
  Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-55.
- **(With double locking system)**
  Pressing the request switch twice within 3 seconds will activate the double locking system.
  Refer to Double Locking System on page 3-13.

NOTE

- The setting can be changed so that the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked automatically without pressing the request switch.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
  (Auto-lock function)
  A beep sound is heard when both doors are closed while the advanced key is being carried. Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked automatically after about three seconds when the advanced key is out of the operational range. Also, the hazard warning lights flash once. (Even if the driver is in the operational range, both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap are locked automatically after about 30 seconds.) If you are out of the operational range before the doors and the boot lid are completely closed or another key is left in the vehicle, the auto-lock function will not work. Always make sure that both doors and the boot lid are closed and locked before leaving the vehicle. The auto-lock function does not close the power windows.

NOTE

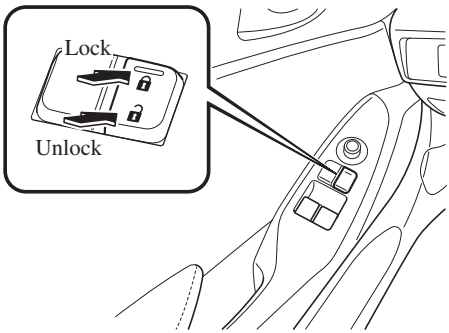
- **Auto re-lock function**
  After unlocking with the request switch, both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds. If your vehicle has a theft-deterrent system, the hazard warning lights will flash for confirmation.
  The time required for the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap to lock automatically can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
  - Opening a door or the boot lid.
  - Switching the ignition to any position other than off.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Transmitter

Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap can be locked/unlocked by operating the keyless entry system transmitter, refer to Keyless Entry System (page 3-3).

▼Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Switch*

Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically when the lock side is pressed with both doors closed.
They both unlock when the unlock side is pressed.



NOTE

The doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap cannot be locked while any other door is open.

▼Auto Lock/Unlock Function*

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not pull the inner handle on a door:
Pulling the inner handle on a door while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Passengers can fall out of the vehicle if the door opens accidentally , which could result in death or serious injury.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically.
- When the ignition is switched off, both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap unlock automatically.

These functions can also be disabled so that they do not operate.

*Some models.

Auto lock/unlock function setting change using door-lock switch (With door-lock switch)

The doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap can be set to lock or unlock automatically by selecting any one of the functions from the following table and using the door-lock switch on the interior door panel.

NOTE

- Function number 3 in the following table is the factory setting for your vehicle.
- There are only a total of six auto lock/unlock settings available for automatic transmission vehicles, and three for manual transmission vehicles. Be sure to press the unlock side of the door-lock switch the correct number of times according to the selected function number. If the switch is mistakenly pressed seven times on an automatic transmission vehicle or four times on a manual transmission, the procedure will be cancelled. If this occurs, start the procedure from the beginning.

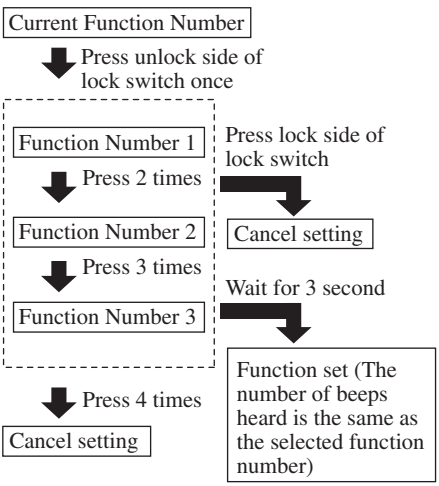
Function number	Function*1
1	The auto door-lock function is disabled.
2	Both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically when the vehicle speed is about 20 km/h (12 mph) or more.
3 (Factory Setting)	Both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically when the vehicle speed is about 20 km/h (12 mph) or more. Both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap unlock when the ignition is switched from ON to Off.
4	**(Automatic transmission vehicles only)** When the ignition is switched ON and the selector lever is shifted from park (P) to any other gear position, both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically.
5	**(Automatic transmission vehicles only)** When the ignition is switched ON and the selector lever is shifted from park (P) to any other gear position, both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically. When the selector lever is shifted to park (P) while the ignition is switched ON, both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap unlock automatically.
6	**(Automatic transmission vehicles only)** Both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically when the vehicle speed is about 20 km/h (12 mph) or more. When the selector lever is shifted to park (P) while the ignition is switched ON, both the doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap unlock automatically.

*1 Other settings for the auto door lock function are available at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. For details consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

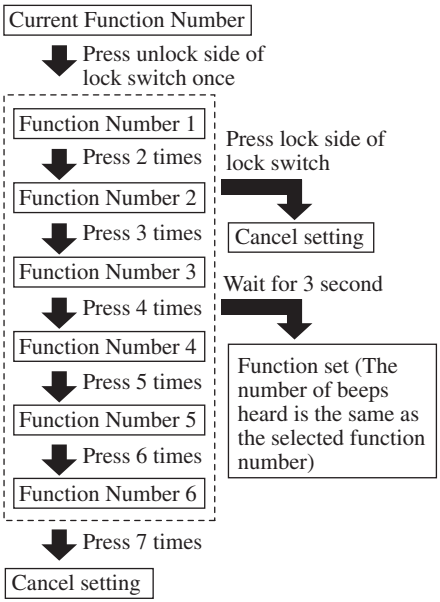
Settings can be changed using the following procedure.

1. Safely park the vehicle. Both doors must remain closed.
2. Switch the ignition ON.
3. Press and hold the lock side of the door-lock switch within 20 seconds of switching the ignition ON, and make sure a beep sound is heard about eight seconds afterwards.
4. Refer to the auto lock/unlock function setting table, determine the function number for the desired setting. Press the unlock side of the door-lock switch the same number of times as the selected function number (Ex. If you select function 2, press the unlock side of the switch only 2 times).
5. Three seconds after the function setting has been changed, a beep sound will beep in the amount of the selected function number. (Ex. Function number 3 = 3 beep sounds)

(Manual transmission vehicles)



(Automatic transmission vehicles)



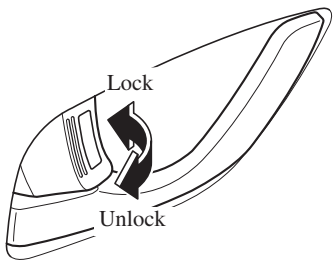
NOTE

- The doors cannot be locked or unlocked while the setting function is being performed.
- The procedure can be cancelled by pressing the lock side of the door-lock switch.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Knob

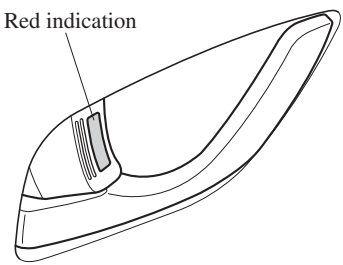
Operation from inside

(With door-lock switch)
To lock any door from the inside, press the door-lock knob.
To unlock, pull it outward.
This does not operate the other door locks.
(Without door-lock switch)
Both doors and the boot lid, fuel-filler flap lock automatically when the driver's door-lock knob is pressed. They both unlock when the driver's door-lock knob is pulled out.



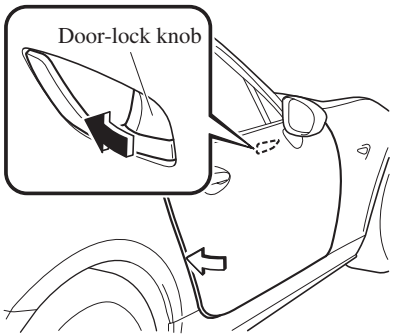
NOTE

The red indication can be seen when the door-lock knob is unlocked.



Operation from outside

To lock the passenger door with the door-lock knob from the outside, press the door-lock knob to the lock position and close the door (holding the door handle in the open position is not required).
This does not operate the other door locks.



NOTE

When locking the door this way:

- Be careful not to leave the key inside the vehicle.
- The driver's door lock knob cannot be used while the driver's door is open.

Boot Lid

⚠ *WARNING*

Never allow a person to ride in the boot:
Allowing a person to ride in the boot is dangerous. The person in the boot could be seriously injured or killed during sudden braking or a collision.

Do not drive with the boot lid open:
Exhaust gas in the cabin of a vehicle is dangerous. An open boot lid in a moving vehicle will cause exhaust gas to be drawn into the cabin. This gas contains CO (carbon monoxide), which is colourless, odourless, and highly poisonous, and it can cause loss of consciousness and death. Moreover, an open boot lid could cause occupants to fall out in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

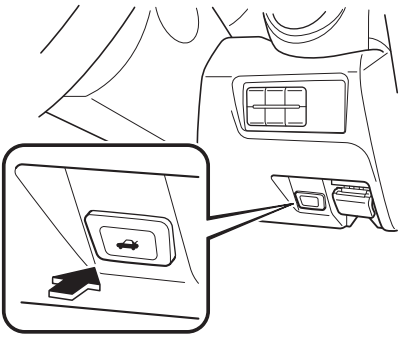
- Before opening the boot lid, remove any snow and ice accumulation on it. Otherwise, the boot lid could close under the weight of the snow and ice resulting in injury.
- Be careful when opening/closing the boot lid during strong winds. If a strong gust blows against the boot lid, it could close suddenly resulting in injury.
- Fully open the boot lid and make sure that it stays open. If the boot lid is only opened partially, it could slam shut by vibration or wind gusts resulting in injury.
- When loading or unloading luggage in the boot, turn off the engine. Otherwise, you could get burned by the heat of the exhaust gas.

▼Opening and Closing the Boot Lid

Opening the boot lid

Using the remote release button*

Push the release button.



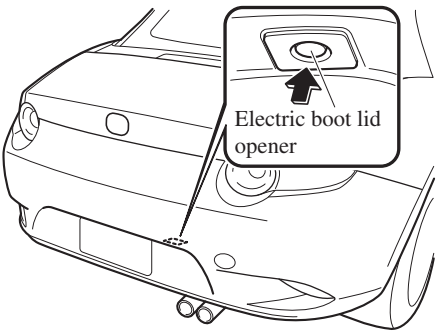
The remote release button function can be disabled by locking the doors using the transmitter, auxiliary key, or a request switch to prevent an intruder in the vehicle from opening the boot.
To enable the remote release button operation, unlock the doors by using the transmitter, auxiliary key, or a request switch, or switch the ignition ON.

NOTE
The remote release button cannot be disabled by locking the doors using the door-lock switch/door-lock knob. Refer to Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Switch on page 3-17. Refer to Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Knob on page 3-20.

Using the electric boot lid opener

(With the remote release button)
A boot lid can also be opened while the key is being carried.
Press the electric boot lid opener and raise the boot lid when the latch releases.
(Without the remote release button)
Unlock the doors and boot lid, then press the electric boot lid opener and raise it when the latch releases.

NOTE
(With the advanced keyless function) • A locked boot lid can also be opened while the key is being carried.



*Some models.

NOTE

- When opening the boot lid with the doors locked, it may require a few seconds for the boot lid latch to release after the electric boot lid opener is pressed.
- The boot lid can be closed when the doors are locked with the key left in the vehicle. However, to prevent locking the key in the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened by pressing the electric boot lid opener. If the boot lid cannot be opened despite doing this procedure, first push the boot lid completely closed, then press the electric boot lid opener to fully open the boot lid.
- If the vehicle battery is dead or there is a malfunction in the electrical system and the boot lid cannot be unlocked, the boot lid can be opened by performing the emergency procedure.
  Refer to When Boot Lid Cannot be Opened on page 7-55.

Closing the boot lid

Use both hands to push the boot lid down until the lock snaps shut. Do not slam it. Pull up on the boot lid to make sure it is secure.

Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions

▼Fuel Requirements

Vehicles with catalytic converters or oxygen sensors must use ONLY UNLEADED FUEL, which will reduce exhaust emissions and keep spark plug fouling to a minimum.

The vehicle will perform best with fuel listed in the table.

Fuel	Research Octane Number	Country
Premium unleaded fuel (Conforming to EN 228 and within E10)*1	95 or above	New Caledonia, Turkey, Canary Islands, Reunion, Morocco, Austria, Greece, Italy, Switzerland, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Hungary, Germany, Poland, Bulgaria, Croatia, Slovenia, Luxembourg, Slovakia, Latvia, Lithuania, France, Czech, Estonia, Romania, The Netherlands, Macedonia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Serbia, Montenegro, Guadeloupe, Martinique, Singapore, Hong Kong, Malaysia, Thailand, Brunei, Macau, Sri Lanka, South Africa, Jamaica, Surinam, Trinidad and Tobago, Commonwealth of Dominica, Myanmar, Taiwan, The Philippines, Cambodia, Laos, Tahiti, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, UAE, Bahrain, Lebanon, Israel, Tunisia, Egypt, Chile, El Salvador, Guatemala, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Bolivia, Colombia, Dominican Republic (LHD), Panama, Uruguay, Honduras, Peru, Cyprus, Malta, Ireland, UK
Regular unleaded fuel	90 or above	Fiji

*1 Europe

Fuel with a lower rating will negatively affect the emission control system performance and could also cause engine knocking and serious engine damage.

⚠ CAUTION

- USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.
  Leaded fuel is harmful to the catalytic converter and oxygen sensors and will lead to deterioration of the emission control system and or failures.
- The use of E10 fuel with 10 % ethanol in Europe is safe for your vehicle. Damage to your vehicle may occur when ethanol exceeds this recommendation.
- Never add fuel system additives, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

▼Emission Control System

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.

⚠ *WARNING*

Never park over or near anything flammable:
Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.

- USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.
- Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.
- Do not coast with the ignition switched off.
- Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.
- Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.
- Do not push-start or pull-start your vehicle.

▼Engine Exhaust (Carbon monoxide)

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle:
Engine exhaust gas is dangerous. This gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is colourless, odourless, and poisonous. When inhaled, it can cause loss of consciousness and death. If you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, keep all windows fully open and contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately.

Do not run the engine when inside an enclosed area:
Running the engine inside an enclosed area, such as a garage, is dangerous. Exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could easily enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Open the windows or adjust the heating or cooling system to draw fresh air when idling the engine:
Exhaust gas is dangerous. When the vehicle is stopped with the windows closed and the engine running for a long time even in an open area, exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Clear snow from underneath and around your vehicle, particularly the tail pipe, before starting the engine:
Running the engine when a vehicle is stopped in deep snow is dangerous. The exhaust pipe could be blocked by the snow, allowing exhaust gas to enter the cabin. Because exhaust gas contains poisonous carbon monoxide, it could cause loss of consciousness or even death to occupants in the cabin.

Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap

⚠ WARNING

When removing the fuel-filler cap, loosen the cap slightly and wait for any hissing to stop, then remove it:
Fuel spray is dangerous. Fuel can burn skin and eyes and cause illness if ingested. Fuel spray is released when there is pressure in the fuel tank and the fuel-filler cap is removed too quickly.

Before refuelling, stop the engine, and always keep sparks and flames away from the filler neck:
Fuel vapour is dangerous. It could be ignited by sparks or flames causing serious burns and injuries.
Additionally, use of the incorrect fuel-filler cap or not using a fuel-filler cap may result in a fuel leak, which could result in serious burns or death in an accident.

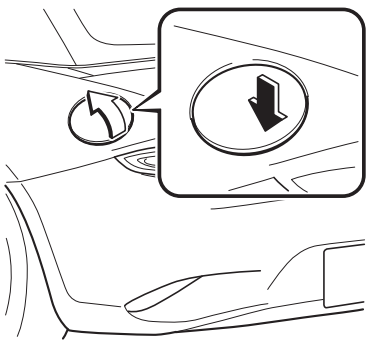
Do not continue refuelling after the fuel pump nozzle shuts off automatically:
Continuing to add fuel after the fuel pump nozzle has shut off automatically is dangerous because overfilling the fuel tank may cause fuel overflow or leakage. Fuel overflow and leakage could damage the vehicle and if the fuel ignites it could cause a fire and explosion resulting in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Always use only a designated Mazda fuel-filler cap or an approved equivalent, available at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The wrong cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel and emission control systems.

▼Fuel-Filler Flap

When the fuel-filler flap end is pressed with the doors unlocked, the fuel-filler flap rises.
The fuel-filler flap operates in conjunction with the door locking/unlocking mechanism.
Make sure to lock both the doors when leaving the vehicle.
Refer to Door Locks on page 3-11.
To close, press the fuel-filler flap until a click sound is heard.



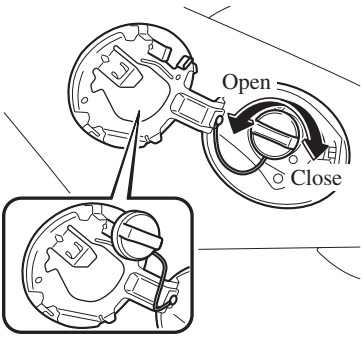
NOTE

Lock the doors after closing the fuel flap.
If the fuel flap is closed after locking the doors, the fuel flap cannot be locked.

▼Fuel-Filler Cap

To remove the fuel-filler cap, turn it anticlockwise.
Attach the removed cap to the inner side of the fuel flap.

To close the fuel-filler cap, turn it clockwise until a click is heard.



Steering Wheel

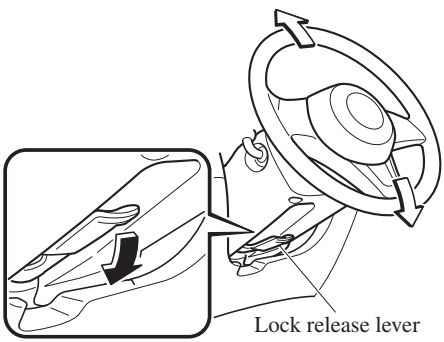
⚠ *WARNING*

Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving:
Adjusting the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Moving it can very easily cause the driver to abruptly turn to the left or right. This can lead to loss of control or an accident.

▼Steering Wheel Adjustment

To change the angle of the steering wheel:

1. Stop the vehicle, and then pull down the lock release lever under the steering column.



2. Tilt the steering wheel to the desired positions, then push the lever up to lock the column.
3. Attempt to push the steering wheel up and down to make sure it's locked before driving.

Mirrors

Before driving, adjust the inside and outside mirrors.

▼Outside Mirrors

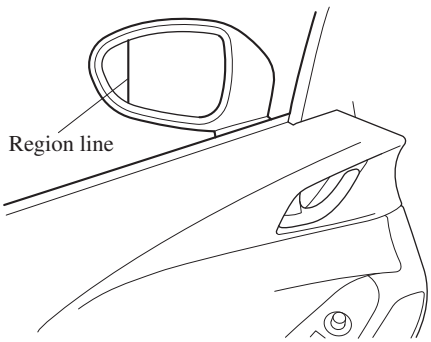
⚠ *WARNING*

Be sure to look over your shoulder before changing lanes:
Changing lanes without taking into account the actual distance of the vehicle in the convex mirror is dangerous. You could have a serious accident. What you see in the convex mirror is closer than it appears.

NOTE

(Driver's Side Wide Angle Mirror*)

- The wide angle mirror has two curvatures on its surface separated by a region line into outer and inner regions. The inner region is a standard convex mirror whereas the outer region allows for a wider range of visibility within the same sweep. This combination allows for better assurance when making lane changes.



- The perceived distance of objects in the outer and inner regions of the wide angle mirror is different. Objects appearing in the outer region are actually further away than they are in the inner region.

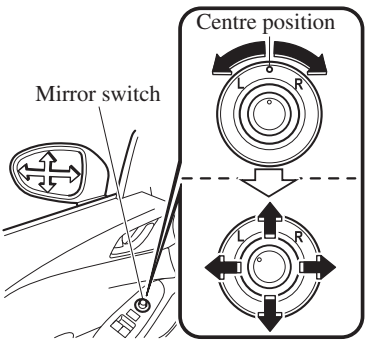
*Some models.

Power mirror adjustment

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

To adjust:

1. Rotate the mirror switch to the left L or right R to choose the left or right side mirror.
2. Press the mirror switch in the appropriate direction.



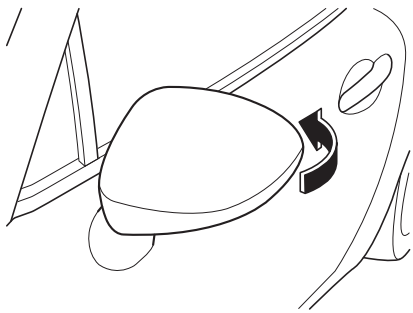
After adjusting the mirror, lock the control by rotating the switch to the centre position.

Folding mirror

⚠ *WARNING*

Always return the outside mirrors to the driving position before you start driving:
Driving with the outside mirrors folded in is dangerous. Your rear view will be restricted, and you could have an accident.

Manually fold the outside mirror rearward until it is flush with the vehicle.



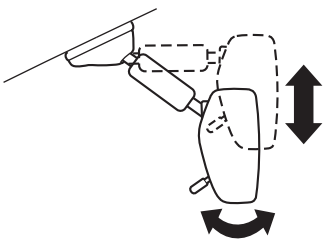
▼Rearview Mirror

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not stack cargo or objects higher than the seatbacks:
Cargo stacked higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. It can block your view in the rearview mirror, which might cause you to hit another car when changing lanes.

Rearview mirror adjustment

Before driving, adjust the rearview mirror to centre on the scene through the rear window.



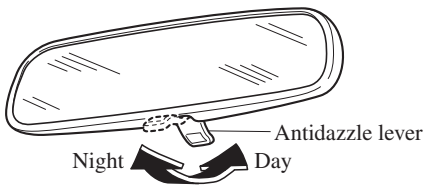
NOTE

For the manual antidazzle mirror, perform the adjustment with the antidazzle lever in the day position.

Reducing glare from headlights

Manual antidazzle mirror

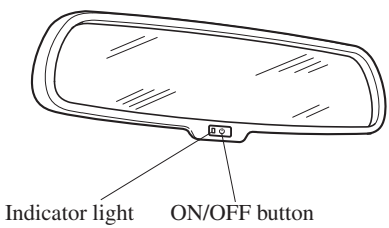
Push the antidazzle lever forward for day driving. Pull it back to reduce glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear.



Auto-dimming mirror

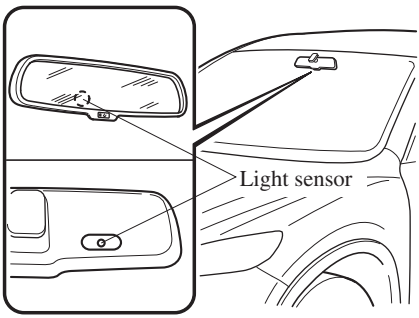
The auto-dimming mirror automatically reduces the glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear when the ignition is switched ON.

Press the ON/OFF button ⏻ to cancel the auto-dimming function. The indicator light will turn off.
To reactivate the auto-dimming function, press the ON/OFF button ⏻. The indicator light will illuminate.



NOTE

Do not use glass cleaner or suspend objects on or around the light sensor. Otherwise, light sensor sensitivity will be affected and may not operate normally.



The auto-dimming function is cancelled when the ignition is switched ON and the shift/selector lever is in reverse (R).

Power Windows

The ignition must be switched ON for the power windows to operate.

⚠ *WARNING*

Make sure the opening is clear before closing a window:
Closing a power window is dangerous. A person's hands, head, or even neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury or even death. This warning applies especially to children.

Never allow children to play with power window switches:
Power window switches that are not locked with the power window lock switch would allow children to operate power windows unintentionally, which could result in serious injury if a child's hands, head or neck becomes caught by the window.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent burning out the fuse and damaging the power window system, do not open or close both windows at once.

NOTE

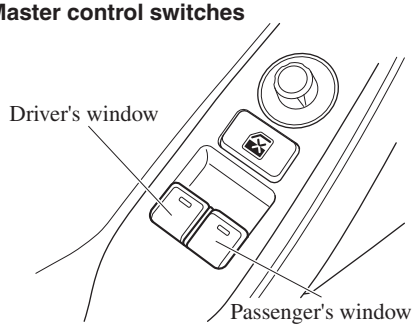
A power window may no longer open/close if you continue to press the switch after opening/closing the power window. If the power window does not open/close, wait a moment and then operate the switch again.

▼Operating the Power Windows

NOTE

- The passenger window can be operated with each door switch when the power window lock switch on the driver's door is in the unlocked position (page 3-36).
- The passenger window can also be operated using the master control switches on the driver's door.

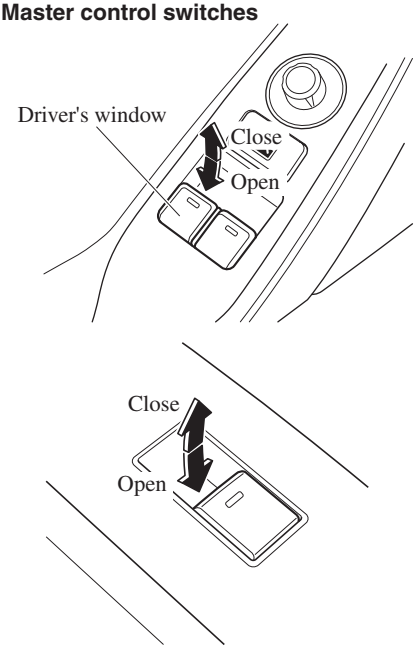
Master control switches



Normal opening/closing

To open the window to the desired position, lightly hold down the switch. To close the window to the desired position, lightly pull up the switch.

Master control switches



Auto-opening

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch completely down.

To stop the window partway, pull or press the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

NOTE
The power window cannot be fully closed while the door is open.

Power window system initialization procedure

If the battery was disconnected during vehicle maintenance, or for other reasons (such as a switch continues to be operated after the window is open/closed), the window will not fully open automatically. Resetting of the automatic function can be performed using the master control switches or each passenger door switch. The power window auto function reset procedure can be done on both door switches. The power window auto function will only resume on the power window that has been reset.

1. Close the doors and the convertible top.
2. Switch the ignition ON.
3. Make sure that the power window lock switch located on the driver's door is not depressed.
4. Press the switch and fully open the window.
5. Pull up the switch to fully close the window and continue holding the switch for about 2 seconds after the window fully closed.
6. Repeat Steps 4-5 for the passenger power window while seated in the passenger seat.
7. Make sure that the power windows operate correctly using the door switches.

After the system has been re-initialized, passenger window can be fully opened automatically using the master control switches.

If the automatic power window operation does not operate normally while the doors or convertible top are opened/closed, reset it using the previous procedures.

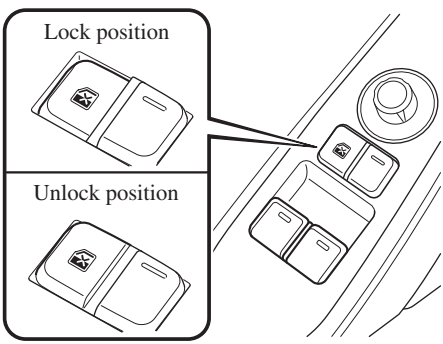
Engine-off power window operation

The power window can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to off with both doors closed. If any door is opened, the power window will stop operating.

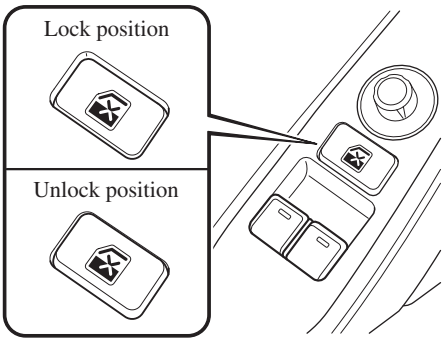
NOTE
For engine-off operation of the power window, the switch must be held up firmly throughout window closure because the auto-closing function will be inoperable.

▼Power Window Lock Switch

This feature prevents the passenger's power window from operating. Keep this switch in the locked position while children are in the vehicle.
Locked position (button depressed):
Only the driver's power window can be operated.
Unlocked position (button not depressed):
Both power windows on each door can be operated.
(With door-lock switch)

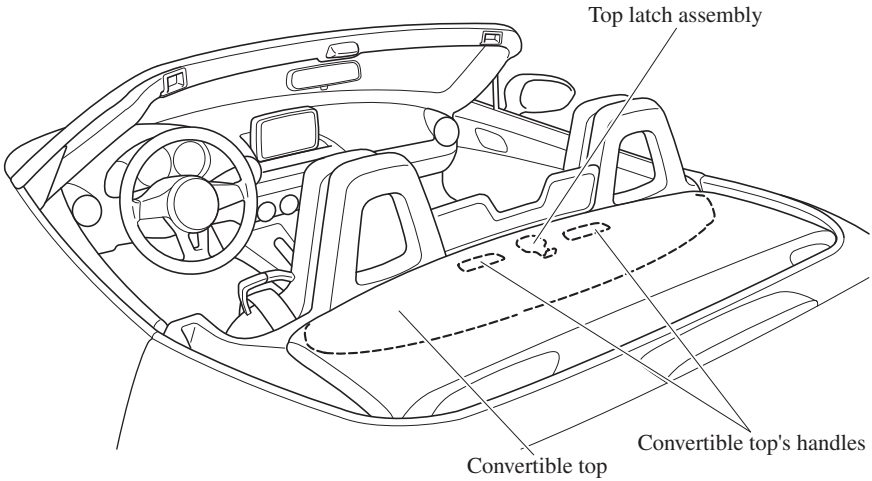


(Without door-lock switch)



NOTE
When the power window lock switch is in the locked position, the light on the passenger power window switch turns off. The light may be difficult to see depending on the surrounding brightness.

Convertible Top (Soft Top)



▼Convertible Top Precautions

⚠ *WARNING*

Sit in the seat with the seat belt correctly fastened when the vehicle is moving:
Standing in the vehicle, or sitting on the convertible top storage area or centre console when the vehicle is moving is a dangerous way to ride. During a sudden manoeuvre or collision you could be seriously injured or even killed.

Always keep your hands and fingers away from the fastening mechanisms when moving the convertible top:
It is dangerous to place your hands or fingers near the fastening mechanisms. Your hands or fingers could be caught and injured by the mechanism.

Convertible Top (Soft Top)

⚠ CAUTION

- Remove leaves or other matter that may accumulate on and around the convertible top. If leaves or other matter block the drain filter, water may enter the vehicle. Clean the drain filter at least once a year.
  Refer to Convertible Top Maintenance on page 6-58.
- Before opening the convertible top, make sure the rear window defogger switch is turned off. Otherwise the heat generated from the defogger could damage the convertible top and the internal material.
- Before lowering or raising the convertible top, stop in a safe place off the right-of-way and park on a level surface.
- Make sure nothing is on the convertible top or near the back window when raising or lowering the convertible top.
  Even small objects may interfere and cause damage.
- Do not drive through an automatic car wash; it may damage the convertible top.
- Do not raise or lower the convertible top when the temperature is below 5 °C (41 °F) ; this will damage the convertible top material.
- Do not lower the convertible top when it's wet. If the convertible top dries while folded, it will deteriorate and mold.
- Lowering the convertible top while it's wet can also cause water to drip into the passenger compartment.
- Do not raise or lower the convertible top in a strong wind as it could damage the convertible top or cause an unexpected accident.

NOTE

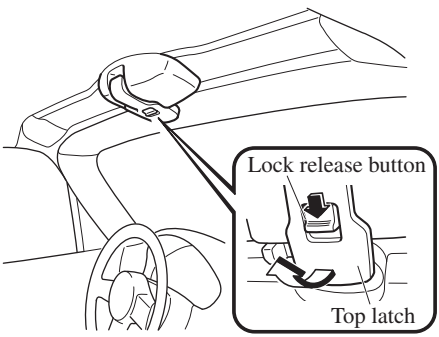
- The power windows go down automatically in conjunction with the convertible top opening/closing. However, this is a function for improving the operability, and it does not mean there is a problem. If the vehicle battery is disconnected for vehicle maintenance or other reasons, the power windows will not go down automatically.
  If the power windows do not go down, the automatic open/close mechanism for the windows must be reset.
  Refer to Operating the Power Windows on page 3-34.
- The windblocker reduces the amount of wind coming into the cabin from behind when driving with the convertible top opened.
  Refer to Windblocker on page 5-133.
- When lowering the convertible top, make sure objects inside the vehicle are not blown away by the wind.
- Secure all loose objects inside before driving with the convertible top down.
- To help prevent burglary or vandalism and to ensure that the passenger compartment stays dry, close the convertible top securely and lock both doors when leaving the vehicle.
- The soft top is made of high quality material and if it is not maintained correctly, the material could harden, becomes stained, or have an uneven gloss.

▼Lowering the Convertible Top

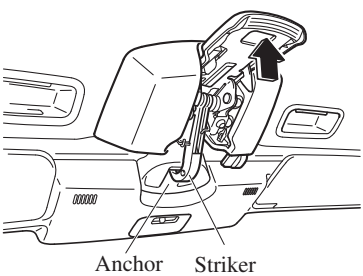
⚠ CAUTION

Do not sit on the folded convertible top. Otherwise, the convertible top could be damaged or you may fall off and be injured.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. If the engine is running, turn it off.
3. Make sure there are no objects which have been placed in the area where the convertible top is to be retracted.
4. With the lock release button depressed forward, pull back the top latch lever to unlock it.



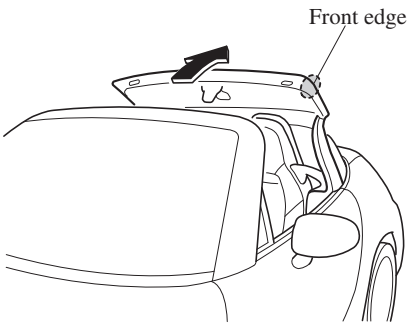
5. Remove the striker from the anchor.



NOTE

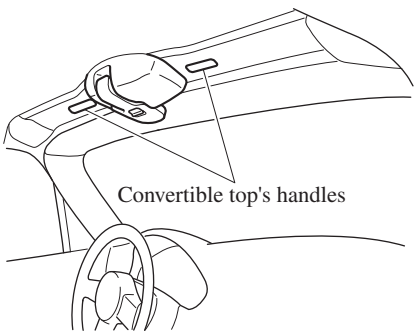
If the power windows do not go down automatically, fully open the windows or open the doors.

6. Standing outside of the vehicle, hold the convertible top along the front edge and pull it toward the vehicle rear.

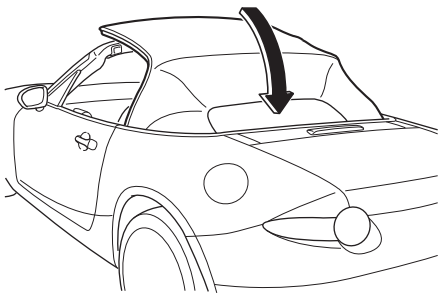


NOTE

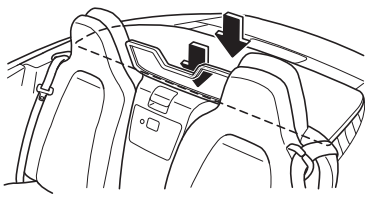
To lower the convertible top from inside the vehicle, use the convertible top's handles.



7. Move the convertible top rearward and fold it while pressing the rear glass lightly with your hand.

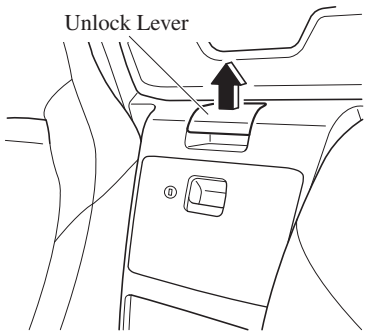


8. With the back end of the convertible top pressed, press the front end until a latch sound is heard.
   Lightly rock the retracted convertible top to make sure it is securely locked.

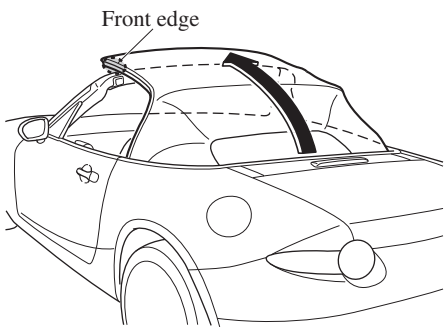


▼Raising the Convertible Top

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. If the engine is running, turn it off.
3. Pull up the unlock lever to disengage the lock.

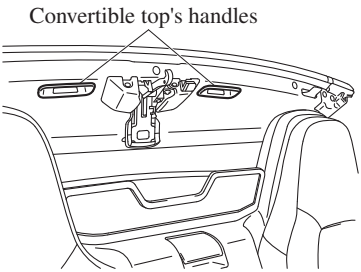


4. Standing outside of the vehicle, hold the convertible top along the front edge and pull it towards the vehicle front.

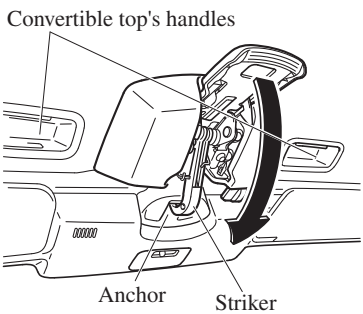


NOTE

- If the power windows do not go down automatically, fully open the windows or open the doors.
- To raise the convertible top from inside the vehicle, use the convertible top's handles.

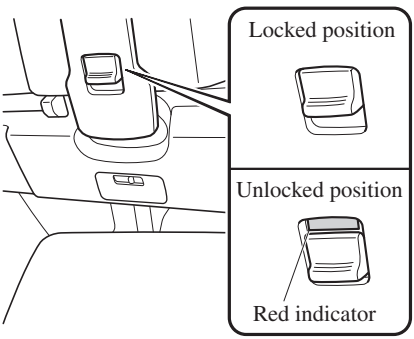


5. Sitting in a seat, grasp the convertible top's handles, and press the convertible top against the windscreen.
   Make sure the striker engages with the anchor, move the top latch slowly, and then push the top latch upward until a latch sound is heard.



⚠ CAUTION

- Driving with the convertible top not fully locked could damage the convertible top.
  If the red indicator is visible on the lock release button, the convertible top is not locked. After locking the convertible top, verify that the red indicator is not visible.



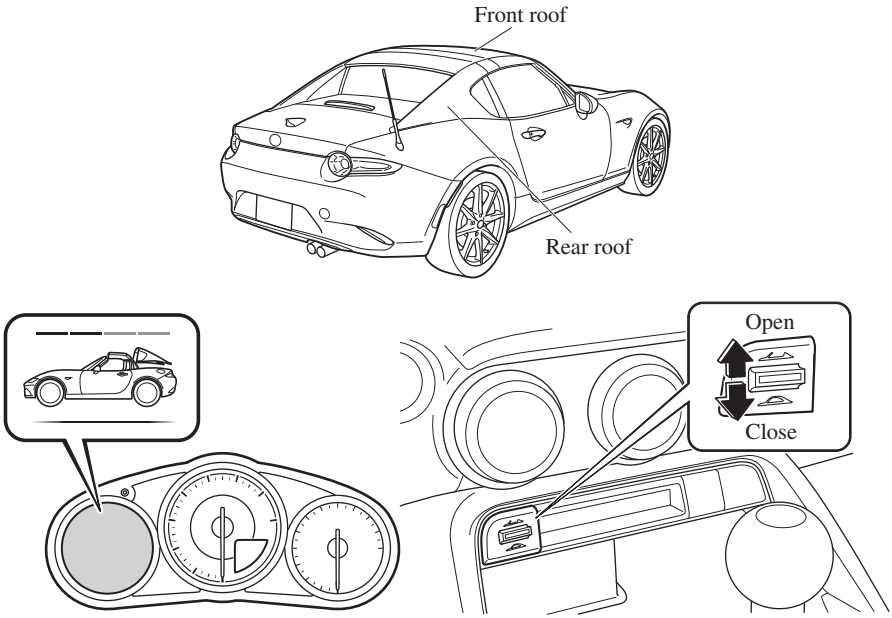
- Do not spray water directly near the seam of the window and convertible top when flushing away dirt on the soft top with water. Otherwise, water may enter the vehicle.
  Refer to Convertible Top Maintenance on page 6-58.

NOTE

- The convertible top may be constricted if it is left retracted for a long period. Therefore, if the top has become constricted, it may be difficult to hook the top latch striker to the anchor.
- Make sure the convertible top is securely locked by pushing up on it. If it still sounds loose (rattles) after being locked by the top latch, have it inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)

The Retractable fastback opens/closes electrically by operating switches in the vehicle. When opening/closing the roof and window glass operate together. The front roof is stored in the storage area under rear roof.



▼Retractable Fastback Precautions

⚠ *WARNING*

Always confirm that there are no people around the vehicle before operating the roof:
If the roof were to operate unexpectedly, it could result in an accident and serious injury from someone getting caught in the mechanism.

Sit in the seat with the seat belt correctly fastened when the vehicle is moving:
Standing in the vehicle, or sitting on the rear roof or centre console when the vehicle is moving is a dangerous way to ride. During a sudden manoeuvre or collision you could be seriously injured or even killed.

Always keep your hands and fingers away from the fastening mechanisms when moving the roof:
It is dangerous to place your hands or fingers near the fastening mechanisms. Your hands or fingers could be caught and injured by the mechanism.

Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)

⚠ CAUTION

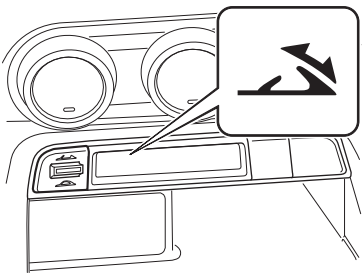
- When getting in or out of the vehicle with the roof open, be careful not to hit your head or body on the corner of the windscreen glass. It may cause an injury.
- Do not drive with the roof partially opened; this could damage the roof or cause an unexpected accident.
- Children should not be allowed to play with the retractable fastback switch.
- Do not place objects or cargo around the rear roof, rear glass, or the front roof storage area. Even small objects may interfere and cause damage.
- Remove leaves that accumulate on and around the roof. If the leaves are not removed, they may block the water drainage outlets.
- Before opening the roof, make sure the rear window defogger switch (Defroster) is turned off. Otherwise the heat generated from the defogger could damage the roof and the internal material.
- When opening/closing the roof, verify that there is no obstruction above the roof (about 1.6 m (5 ft 2 in) from the ground) so as not to damage the roof or the obstruction.
- When opening/closing the roof, do not apply any load to the front roof or the rear roof. The opening/closing mechanism of the roof may be damaged.
- Do not spray water directly near the seam of the window and roof when washing off dirt on the roof with water. Otherwise, water may enter the cabin.
  Refer to Retractable Fastback Maintenance on page 6-61.
- Open/close the roof with the vehicle parked on a hard, level ground in a safe place where the vehicle does not obstruct traffic. If the roof is opened/closed on a slope or bump, the opening/closing mechanism of the roof may be damaged.
- Do not drive through an automatic car wash as it may damage the roof.
- Do not open or close the roof forcefully when the ambient temperature is low and the roof or the surrounding area is frozen as it could damage the roof.
- Opening the roof while it is wet can also cause water to drip into the passenger compartment.
- Do not open or close the roof in a strong wind as it could damage the roof.

NOTE

- When opening the roof, make sure objects inside the vehicle are not blown away by the wind.
- Secure all loose objects inside before driving with the roof down.
- To help prevent burglary or vandalism and to ensure that the passenger compartment stays dry, close the roof securely and lock both doors when leaving the vehicle.
- The power windows lower automatically in conjunction with the roof opening/closing. This is a function for improving the operability and it does not indicate a problem.
  If the vehicle battery is disconnected for vehicle maintenance or other reasons, the power windows will not lower automatically. If the power windows do not lower, reset the power window automatic open/close function.
  Refer to Operating the Power Windows on page 3-34.
- The windblocker reduces the amount of wind coming into the cabin from behind when driving with the roof opened.
  Refer to Windblocker on page 5-133.

▼Operation Indication

Operation Indicator Light



When illuminated

This indicates that the roof is only partially open.

When flashing

This indicates that the roof is being open/closed. (During switch operation)

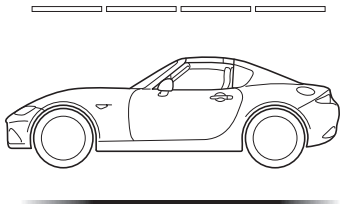
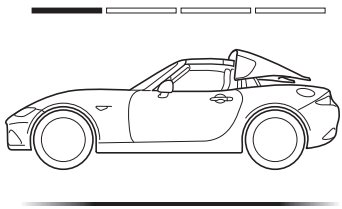
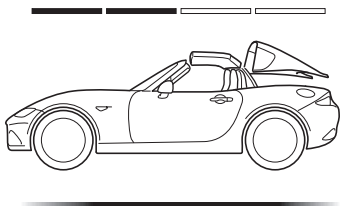
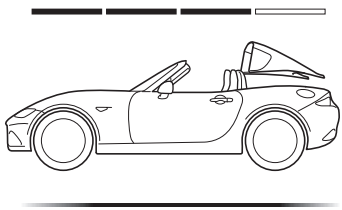
When not illuminated

This indicates that the roof is open/closed fully.

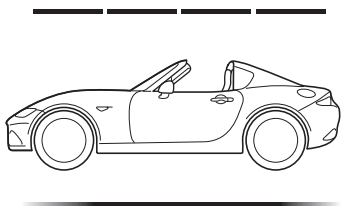
NOTE
If the operation indicator light flashes quickly, there may be a system malfunction. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Roof operation display

The roof operation status is indicated on the multi-information display.
The following table shows display examples when opening the roof:

Operation	Roof status	Indication
Before operation	Roof closed	
During operation	Rear roof opened	
	Rear roof opened Front roof opened	
	Rear roof opened Front roof stored	

Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)

Operation	Roof status	Indication
Operation complete	Rear roof closed	

▼Operation Conditions

If the following conditions have been satisfied, the roof can be opened/closed.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- Shift/selector lever is in a position other than R (reverse).
- Vehicle speed is 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less.
- The boot lid is closed.

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6.2 mph) during the opening/closing operation, the opening/closing operation of the roof stops midstream. If the roof stops midstream, visibility at the rear may be impaired or damage to the roof may occur which could lead to an accident. Operate the switch again with the vehicle stopped, depending on the road and traffic conditions, to complete opening/closing operation of the roof.

NOTE

If the roof cannot be closed even after the operation conditions are all met, have it checked at an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
The roof can be closed manually as an emergency measure.
Refer to When the Roof Cannot be Closed on page 7-60.

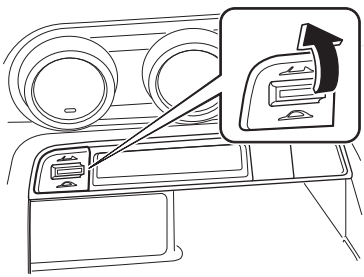
▼Opening the Roof

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transmission in Park (P), a manual transmission in Neutral.
3. Apply the parking brake with the brake pedal depressed.
4. Start the Engine.

NOTE

Do not open/close the roof with the engine stopped. Otherwise the vehicle's battery power could be depleted.

5. Continue pressing the retractable fastback switch in the open direction until the roof is completely open.



NOTE

- If the retractable fastback switch is pressed in the open direction, a warning beep sounds.
- If the windows are closed, the windows automatically open partially when the rear roof opens.
  After the rear roof is opened and the retractable fastback switch is continuously pressed in the open direction, the power windows close completely.
  Once you remove your hand from the switch, the power windows do not close even if it is operated again. If this happens, completely close the power windows using the power window switch.
- The roof keeps opening and the operation indicator light flashes while the retractable fastback switch is pressed in the open direction.
- If the switch is released while the roof is opening, the roof stops opening. If the switch is pressed in the open direction again, the roof resumes opening.
- When the operation is finished, a beep sound is heard and the operation indicator light turns off.
- When the roof is half-open, the front roof resumes opening after the rear roof is completely open.

Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)

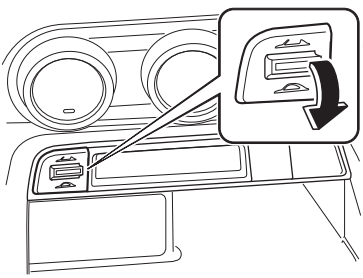
▼Closing the Roof

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transmission in Park (P), a manual transmission in Neutral.
3. Apply the parking brake with the brake pedal depressed.
4. Start the Engine.

NOTE

Do not open/close the roof with the engine stopped. Otherwise the vehicle's battery power could be depleted.

5. Slightly slide the seats back if they are in the foremost position.
6. Continue pressing the retractable fastback switch in the close direction until the rear roof is completely closed.



NOTE

- If the retractable fastback switch is pressed in the close direction, a warning beep sounds.
- If the windows are closed, the windows automatically open partially when the rear roof opens.
  After the rear roof is closed and the retractable fastback switch is continuously pressed in the close direction, the power windows close completely.
  Once you remove your hand from the switch, the power windows do not close even if it is operated again. If this happens, completely close the power windows using the power window switch.
- The roof keeps closing and the operation indicator light flashes while the retractable fastback switch is pressed in the close direction.
- If the switch is released while the roof is closing, the roof stops closing. If the switch is pressed in the close direction again, the roof resumes closing.
- When the operation is finished, a beep sound is heard and the operation indicator light turns off.

Modification and Add-On Equipment

Mazda cannot guarantee the immobilizer and the theft-deterrent systems' operation if the system has been modified or if any add-on equipment has been installed.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damage to the vehicle, do not modify the system or install any add-on equipment to the immobilizer and the theft-deterrent systems or the vehicle.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system allows the engine to start only with a key the system recognises.

If someone attempts to start the engine with an unrecognised key, the engine will not start, thereby helping to prevent vehicle theft.
If you have a problem with the immobilizer system or the key, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

⚠ CAUTION

- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- To avoid damage to the key, do not:
  - Drop the key.
  - Get the key wet.
  - Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.
  - Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.
- If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

- The keys carry a unique electronic code. For this reason, and to assure your safety, obtaining a replacement key requires some waiting time. They are only available through an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Always keep a spare key in case one is lost. If a key is lost, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
- If you lose a key, an Authorised Mazda Repairer will reset the electronic codes of your remaining keys and immobilizer system. Bring all the remaining keys to an Authorised Mazda Repairer to reset. Starting the vehicle with a key that has not been reset is not possible.

▼Operation

NOTE

- The engine may not start and security indicator light may illuminate or flash if the key is placed in an area where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal, such as on the instrument panel. Move the key to a location within the signal range, switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine.
- Signals from a TV or radio station, or from a transceiver or mobile telephone could interfere with your immobilizer system. If you are using the proper key and the engine fails to start, check the security indicator light.

Arming

The system is armed when the ignition is switched from ON to off.
The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes every 2 seconds until the system is disarmed.

Disarming

The system is disarmed when the ignition is switched ON with the correct programmed key. The security indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then turns off. If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following:
Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission.
Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

- If the security indicator light flashes continuously while you are driving, do not shut off the engine. Go to an Authorised Mazda Repairer and have it checked. If the engine is shut off while the indicator light is flashing, you will not be able to restart it.
- Because the electronic codes are reset when the immobilizer system is repaired, the keys are needed. Make sure to bring all the keys to an Authorised Mazda Repairer so that they can be programmed.

Theft-Deterrent System*

If the theft-deterrent system detects an inappropriate entry into the vehicle or the intrusion sensor detects movement in the vehicle which could result in the vehicle (with the intrusion sensor) or its contents being stolen, the alarm alerts the surrounding area of an abnormality by sounding the siren/horn and flashing the hazard warning lights.

The system will not function unless it's properly armed. So when you leave the vehicle, follow the arming procedure correctly.

Intrusion sensor*

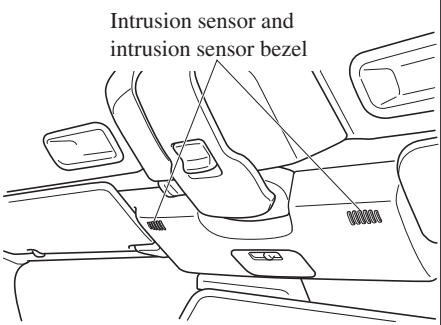
The intrusion sensor uses ultrasonic waves to detect movement inside the vehicle and to raise an alert of an intrusion into the vehicle.

The intrusion sensor detects certain kinds of movement inside the vehicle, however, it may also respond to phenomenon outside the vehicle such as vibrations, loud noise, wind, and air currents.

⚠ CAUTION

In order for the intrusion sensor to operate appropriately, be aware of the following:

- Do not hang clothing or objects from a head restraint.
- Return the sunvisors to their original positions.
- Do not blind the intrusion sensor by covering it or placing objects over it.
- Do not allow the intrusion sensor to get soiled or wipe it with a liquid.
- Do not shock or cause an impact to the intrusion sensor or the intrusion sensor bezel.
- Do not install seats that are not Mazda genuine products.
- To prevent obstruction of intrusion sensor, do not place objects or cargo near the intrusion sensor that are higher than the head restraints.



*Some models.

▼Operation

Siren/Horn triggering conditions

The siren/horn sounds intermittently and the hazard warning lights flash for about 30 seconds when the system is triggered by any one of the following:

- Unlocking a door with an inside door-lock knob.
- Forcing open a door, the bonnet or the boot lid.
- Opening the bonnet by operating the bonnet release handle.
- Switching the ignition ON without using the push button start.
- **(With the intrusion sensor)**
  The intrusion sensor detects a movement in the vehicle.

The system will be triggered again (up to 10 times) if one of the above conditions remains.

- **(With the intrusion sensor)**
  Disconnecting the battery terminal (the hazard warning lights do not flash).

The system will be triggered about 10 times.

NOTE

- The boot lid does not open while the theft-deterrent system is operating.
- If the battery goes dead while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the siren/horn will activate and the hazard warning lights will flash when the battery is charged or replaced.

▼How to Arm the System

1. Close the windows and the convertible top securely.

NOTE

(With the intrusion sensor)
The intrusion sensor function can be armed only when the convertible top is closed.
Even with a window open, the system can be armed, however, leaving the windows even partially open can invite theft, and wind blowing into the vehicle could trigger the alarm.
The intrusion sensor function can also be cancelled.
Refer to Cancelling the Intrusion Sensor (With Intrusion Sensor) on page 3-57.

2. Switch the ignition OFF.
3. Make sure the bonnet, convertible top, the doors, and the boot lid are closed.
4. Press the lock button on the transmitter or lock the driver's door from the outside with the auxiliary key.
   The hazard warning lights will flash once.
   (With the advanced keyless function)
   Press a request switch.

   The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes twice per second for 20 seconds.

5. After 20 seconds, the system is fully armed.

NOTE

- The theft-deterrent system can also be armed by activating the auto relock function with all the doors, the boot lid and the bonnet closed. Refer to Transmitter on page 3-5.
- The system will disarm if one of the following operations takes place within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button:
  - Unlocking any door.
  - Opening any door.
  - Opening the bonnet.
  - Switching the ignition ON.

  To rearm the system, do the arming procedure again.
- When the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or using the auxiliary key while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.

▼Cancelling the Intrusion Sensor (With Intrusion Sensor)

If the theft deterrent system has been armed while any of the following conditions are present, cancel the intrusion sensor to prevent the alarm from triggering unnecessarily.

(Intrusion sensor)

- Leaving the vehicle with a movable object, passengers or pets remaining inside.
- Leaving an object inside the vehicle that can roll around, such as when the vehicle is placed on a tilting, unstable surface when being shipped.
- Hanging small objects/accessories in the vehicle, or placing other items which can move easily inside the vehicle.
- Parking in an area where there is strong vibration or loud noise.
- When using a high pressure or automatic car wash.
- Continuous shock and vibration from hail or thunder and lightning is transmitted to the vehicle.
- Doors are locked with a window left open.
- An accessory heater or device that produces moving air and vibration operates while the theft deterrent system is armed.

NOTE

If any door or the boot lid remains closed for 30 seconds, both doors and the boot lid automatically re-lock and the theft deterrent system arms even if a window or the convertible top is left open.

To cancel the intrusion sensor, press the intrusion sensor cancel button on the transmitter within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button.
The hazard warning lights will flash three times.

NOTE

- To reactivate the intrusion sensor, turn off the armed theft-deterrent system and then rearm it.
- The intrusion sensor is operational when the theft-deterrent system is armed. To cancel the intrusion sensor, press the intrusion sensor cancel button each time the theft-deterrent system is armed.

▼To Turn Off an Armed System

An armed system can be turned off using any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.
- Starting the engine with the push button start.
- **(With the advanced keyless function)**
  - Pressing a request switch on the doors.

The hazard warning lights will flash twice.

NOTE

When the doors are unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the transmitter while the theft-deterrent system is turned off, the hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that the system is turned off.

▼To Stop the Alarm

A triggered alarm can be turned off using any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.
- Starting the engine with the push button start.
- **(With the advanced keyless function)**
  - Pressing a request switch on the doors.
  - Pressing the electric boot lid opener while the key is being carried.

The hazard warning lights will flash twice.

▼Theft-Deterrent Labels

A label indicating that your vehicle is equipped with a Theft-Deterrent System is in the console box.

Mazda recommends that you affix it to the lower rear corner of a front door window.

Running-In

No special running-in is necessary, but a few precautions in the first 1,000 km (600 miles) may add to the performance, economy, and life of the vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Do not maintain one constant speed, either slow or fast, for a long period of time.
- Do not drive constantly at full-throttle or high engine rpm for extended periods of time.
- Avoid unnecessary hard stops.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.

Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment

How you operate your Mazda determines how far it will travel on a tank of fuel. Use these suggestions to help save fuel and reduce CO2.

- Avoid long warm-ups. Once the engine runs smoothly, begin driving.
- Avoid fast starts.
- Drive at lower speeds.
- Anticipate when to apply the brakes (avoid sudden braking).
- Follow the maintenance schedule (page 6-3) and have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform inspections and servicing.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Slow down on rough roads.
- Keep the tyres properly inflated.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Keep the wheels in correct alignment.
- Keep windows closed at high speeds.
- Slow down when driving in crosswinds and headwinds.

⚠ *WARNING*

Never stop the engine when going down a hill:
Stopping the engine when going down a hill is dangerous. This causes the loss of power steering and power brake control, and may cause damage to the drivetrain. Any loss of steering or braking control could cause an accident.

Hazardous Driving

⚠ *WARNING*

Be extremely careful if it is necessary to downshift on slippery surfaces:
Downshifting into lower gear while driving on slippery surfaces is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

When driving on ice or in water, snow, mud, sand, or similar hazards:

- Be cautious and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking and sudden manoeuvring.
- Do not pump the brakes. Continue to press down on the brake pedal.
  Refer to Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-86.
- If you get stuck, select a lower gear and accelerate slowly. Do not spin the rear wheels.
- For more traction in starting on slippery surfaces such as ice or packed snow, use sand, rock salt, chains, carpeting, or other nonslip material under the rear wheels.

NOTE

Use snow chains only on the rear wheels.

Floor Mat

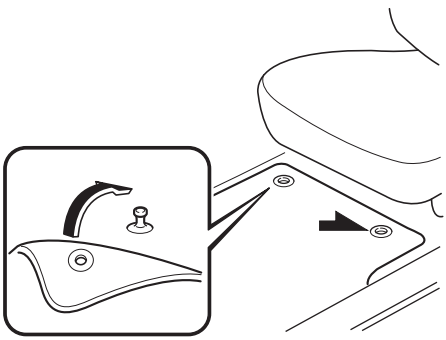
We recommend the use of Genuine Mazda floor mats.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the floor mats are secured with the grommets or the retainers to prevent them from bunching up under the foot pedals (Driver's side):
Using a floor mat that is not secured is dangerous as it will interfere with the accelerator and brake pedal operation (driver's side), which could result in an accident.
Only use a floor mat which conforms to the shape of the floor on the driver's side and make sure it is oriented correctly.
Secure the floor mat using the grommets or retainers.
There are various ways to secure floor mats depending on the type used, therefore secure the mat according to the type.
After installing the floor mat, make sure that it does not slide from side to side or back and forth, and that there is sufficient clearance with the accelerator and brake pedals on the driver's side.
After removing the floor mat for cleaning or some other reason, always securely reinstall it while paying attention to the precautions just mentioned.

⚠ WARNING

Do not install two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side:
Installing two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side is dangerous as the retention pins can only keep one floor mat from sliding forward.
Loose floor mat(s) will interfere with the foot pedals and could result in an accident.
If using an all weather mat for winter use always remove the original floor mat.



When setting a floor mat, position the floor mat so that its grommets or retainers are inserted over the pointed end of the retention posts.

Rocking the Vehicle

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not spin the wheels at high speed, and do not allow anyone to stand behind a wheel when pushing the vehicle:
When the vehicle is stuck, spinning the wheels at high speed is dangerous. The spinning tyre could overheat and explode. This could cause serious injuries.

⚠ CAUTION

Too much rocking may cause engine overheating, transmission failure, and tyre damage.

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand or mud, depress the accelerator slightly and slowly move the shift lever from 1 (D) to R.

Winter Driving

Carry emergency gear, including tyre chains, window scraper, flares, a small shovel, jumper leads, and a small bag of sand or salt.
Ask an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to check the following:

- Have the proper ratio of antifreeze in the radiator.
  Refer to Engine Coolant on page 6-20.
- Inspect the battery and its leads. Cold reduces battery capacity.
- Use an engine oil appropriate for the lowest ambient temperatures that the vehicle will be driven in (page 6-17).
- Inspect the ignition system for damage and loose connections.
- Use washer fluid made with antifreeze—but do not use engine coolant antifreeze for washer fluid (page 6-23).

NOTE

- Do not use the parking brake in freezing weather as it may freeze. Instead, shift to P with an automatic transmission and to 1 or R with a manual transmission. Block the rear wheels.
- Remove snow before driving. Snow left on the windscreen is dangerous as it could obstruct vision. In addition, if the vehicle is driven with snow accumulated on the bonnet, the active bonnet system may not activate normally in an emergency.
- Do not open or close the soft top when the temperature is 5 °C (41 °F) or less. The material of the soft top could be damaged by freezing.
- Do not apply excessive force to a window scraper when removing ice or frozen snow on the mirror glass and windscreen.
- Never use warm or hot water for removing snow or ice from windows and mirrors as it could result in the glass cracking.
- Drive slowly. Braking performance can be adversely affected if snow or ice adheres to the brake components. If this situation occurs, drive the vehicle slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal.

▼Snow Tyres

⚠ *WARNING*

Use only the same size and type tyres (snow, radial, or non-radial) on all four wheels:
Using tyres different in size or type is dangerous. Your vehicle's handling could be greatly affected and result in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Check local regulations before using studded tyres.

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with the tyre pressure monitoring system (vehicle with run-flat tyres), the system may not function correctly when using tyres with steel wire reinforcement in the sidewalls (page 4-146).

Use snow tyres on all four wheels

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed for your snow tyres or legal speed limits.

Europe

When snow tyres are used, select the specified size and pressure (page 9-8).

▼Tyre Chains

Check local regulations before using tyre chains.

⚠ CAUTION

- Chains may affect handling.
- Do not go faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, and sharp turns.
- Avoid locked-wheel braking.
- Do not use chains on roads that are free of snow or ice. The tyres and chains could be damaged.
- Chains may scratch or chip aluminium wheels.

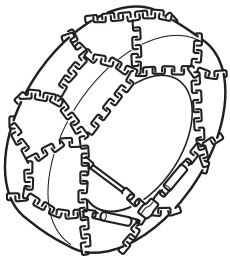
NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with the tyre pressure monitoring system, the system may not function correctly when using tyre chains.

Install the chains on the rear tyres only. Do not use chains on the front tyres.

Tyre chain selection (Europe)

Mazda recommends hexagon type steel ring chains. Select the proper type according to your tyre size.



Tyre size	Tyre chain
195/50R16	Hexagon type
205/45R17	Hexagon type

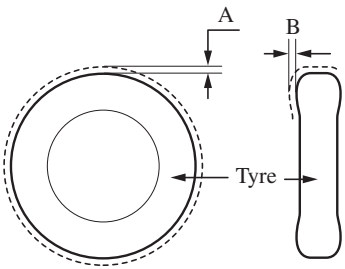
NOTE

Although Mazda recommends hexagon type steel ring chains, all chains within the installation specifications may be used.

Installation specification (Europe)

When installing tyre chains, the distance between the tyre tread and the chain must be within the prescribed limits in the following table.

Distance [Unit: mm (in)]	
A	B
MAX 11 (0.43)	MAX 11 (0.43)



Side view Cross section view

Installing the chains

1. Secure the chains on the rear tyres as tightly as possible. Always follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
2. Retighten the chains after driving 1/2—1 km (1/4—1/2 mile).

Driving In Flooded Area

⚠ *WARNING*

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:
Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive the vehicle on flooded roads as it could cause short circuiting of electrical/electronic parts, or engine damage or stalling from water absorption. If the vehicle has been immersed in water, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Towing Caravans and Trailers

Your Mazda is not designed for towing.
Never tow a trailer with your Mazda.

4 When Driving

Information concerning safe driving and stopping.

Start/Stop Engine 4-4
Ignition Switch 4-4
Starting the Engine 4-5
Turning the Engine Off 4-11
i-stop* 4-13

Instrument Cluster and Display 4-24
Meters and Gauges 4-24
Multi-information Display and INFO Switch* 4-33
Warning/Indicator Lights 4-42

Transmission 4-48
Manual Transmission Operation 4-48
Automatic Transmission Controls 4-51

Switches and Controls 4-63
Lighting Control 4-63
Rear Fog Light* 4-70
Turn and Lane-change Signals 4-71
Windscreen Wipers and Washer 4-72
Headlight Washer* 4-77
Rear Window Defogger 4-77
Horn 4-79
Hazard Warning Flasher 4-79

Brake 4-81
Brake System 4-81
Emergency Stop Signal System ... 4-84
Hill Launch Assist (HLA) 4-84

ABS/TCS/DSC 4-86
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-86
Traction Control System (TCS) ... 4-87
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 4-88

i-ELOOP 4-90
i-ELOOP* 4-90

Fuel Economy Monitor 4-93
Fuel Economy Monitor* 4-93

Drive Selection 4-97
Drive Selection* 4-97

Power Steering 4-99
Power Steering 4-99

*Some models.

i-ACTIVSENSE..... 4-100
i-ACTIVSENSE*..... 4-100
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)* 4-102
High Beam Control System (HBC)*..... 4-103
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)* 4-106
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System*..... 4-112
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)* 4-119
Adjustable Speed Limiter* 4-122
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)*..... 4-129
Radar Sensors (Rear)* 4-132

Cruise Control..... 4-134
Cruise Control*..... 4-134

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 4-140
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Conventional Tyres)* 4-140
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres)*.... 4-144

Parking Sensor System..... 4-148
Parking Sensor System* 4-148

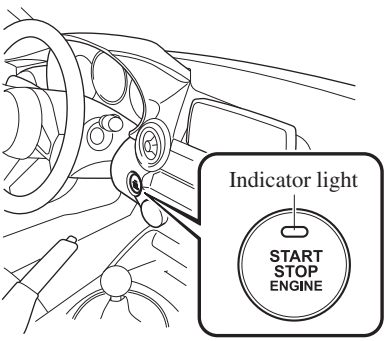
 *Some models.

MEMO

Ignition Switch

▼Push Button Start Positions

The system operates only when the key is within operational range.
Each time the push button start is pressed, the ignition switches in the order of off, ACC, and ON. Pressing the push button start again from ON switches the ignition off.



NOTE

- The engine starts by pressing the push button start while depressing the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or the brake pedal (automatic transmission). To switch the ignition position, press the push button start without depressing the pedal.
- Do not leave the ignition switched ON while the engine is not running. Doing so could result in the battery going dead. If the ignition is left in ACC (For automatic transmission, the selector lever is in the P position, and the ignition is in ACC), the ignition switches off automatically after about 25 minutes.

Off

The power supply to electrical devices turns off and the push button start indicator light (amber) also turns off.
In this position the steering wheel is locked.

⚠ *WARNING*

Before leaving the driver's seat, always switch the ignition off, set the parking brake, and make sure the selector lever is in P (automatic transmission) or in 1st gear or R (manual transmission):
Leaving the driver's seat without switching the ignition off, setting the parking brake, and shifting the selector lever to P (automatic transmission) or to 1st gear or R (manual transmission) is dangerous. Unexpected vehicle movement could occur which could result in an accident.
In addition, if your intention is to leave the vehicle for even a short period, it is important to switch the ignition off, as leaving it in another position will disable some of the vehicle's security systems and run the battery down.

NOTE

(Locked steering wheel)
If the push button start indicator light (green) is flashing and the beep sound is heard, this indicates that the steering wheel is not unlocked. To unlock the steering wheel, press the push button start while moving the steering wheel left and right.

ACC (Accessory)

Some electrical accessories will operate and the indicator light (amber) illuminates. In this position the steering wheel is unlocked.

NOTE
The keyless entry system does not function while the push button start has been pressed to ACC, and the doors will not lock/unlock even if they have been locked manually.

ON

This is the normal running position after the engine is started. The indicator light (amber) turns off. (The indicator light (amber) illuminates when the ignition is switched ON and the engine is not running.)
Some indicator lights/warning lights should be inspected before the engine is started (page 4-42).

NOTE
When the push button start is pressed to ON, the sound of the fuel pump motor operating near the fuel tank can be heard. This does not indicate an abnormality.

Starting the Engine

⚠ *WARNING*

Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:
Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.

NOTE

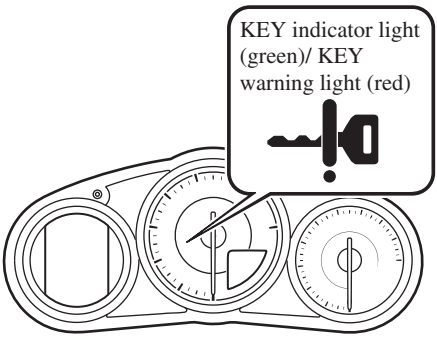
- The key must be carried because the key carries an immobilizer chip that must communicate with the engine controls at short range.
- The engine can be started when the push button start is pressed from off, ACC, or ON.
- The push button start system functions (function which can start the engine by only carrying the key) can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details. If the push button start system functions have been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead.
  Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-9.
- After starting a cold engine, the engine speed increases and a whining sound from the engine compartment can be heard.
  This is for improved exhaust gas purification and does not indicate any parts defect.

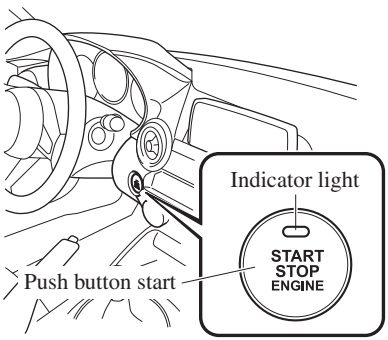
1. Make sure you are carrying the key.
2. Occupants should fasten their seat belts.
3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Continue to press the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
5. **(Manual transmission)**
   Continue to press the clutch pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
   (Automatic transmission)
   Put the vehicle in park (P). If you must restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift into neutral (N).

NOTE

(Manual transmission)
The starter will not operate if the clutch pedal is not depressed sufficiently.
(Automatic transmission)
The starter will not operate if the selector lever is not in P or N and the brake pedal is not depressed sufficiently.

6. Verify that the KEY indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster and the push button start indicator light (green) illuminate.





NOTE

- If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes, make sure that the key is being carried.
- If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes with the key being carried, touch the key to the push button start and start the engine. Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-9.

⚠ CAUTION

If the KEY warning light (red) illuminates, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate a problem with the engine starting system. This may prevent the engine from starting or from switching the ignition to ACC or ON. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

NOTE

- Under the following conditions, the KEY warning light (red) flashes after the push button start is pressed. This informs the driver that the push button start will not switch to ACC even if it is pressed from off.
  - The key battery is dead.
  - The key is out of operational range.
  - The key is placed in areas where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal (page 3-8).
  - A key from another manufacturer similar to the key is in the operational range.

NOTE

- **(Forced engine starting method)**
  If the KEY warning light (red) illuminates, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine, such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or the brake pedal (automatic transmission) are required.
- When the engine is force-started, the KEY warning light (red) remains illuminated and the push button start indicator light (amber) remains flashing.
- **(Automatic transmission)**
  When the selector lever is in the neutral (N) position, the KEY indicator light (green) and the push button start indicator light (green) do not illuminate.

7. Press the push button start after both the KEY indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster and the push button start indicator light (green) illuminate.

NOTE

- After starting the engine, the push button start indicator light (amber) turns off and the ignition switches to the ON position.
- After pressing the push button start and before the engine starts, the operation sound of the fuel pump motor from near the fuel tank can be heard, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.

8. After starting the engine, let it idle for about ten seconds (Prohibited in Germany).

NOTE

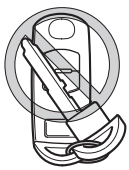
- **(Germany)**
  Drive immediately after starting the engine. However do not use high engine speeds until reaching the operating temperature.
- Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without the use of the accelerator.
- If the engine does not start the first time, refer to Starting a Flooded Engine under Emergency Starting. If the engine still does not start, have your vehicle inspected by an Authorised Mazda Repairer (page 7-23).
- **(Manual transmission vehicle with i-stop function)**
  If the engine has stopped due to stalling, it can be restarted by depressing the clutch pedal within 3 seconds of the engine stopping.
  The engine cannot be restarted even if the clutch pedal is depressed under the following conditions:
  - The driver's door is open.
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
  - The clutch pedal is not released completely after the engine stalled.
  - The clutch pedal is depressed with the engine not stopped completely.

▼Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the engine by holding the transmitter over the push button start due to a dead key battery or a malfunctioning key, be careful not to allow the following, otherwise the signal from the key will not be received correctly and the engine may not start.

- Metal parts of other keys or metal objects touch the key.



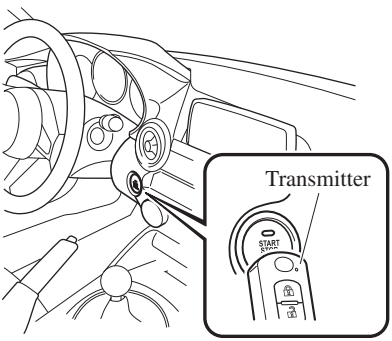
- Spare keys or keys for other vehicles equipped with an immobilizer system touch or come near the key.

- Devices for electronic purchases, or security passage touch or come near the key.

Start/Stop Engine

If the engine cannot be started due to a dead key battery, the engine can be started using the following procedure:

1. Continue to depress the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
2. **(Manual transmission)**
   Continue to depress the clutch pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
3. Verify that the push button start indication light (green) flashes.
4. Touch the push button start using the backside of the key (as shown) while the push button start indicator light (green) flashes.



NOTE

When touching the push button start using the backside of the key as shown in the illustration, touch the push button start with the lock switch side of the key facing up.

5. Verify that the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.
6. Press the push button start to start the engine.

NOTE

- The engine cannot be started unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed (manual transmission) or the brake pedal is fully depressed (automatic transmission).
- If there is a malfunction with the push button start function, the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes. In this case, the engine may start, however, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
- If the push button start indicator light (green) does not illuminate, perform the operation from the beginning again. If it does not illuminate, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- To switch the ignition position without starting the engine, perform the following operations after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.

  1. Release the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission).
  2. Press the push button start to switch the ignition position. The ignition switches in the order of ACC, ON, and off each time the push button start is pressed. To switch the ignition position again, perform the operation from the beginning.

▼Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine

If the KEY warning light (red) illuminates, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or the brake pedal (automatic transmission) are required.

Turning the Engine Off

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not stop the engine while the vehicle is moving:
Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving for any reason other than in an emergency is dangerous. Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving will result in reduced braking ability due to the loss of power braking, which could cause an accident and serious injury.

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. **(Manual transmission)**
   Shift into neutral and set the parking brake.
   (Automatic transmission)
   Shift the selector lever to the P position and set the parking brake.
3. Press the push button start to turn off the engine. The ignition position is off.

⚠ CAUTION

When leaving the vehicle, make sure the push button start is off.

NOTE

- The cooling fan in the engine compartment could turn on for a few minutes after the ignition is switched from ON to OFF, whether or not the A/C is on or off, to cool the engine compartment quickly.
- If the system detects that the remaining battery power of the key is low when the ignition is switched from ON to ACC or OFF, the following is indicated.
  Replace with a new battery before the key becomes unusable.
  Refer to Key Battery Replacement on page 6-31.
  (Vehicle equipped with Type A instrument cluster)
  A message is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.
  (Vehicle equipped with Type B instrument cluster)
  The KEY indicator light (green) flashes for approximately 30 seconds.
  Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
- **(Automatic transmission)**
  If the engine is turned off while the selector lever is in a position other than P, the ignition switches to ACC.

▼Emergency Engine Stop

Continuously pressing the push button start or quickly pressing it any number of times while the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven will turn the engine off immediately. The ignition switches to ACC.

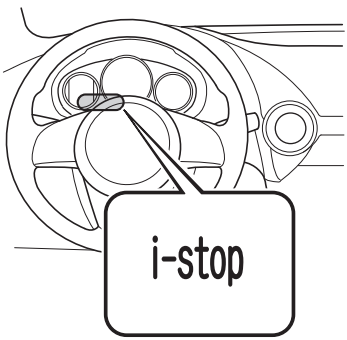
i-stop*

The i-stop function automatically stops the engine when the vehicle is stopped at a traffic light or stuck in traffic, and then restarts the engine automatically to resume driving. The system provides improved fuel economy, reduced exhaust gas emissions, and eliminates idling noise while the engine is stopped.

Engine idle stopping and restarting

NOTE

- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns on under the following conditions:
  - When engine idling is stopped.
  - **(Except European model)**
    Engine idling stop conditions are met while the vehicle is being driven.



- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns off when the engine is restarted.

Manual transmission

1. Stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then the clutch pedal.
2. While depressing the clutch pedal, shift the shift lever to the neutral position. Engine idling stops after the clutch pedal is released.
3. The engine restarts automatically when the clutch pedal is depressed.

*Some models.

Automatic transmission

1. Engine idling stops when the brake pedal is depressed while the vehicle is driven (except for driving in the R or M position second gear fixed mode) and the vehicle is stopped.
2. The engine restarts automatically when the brake pedal is released with the selector lever in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
3. If the selector lever is in the N or P position, the engine does not restart when the brake pedal is released. The engine restarts when the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode) or the R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

Operation conditions

When the system is operable

Under the following conditions, engine idling stops and the i-stop indicator light (green) turns on.

- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine has been started and the vehicle is driven for a certain period.
- The engine is started with the bonnet closed.
- The battery is in good condition.
- All doors, boot lid, and bonnet are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- **(Manual Air-Conditioning)**
  - The airflow mode dial of the air conditioner is in a position other than ( ).
  - The airflow amount is other than the maximum airflow amount.
- **(Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning)**
  - The airflow mode dial of the air conditioner is in a position other than ( ).
  - The temperature setting dial of the air conditioner is in a position other than maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON) position.
  - The vehicle's interior temperature and the set temperature for the air conditioner are nearly the same.
- The i-stop warning light (amber) is not turned on/flashing.
- The keyless entry & push button start system functions are normal.
- The brake vacuum is sufficiently high.
- The steering wheel is not being operated.
- **(Manual transmission)**
  - The vehicle speed is 3 km/h (1.8 mph) or less.
  - The shift lever is in the neutral position.
  - The clutch pedal is not depressed.

- **(Automatic transmission)**
  - The vehicle is stopped.
  - The selector lever is in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
  - The automatic transmission fluid has warmed up sufficiently.
  - The automatic transmission fluid temperature is not abnormally high.
  - The steering wheel is almost in the straight-ahead position (idling may not stop even with the steering wheel in the straight-ahead position if force is applied to the steering wheel. Release the force applied to the steering wheel to stop engine idling).
  - The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
  - Emergency braking is not applied.

When the system is not operable

Engine idling does not stop in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped but the engine is kept idling.
- **(Manual Air-Conditioning)**
  - The airflow mode dial of the air conditioner is in the ( ) position and the fan control dial is in a position other than 0.
  - The airflow amount is the maximum airflow amount.
- **(Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning)**
  - The airflow mode dial of the air conditioner is in the ( ) position.
  - The temperature setting dial of the air conditioner is in the maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON) position.
  - There is a large difference between the cabin temperature and the set temperature of the air conditioner.
- The ambient temperature is extremely high or low.
- The atmospheric pressure is low (when driving at high altitudes).
- **(Automatic transmission)**
  - The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
  - The steering wheel is not in the straight-ahead position while the vehicle is stopped.
- **(Retractable fastback model)**
  The retractable fastback is operating

NOTE

Under the following conditions, a period of time is required to stop engine idling

- The battery power is depleted for some reasons such as the vehicle has not been driven for a long period.
- The ambient temperature is high or low.
- After the battery terminals are disconnected for some reasons such as for battery replacement.

Engine does not restart
If the following operations are performed while the idling is stopped, the engine will not restart for safety reasons. In such cases, start the engine using the normal method.

- The bonnet is opened.
- **(European model)**
  The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- **(Except European model)**
  - **(Manual transmission)**
    With the shift lever in a position other than neutral, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Automatic transmission)**
    With the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode), the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

Engine-stop period is short or time until next engine idle stop is long

- The ambient temperature is high or low.
- The battery power is depleted.
- Power consumption by the vehicle's electrical parts is high.

NOTE

Engine restarts automatically while engine idling is stopped
Under the following conditions, the engine restarts automatically.

- The i-stop OFF switch is pressed until the beep sounds.
- The ambient temperature is extremely high or low.
- **(Manual Air-Conditioning)**
  - The airflow mode dial of the air conditioner is in the (🌬) position and the fan control dial is in a position other than 0.
  - The airflow amount is the maximum airflow amount.
- **(Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning)**
  - The airflow mode dial of the air conditioner is in the (🌬) position.
  - The temperature setting dial of the air conditioner is in the maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON) position.
  - The cabin temperature differs greatly from the set temperature of the air conditioner.
- The brakes are released slightly on a slope and the vehicle begins to move.
- Two minutes have elapsed since the idling was stopped.
- The battery power is depleted.
- **(Automatic transmission)**
  - The accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
  - The selector lever is shifted to the R position.
  - The selector lever is shifted from N or P position to D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
  - The steering wheel is operated with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
  - The selector lever is in the M position and the second gear fixed mode is selected.
- **(Retractable fastback model)**
  The retractable fastback switch is operated.
- **(Except European model)**
  - **(Manual transmission)**
    With the shift lever in the neutral position, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Automatic transmission)**
    With the selector lever in the N or P position, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

NOTE

Selector lever is operated while engine idling is stopped (automatic transmission)
If the selector lever is shifted from D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position to N or P position while engine idling is stopped, the engine does not restart even when the brake pedal is released. The engine will restart if the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode), or R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

- **(European model)**
  If the selector lever is shifted from the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position to the N or P position, and the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened, the engine does not restart. Start the engine using the normal method.
- **(Except European model)**
  If the selector lever is shifted from the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) to the N or P position, and the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened, the engine restarts.

Battery terminals are disconnected
Engine idling may not stop right after the battery terminals are disconnected. In addition, if the battery is replaced, the i-stop functions must be verified. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼i-stop Warning Light (Amber)/i-stop Indicator Light (Green)

To ensure safe and comfortable use of the vehicle, the i-stop system constantly monitors the driver's operations, the vehicle's interior and exterior environment, and the operational status of the vehicle, and uses the i-stop warning light (amber) and i-stop indicator light (green) to inform the driver of various cautions and warnings.

NOTE

On vehicles equipped with the centre display, the i-stop operation status is displayed in the fuel monitor control status display.
Refer to Control Status Display on page 4-94.

i-stop warning light (amber)

When the light is turned on

- The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and turns off when the engine is started.
- The light turns on when the i-stop OFF switch is pressed and the system is turned off.
- The light turns on if the following operations are performed while engine idling is stopped. In such cases, the engine does not restart automatically to ensure safety. Start the engine using the normal method.
  - The bonnet is opened.
  - **(European model)**
    The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Except European model)**
    - **(Manual transmission)**
      With the shift lever in a position other than neutral, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
    - **(Automatic transmission)**
      With the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

NOTE
A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. • The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. • The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running.

When the light is flashing

The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

i-stop indicator light (green)

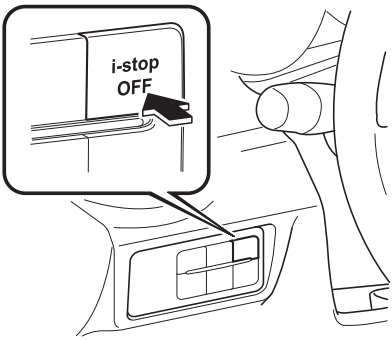
When the light is turned on

- The light turns on while engine idling is stopped and turns off when the engine is restarted.
- **(Except European model)**
  The light turns on when the engine idling stop conditions are met while the vehicle is driven.

When the light is flashing

- **(Manual transmission)**
  The light flashes when the shift lever is shifted to a position other than the neutral while engine idling is stopped to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped.
  By depressing the clutch pedal, the engine restarts automatically and the light turns off.
- **(European model)**
  - The light flashes when the driver's door is opened while engine idling is stopped to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped. It turns off when the driver's door is closed.
  - If the engine is restarted due to low battery voltage while the engine idling is stopped, the i-stop indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster flashes for about 3 seconds. However, when the engine is restarted automatically after operating the retractable fastback switch, the i-stop indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster does not flash.
- **(Except European model)**
  - **(Automatic transmission)**
    The light flashes if the vehicle is stopped but the brake pedal is not depressed with sufficient force. Depress the brake pedal a little more strongly because the pedal force may be insufficient.

▼i-stop OFF Switch



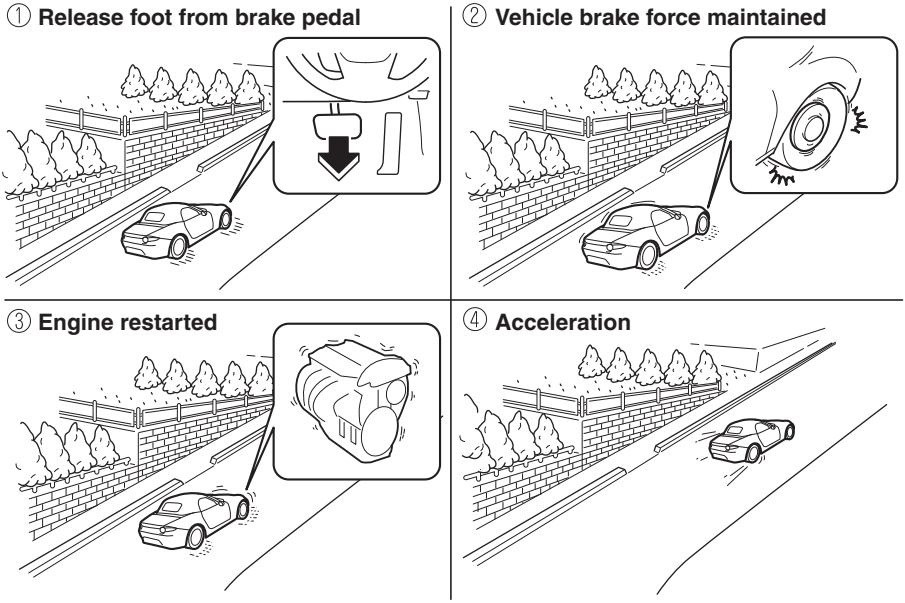
By pressing the switch until a beep sounds, the i-stop function is turned off and the i-stop warning light (amber) in the instrument cluster turns on. By pressing the switch again until the beep sounds, the i-stop function becomes operational and the i-stop warning light (amber) turns off.

NOTE
If the engine is stopped with the i-stop function cancelled, the i-stop function becomes operational when the engine is started the next time.

▼Vehicle Roll Prevention Function (Automatic transmission)

Vehicles with the i-stop function are equipped with a vehicle roll prevention function. This function prevents the vehicle from rolling, such as when releasing the brake pedal while on a slope under the following conditions:

- While engine idling is stopped (prevents the vehicle from rolling back)
- When the engine restarts after releasing the brake pedal (prevents the vehicle's sudden movement due to vehicle creep), sudden movement of the vehicle is prevented by controlling the brakes or the automatic transmission.



⚠ *WARNING*

Do not rely completely on the vehicle roll prevention function.

- ***The vehicle roll prevention function is a supplementary function which operates for a maximum of four seconds after releasing the brake pedal and accelerating the vehicle from an engine idling stop condition. Over reliance on the system may result in an unexpected accident if the vehicle were to suddenly accelerate. Before starting to drive the vehicle, always confirm the safety of the surroundings and operate the selector lever, brake pedal, and accelerator pedal appropriately. Note that the vehicle may move suddenly depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something.***
- Note that the vehicle may move suddenly after the vehicle roll prevention function is released while the vehicle is under the following conditions:
  - The selector lever is in the N position.
  - If the selector lever is shifted to the N position and the brake pedal is released while the i-stop function is operating, the brake force is gradually released. To accelerate the vehicle, release the brake pedal after the engine restarts and shift the selector lever to a position other than the N position.

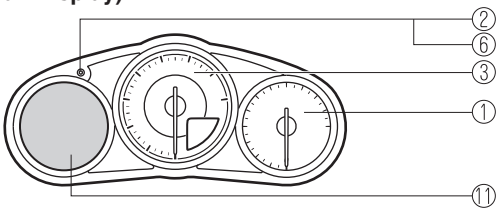
NOTE

- When the vehicle is stopped on a steep grade, the vehicle roll prevention function does not operate because engine idling is not stopped.
- The brake pedal response may change, sound may occur from the brakes, or the brake pedal could vibrate from the operation of the vehicle roll prevention function. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

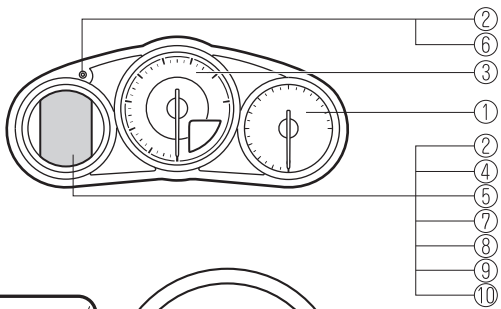
Meters and Gauges

Instrument Cluster

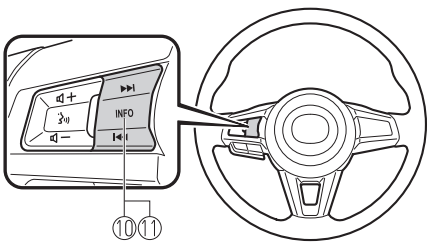
Type A
(With Multi-information Display)



Type B
(Without Multi-information Display)



Steering Switch



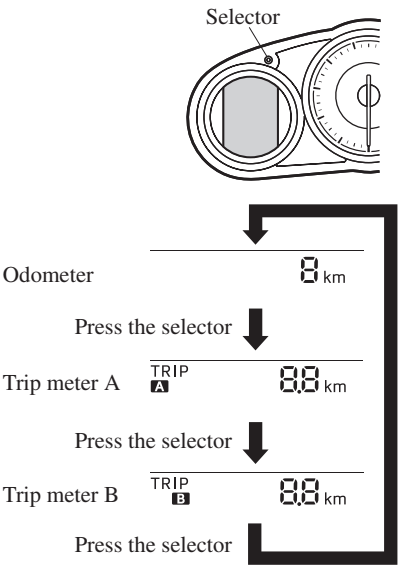
① Speedometer ..... page 4-25
② Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector ..... page 4-25
③ Tachometer ..... page 4-26
④ Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge ..... page 4-27
⑤ Fuel Gauge ..... page 4-27
⑥ Instrument Panel Illumination ..... page 4-28
⑦ Outside Temperature Display ..... page 4-29
⑧ Adjustable Speed Limiter Display ..... page 4-30
⑨ Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display ..... page 4-30
⑩ Trip Computer and INFO Switch ..... page 4-30
⑪ Multi-information Display and INFO Switch ..... page 4-33

▼Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle.

▼Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector (Without Multi-information Display)

The display mode can be changed from odometer to trip meter A to trip meter B and then back to odometer by pressing the selector while one of them is displayed. The selected mode will be displayed.



NOTE

When the ignition is switched to ACC or off, the odometer or trip meters cannot be displayed, however, pressing the selector can inadvertently switch the trip meters or reset them during an approximate ten-minute period in the following cases:

- After the ignition is switched to off from ON.
- After the driver's door is opened.

Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

The trip meter can record the total distance of two trips. One is recorded in trip meter A, and the other is recorded in trip meter B.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, pressing the selector again within one second will change to trip meter B mode.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

The trip meter records the total distance the vehicle is driven until the meter is again reset. Return it to “0.0” by depressing and holding the selector for one second or more. Use this meter to measure trip distances and to compute fuel consumption.

NOTE

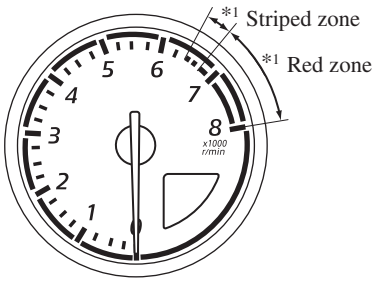
- **(Vehicles with type B/type C audio)**
  If the fuel economy data is reset using the fuel economy monitor, or trip A is reset using the trip meter when the function which synchronizes the fuel economy monitor and the trip meter is on, the fuel economy data and trip A are reset simultaneously.
  Refer to Fuel Economy Monitor on page 4-93.
- Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).
- The trip record will be erased when:
  - The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).
  - The vehicle is driven over 9999.9 km (mile).

▼Tachometer

The tachometer shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

⚠ CAUTION

Do not run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.



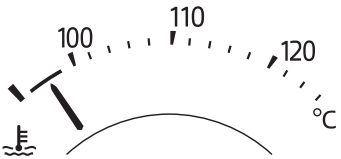
*1 The range varies depending on the type of gauge.

NOTE

When the tachometer needle enters the STRIPED ZONE, this indicates to the driver that the gears should be shifted before entering the RED ZONE.

▼Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Without Multi-information Display)

Indicates engine coolant temperature.



⚠ CAUTION

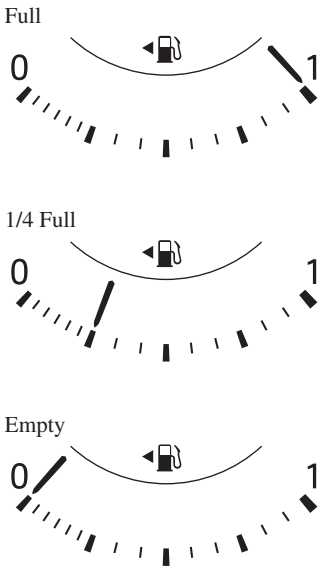
If the high engine coolant temperature warning light (red) turns on, there is a possibility of overheating. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and take appropriate measures. If the vehicle continues to be driven, it could cause damage to the engine.
Refer to Overheating on page 7-24.

NOTE

- During normal driving, the engine coolant temperature stabilizes at 100 °C (210 °F) or less, and the gauge indicates a range lower than 100 °C (210 °F).
- If the engine load increases and the engine coolant temperature exceeds 100 °C (210 °F), the gauge indicates the engine coolant temperature.

▼Fuel Gauge (Without Multi-information Display)

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition is switched ON. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full.



If the low fuel warning light illuminates or the fuel level is very low, refuel as soon as possible.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

NOTE

- After refuelling, it may require some time for the indicator to stabilize. In addition, the indicator may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.
- The display indicating a quarter or less remaining fuel has more segments to show the remaining fuel level in greater detail.
- The direction of the arrow (◀⛽) indicates that the fuel-filler flap is on the left side of the vehicle.

▼Instrument Panel Illumination

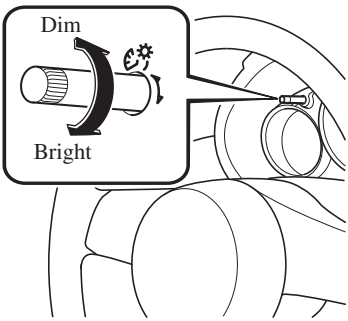
When the position lights are turned on with the ignition switched ON, the brightness of the instrument panel illumination is dimmed.

NOTE

When the position lights are turned on, the position lights indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.
Refer to Headlights on page 4-63.

The brightness of the instrument cluster and instrument panel illuminations can be adjusted by rotating the knob.

- The brightness decreases by rotating the knob to the left. A beep sound will be heard when the knob has been rotated to the maximum dim position.
- The brightness increases by rotating the knob to the right.



Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by rotating the instrument panel illumination knob to the right until a beep sound is heard while the instrument cluster is dimmed with the ignition switched ON. If the instrument cluster's visibility is reduced due to glare from surrounding brightness, cancel the illumination dimmer.

NOTE

- When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the instrument cluster cannot be dimmed even if the position lights are turned on.
- When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the screen in the centre display switches to constant display of the daytime screen.

▼Outside Temperature Display (Without Multi-information Display)

When the ignition is switched ON, the outside temperature is displayed.

NOTE

Under the following conditions, the outside temperature display may differ from the actual outside temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:

- Significantly cold or hot temperatures.
- Sudden changes in outside temperature.
- The vehicle is parked.
- The vehicle is driven at low speeds.

Changing the Temperature Unit of the Outside Temperature Display (Vehicles with Type B/C)

The outside temperature unit can be switched between Celsius and Fahrenheit. Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen.
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

NOTE

When the temperature unit indicated in the outside temperature display is changed, the temperature unit indicated in the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with it.

Outside Temperature Warning*

When the outside temperature is low, the indication flashes and a beep sound is heard to warn the driver of the possibility of icy roads.
If the outside temperature is lower than about 4 °C (39 °F), the outside temperature display and the ❄ mark flashes for about ten seconds and a beep sound is heard once.

NOTE

If the outside temperature is lower than -20 °C (-4 °F), the beep sound does not operate. However, the ❄ mark illuminates.

*Some models.

▼Adjustable Speed Limiter Display (Without Multi-information Display)*

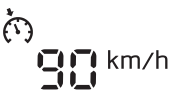
The setting status of the adjustable speed limiter is displayed.

▼Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display (Without Multi-information Display)*

The vehicle speed preset using the cruise control is displayed.

(European model)

(Except European model)



▼Trip Computer and INFO Switch (Without Multi-information Display)

The following information can be selected by pressing the INFO switch with the ignition switched ON.

- Approximate distance you can travel on the available fuel
- Average fuel economy
- Current fuel economy
- Average vehicle speed
- Vehicle speed alarm*

If you have any problems with your trip computer, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Distance-to-empty mode

This mode displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.

(European model)

(Except European model)

NOTE

- Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.
- The display may not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.
- The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge (indicating the remaining fuel supply) disappear.
- If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.

*Some models.

Average fuel economy mode

This mode displays the average fuel economy by calculating the total fuel consumption and the total travelled distance since purchasing the vehicle, re-connecting the battery after disconnection, or resetting the data. The average fuel economy is calculated and displayed every minute.

(European model)

(Except European model)

To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1.5 seconds. After pressing the INFO switch, - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the fuel economy is recalculated and displayed.

Current fuel economy mode

This mode displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled.

Current fuel economy will be calculated and displayed every 2 seconds.

(European model)

(Except European model)

When you've slowed to about 5 km/h (3 mph), - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) will be displayed.

Average vehicle speed mode

This mode displays the average vehicle speed by calculating the distance and the time travelled since connecting the battery or resetting the data.
Average vehicle speed will be calculated and displayed every 10 seconds.

(European model)

(Except European model)

To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1.5 seconds. After pressing the INFO switch, - - - km/h (- - - mph) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the vehicle speed is recalculated and displayed.

Vehicle speed alarm mode*

In this mode, the current setting for the vehicle speed alarm is displayed. You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

NOTE
The vehicle speed alarm display is activated at the same time the beep sound is heard. The set vehicle speed flashes several times.

The vehicle speed alarm can be set using the INFO switch.

*Some models.

NOTE

- Always set the vehicle speed according to the laws and regulations of the country/city in which the vehicle is driven. In addition, always verify the speed of the vehicle using the speedometer.
- The vehicle speed alarm function can be set between 30 and 250 km/h (20 and 150 mph).

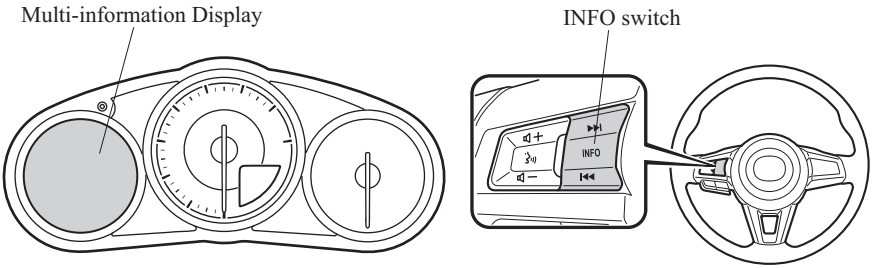
The vehicle speed alarm can be set using the following procedure.

1. Press the INFO switch to display the vehicle speed alarm mode.
2. Press the INFO switch continuously until a beep sound is heard.
   The set vehicle speed display flashes the third digit (hundredths place).

3. Press the INFO switch and set the third digit (hundredths place) to the desired vehicle speed.
   The numerical value changes each time the INFO switch is pressed.
4. Press the INFO switch continuously until a beep sound is heard.
   The set vehicle speed display flashes the lower two digits (tenths and ones place).

5. Press the INFO switch and set the two lower digits (tenths and ones place) to the desired vehicle speed.
   The numerical value changes each time the INFO switch is pressed.
6. Press the INFO switch continuously until a beep sound is heard.
   The set vehicle speed is displayed on the vehicle speed alarm screen.

Multi-information Display and INFO Switch*



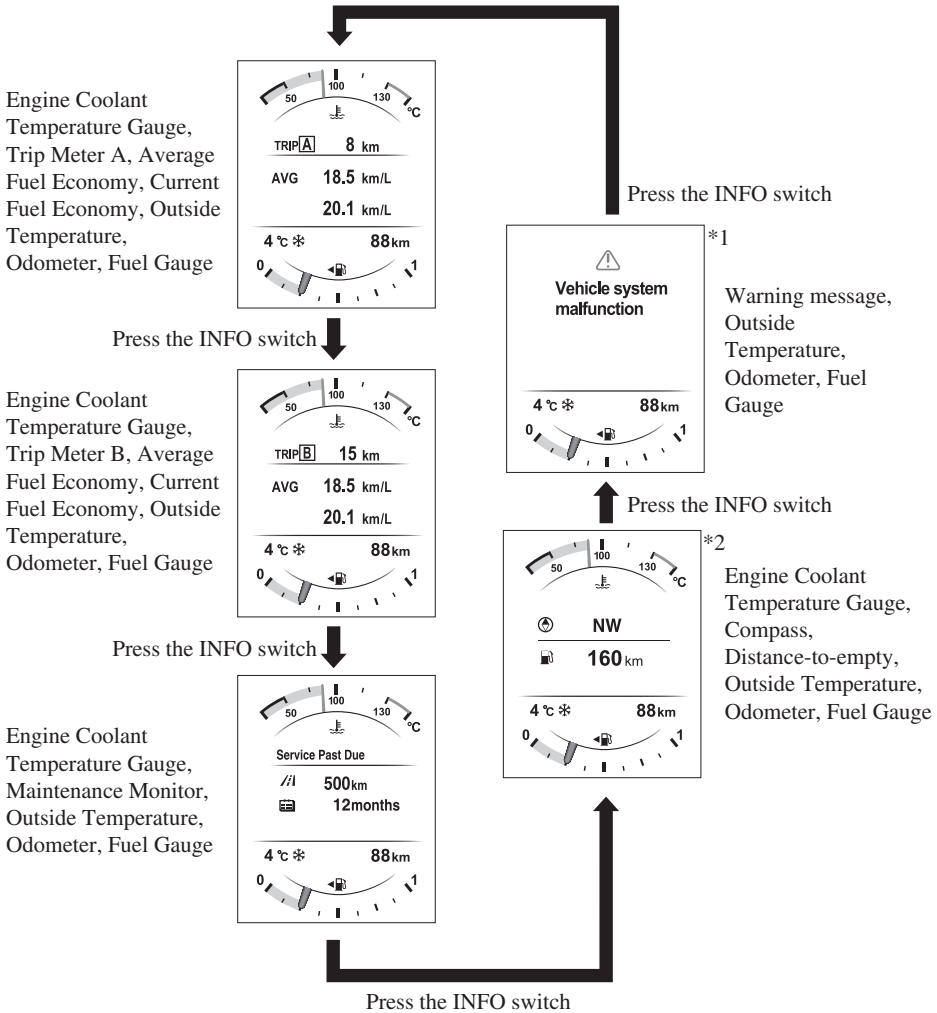
The multi-information display indicates the following information.

- Odometer
- Trip meter
- Engine coolant temperature gauge
- Fuel gauge
- Outside temperature
- Distance-to-empty
- Average fuel economy
- Current fuel economy
- Maintenance Monitor
- Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display
- Cruise Control Display
- Adjustable Speed Limiter Display
- Compass Display
- Vehicle Speed Alarm
- Roof Operation Display
- Warning message

*Some models.

Instrument Cluster and Display

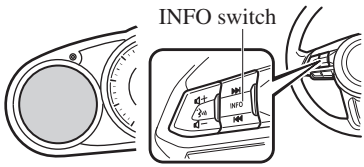
The screen content changes each time the INFO switch is pressed.



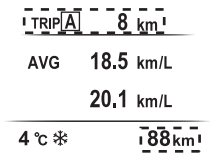
*1: Displayed only when a warning occurs.
*2: Displayed only while vehicle is being driven.

▼Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector

The odometer is constantly displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched ON, and the TRIP A or TRIP B screen can be displayed by operating the INFO switch.

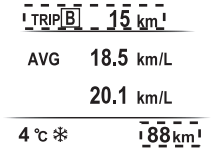


Trip meter A, Odometer



Press the INFO switch

Trip meter B, Odometer



Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

The driving distance for a specified interval is indicated. Two types (TRIP A, TRIP B) of interval distance and the average fuel economy for each can be measured.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

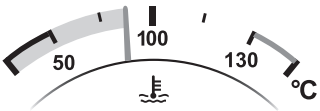
The trip meter and average fuel economy can be reset by pressing the INFO switch for 1.5 second or more while in each mode.

NOTE

- Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).
- The trip record will be erased when:
  - The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).
  - The vehicle is driven over 1999 km (mile).

▼Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. The blue gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is low, and the red gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high and overheating.



⚠ CAUTION

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light (red) turns on, there is a possibility of overheating. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and take appropriate measures. If the vehicle continues to be driven, it could cause damage to the engine.
Refer to Overheating on page 7-24.

NOTE

- The temperature unit (Centigrade/Fahrenheit) of the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with the temperature unit of the outside temperature display.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
- During normal driving, the engine coolant temperature stabilizes at 100 °C (210 °F) or less, and the gauge indicates a range lower than 100 °C (210 °F).
- If the engine load increases and the engine coolant temperature exceeds 100 °C (210 °F), the gauge indicates the engine coolant temperature.

▼Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition is switched ON. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full.

Full

1/4 Full

Empty

If the fuel level is low, (◀⛽) and (**0**) turn an amber colour. Refuel as soon as possible.
Refer to Taking Action on page 7-41 .

NOTE

- After refuelling, it may require some time for the indicator to stabilize. In addition, the indicator may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.
- The display indicating a quarter or less remaining fuel has more segments to show the remaining fuel level in greater detail.
- The direction of the arrow (◂⛽) indicates that the fuel-filler flap is on the left side of the vehicle.

▼Outside Temperature Display

When the ignition is switched ON, the outside temperature is displayed.

4 ℃ ❄

NOTE

Under the following conditions, the outside temperature display may differ from the actual outside temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:

- Significantly cold or hot temperatures.
- Sudden changes in outside temperature.
- The vehicle is parked.
- The vehicle is driven at low speeds.

Changing the Temperature Unit of the Outside Temperature Display (Vehicles with Type B/C)

The outside temperature unit can be switched between Celsius and Fahrenheit. Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen.
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

NOTE

When the temperature unit indicated in the outside temperature display is changed, the temperature unit indicated in the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with it.

Outside Temperature Warning*

When the outside temperature is low, the indication flashes and a beep sound is heard to warn the driver of the possibility of icy roads.
If the outside temperature is lower than about 4 °C (39 °F), the outside temperature display and the ❄ mark flashes for about ten seconds and a beep sound is heard once.

NOTE

If the outside temperature is lower than -20 °C (-4 °F), the beep sound does not operate. However, the ❄ mark illuminates.

*Some models.

▼Distance-to-empty

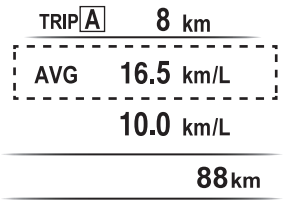
This displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.
The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.

NOTE

- Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.
- The display will not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.
- The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge indicating the remaining fuel supply disappear.
- If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.

▼Average Fuel Economy

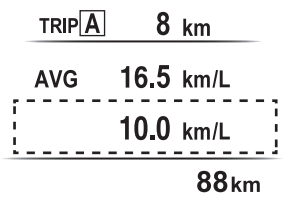
This mode displays the average fuel economy by calculating the total fuel consumption and the total travelled distance since purchasing the vehicle, re-connecting the battery after disconnection, or resetting the data.
The average fuel economy is calculated and displayed every minute.



To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1.5 seconds.
After pressing the INFO switch, - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the fuel economy is recalculated and displayed.

▼Current Fuel Economy

This displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled.
Current fuel economy will be calculated and displayed every two seconds.



When you've slowed to about 5 km/h (3 mph), - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) will be displayed.

▼Maintenance Monitor

The following maintenance period notifications can be displayed by turning the Maintenance Monitor on.

- Scheduled Maintenance
- Tyre Rotation
- Oil Change

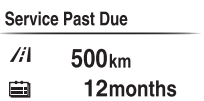
For the setting method and indications for the maintenance monitor, refer to the Maintenance Monitor.
Refer to Maintenance Monitor on page 6-10.
The maintenance monitor displays the information when the ignition is switched ON.

NOTE

This function is inoperable while the vehicle is being driven.

Message display

When the remaining time or the distance approaches 0, a message is displayed each time the ignition is switched ON.



NOTE

- If any of the INFO switch is pressed while a message is displayed, it will no longer be displayed the next time the ignition is switched ON.
- After the vehicle is serviced and the remaining time/distance is reset, the message for the next maintenance period will be displayed when the remaining distance or time to the next maintenance period approaches 0 (displays when engine is started).
- If there are multiple messages, they are displayed according to their order.
- If OFF is set for Messages, messages are not displayed.

▼Vehicle Speed Alarm*

In this mode, the current setting for the vehicle speed alarm is displayed. You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

NOTE

The vehicle speed alarm display is activated at the same time the beep sound is heard. The set vehicle speed flashes several times.

Speed Warning
100 km/h

The vehicle speed alarm can be set using the centre display.

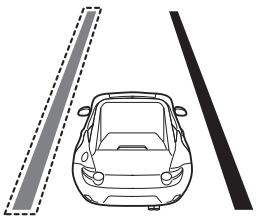
*Some models.

NOTE

- Always set the vehicle speed according to the laws and regulations of the country/city in which the vehicle is driven. In addition, always verify the speed of the vehicle using the speedometer.
- The vehicle speed alarm function can be set between 30 and 250 km/h (20 and 150 mph).

▼Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display*

Displays the system status.



Refer to Lane Departure Warning on page 4-111.

▼Adjustable Speed Limiter Display*

The setting status of the adjustable speed limiter is displayed.

▼Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display*

The vehicle speed preset using the cruise control is displayed.

▼Compass Display

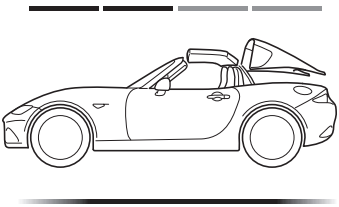
The direction the vehicle is moving is displayed in one of the eight cardinal directions while the vehicle is being driven.

Display	Direction
N	North
S	South
E	East
W	West
NE	Northeast
NW	Northwest
SE	Southeast
SW	Southwest

*Some models.

▼Roof Operation Display

Displays the roof operation status.



Refer to Operation Indication on page 3-48.

▼Warning (Display Indication)

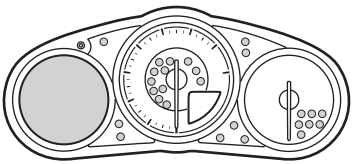
A message is displayed to notify the user of the system operation status and malfunctions or abnormalities.
If the warning light turns on/flashes simultaneously or a symbol is indicated in the display, check the information regarding the warning light or symbol. (page 4-42)
When only a message is displayed, refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display. (page 7-46)

Warning/Indicator Lights

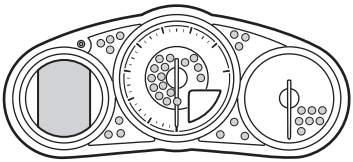
Instrument Cluster varies depending on model and specifications.

Instrument Cluster

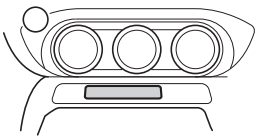
Type A
(With Multi-information Display)



Type B
(Without Multi-information Display)



Centre of Instrument panel



Warning/Indicator lights will appear in any of the highlighted areas

▼Warning Indication/Warning Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Warning Lights	Page
(Red)	Brake System Warning Light*1*2	7-31
	Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light*1	7-31
	Engine Oil Warning Light*1	7-31
(Red)	High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication/Warning Light*1	7-31
	Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light*1	7-31
	*Master Warning Indication/Warning Light*1	7-34

*Some models.

Signal	Warning Lights	Page
(Amber)	Electric Vacuum Pump Warning Light*1	7-34
	ABS Warning Light*1	Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning 7-31
		ABS warning 7-34
	Check Engine Light*1	7-34
i-stop (Amber)	*i-stop Warning Light*1	7-34
i-ELOOP (Amber)	*i-ELOOP Warning Indication/Warning Light*1	7-34
AT	*Automatic Transmission Warning Indication/Warning Light*1	7-34
	Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light*1	7-34
	*Active Bonnet Warning Light*1	7-34
	*Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light*1	Flashing 7-34
		Illuminate 7-41
FLAT TIRE	*Flat Tyre Warning Light*1	7-34
(Red)	*KEY Warning Indication/Warning Light*1	Malfunction 7-34
		Except malfunction 7-41
(Amber)	*KEY Warning Indication	7-34
	*Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication/ Warning Light*1	Illuminated 7-34
		Flashing 4-111

*Some models.

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning Lights	Page
(Amber)	*High Beam Control System (HBC) Warning Indication/ Warning Light*1	7-34
	*Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication	7-34
	*Retractable Fastback Warning Indication	7-34
	LED Headlight Warning Light*1	7-34
PASS	Seat Belt Warning Light	7-41
	*Door-Ajar Warning Light	7-41
	*Door-Ajar Warning Indication	7-41
	*Boot lid-Ajar Warning Indication	7-41
	*Low Fuel Warning Indication/Warning Light	7-41
120 km/h	*120 km/h Warning Light*1	7-41
	*Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Indication/Warning Light	7-41

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
*2 The light turns on continuously when the parking brake is applied.

 *Some models.

▼Indication/Indicator Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
ON OFF	*Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Indicator Light*1	2-47
(White/Green)	*KEY Indicator/Indicator Light	3-9
	Security Indicator Light*1	3-54
	*Retractable Fastback Operation Indicator Light	3-48
i-stop (Green)	*i-stop Indicator Light	4-18
i-ELOOP (White/Green)	*i-ELOOP Indicator/Indicator Light	4-92
	*Vehicle Speed Alarm Indication	4-39
	*Wrench Indication/Indicator Light*1	4-47
(Blue)	Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light	4-47
	*Shift Position Indication	4-52
	Lights-On Indicator Light	4-63
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light	Headlight High-Low Beam 4-68 Flashing the Headlights 4-68
	*Rear Fog Light Indicator Light	4-70

*Some models.

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
	Direction Indicator/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights	Turn and Lane-Change Signals 4-71
		Hazard Warning Flasher 4-79
	TCS/DSC Indicator Light*1	Traction Control System (TCS) 4-87
		Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 4-88
		(Turns on) 7-34
OFF	DSC OFF Indicator Light*1	4-89
SPORT	*Select Mode Indication	4-98
(White)	*Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Indication	4-143
(Green)	*High Beam Control System (HBC) Indicator Light	4-105
OFF	*Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light*1	4-117
OFF	*Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF Indicator Light*1	4-109
LIM (White/Amber)	*Adjustable Speed Limiter Main Indication/Indicator Light	4-124
LIM (Green)	*Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Indication/Indicator Light	4-124
(White/Amber)	*Cruise Main Indication/Indicator Light	4-135

 *Some models.

Signal	Indicator Lights	Page
(Green)	*Cruise Set Indication/Indicator Light	4-135

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Wrench Indication/Indicator Lights*

Type A instrument cluster

Perform maintenance in accordance with the message.

Type B instrument cluster

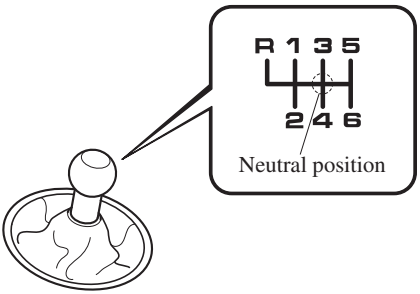
When the ignition is switched ON, the wrench indicator light is illuminated and then turns off after a few seconds.
The wrench indicator light is illuminated when the preset maintenance period arrives. Verify the content and perform maintenance.
Refer to Maintenance Monitor on page 6-10.

▼Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light (Blue)

The light illuminates continuously when the engine coolant temperature is low and turns off after the engine is warm.
If the low engine coolant temperature indicator light remains illuminated after the engine has been sufficiently warmed up, the temperature sensor could have a malfunction. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Manual Transmission Operation

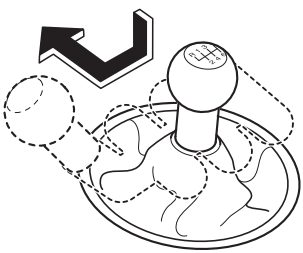
▼Manual Transmission Shift Pattern



The shift pattern of the transmission is conventional, as shown.

Depress the clutch pedal all the way down while shifting; then release it slowly.

Your vehicle is equipped with a device to prevent shifting to R (reverse) by mistake. Push the shift lever downward and shift to R.



⚠ *WARNING*

Do not use sudden engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:
Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

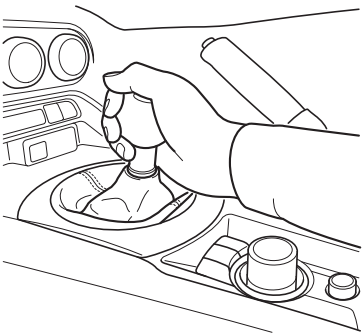
Always leave the shift lever in 1 or R position and set the parking brake when leaving the vehicle unattended:
Otherwise the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- Keep your foot off the clutch pedal except when shifting gears. Also, do not use the clutch to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Riding the clutch will cause needless clutch wear and damage.
- Do not apply any excessive lateral force to the shift lever when changing from 5th to 4th gear. This could lead to the accidental selection of 2nd gear, which could result in damage to the transmission.
- Make sure the vehicle comes to a complete stop before shifting to R. Shifting to R while the vehicle is still moving may damage the transmission.

NOTE

- A natural driving posture can be realized by lightly gripping the shift lever from the side without having to rest your elbow on the centre console box.



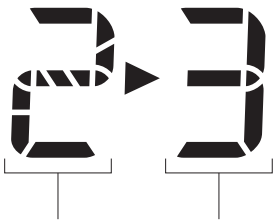
- If shifting to R is difficult, shift back into neutral, release the clutch pedal, and try again.
- **(With i-stop function)**
  If the engine has stopped due to stalling, it can be restarted by depressing the clutch pedal within 3 seconds of the engine stopping.
  The engine cannot be restarted even if the clutch pedal is depressed under the following conditions:
  - The driver's door is open.
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
  - The clutch pedal is not released completely after the engine stalled.
  - The clutch pedal is depressed with the engine not stopped completely.

NOTE

- **(With parking sensor system)**
  When the shift lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON, the parking sensor system is activated and a beep sound is heard. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-148.

▼Gear Shift Indicator

The gear shift indicator supports you to obtain optimum fuel economy and smooth driving. It displays the selected gear position in the instrument cluster as well as notifies the driver to change to the most suitable gear position corresponding to the actual driving condition.



Indication	Condition
Numeral	The selected gear position is displayed.
▶ and numeral	Shift up or down to the indicated gear position is recommended.

⚠ CAUTION

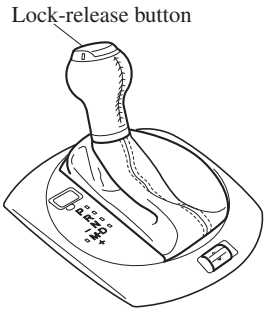
Do not rely solely on the shift-up/ shift-down recommendations by indications. The actual driving situation might require shift operations different from indication. To avoid the risk of accidents, the road and traffic conditions have to be judged correctly by the driver before shifting.

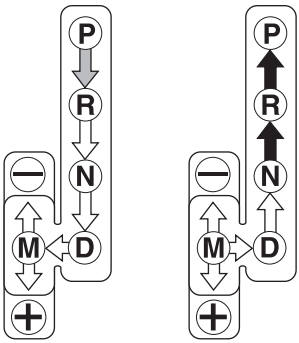
NOTE

The gear shift indicator turns off when the following operations are performed.

- The vehicle is stopped.
- The vehicle is put in neutral.
- The vehicle is driven in reverse.
- The clutch is not fully engaged when accelerating from a stop.
- The clutch pedal remains depressed for 2 seconds or longer while driving.

Automatic Transmission Controls





Various Lockouts:

Indicates that you must depress the brake pedal and hold in the lock-release button to shift (The ignition must be switched ON).

Indicates the selector lever can be shifted freely into any position.

Indicates that you must hold in the lock-release button to shift.

NOTE

The Sport AT has an option that is not included in the traditional automatic transmission that gives the driver the option of selecting each gear instead of leaving it to the transmission to shift gears. Even if you intend to use the automatic transmission functions as a traditional automatic, you should also be aware that you can inadvertently shift into manual shift mode and an inappropriate gear may be retained as the vehicle speed increases. If you notice the engine speed going higher or hear the engine racing, confirm you have not accidentally slipped into manual shift mode (page 4-55).

▼Shift Position Indication

The selector position is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.

NOTE

If one of the following actions is performed, the selector position is displayed for 5 minutes even if the ignition switch is in a position other than ON.

- The ignition is switched OFF.
- The driver's door is opened.

Gear position indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication illuminates and the numeral for the selected gear is displayed.

▼Warning Light

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

▼Transmission Ranges

- The shift position indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates. Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
- The selector lever must be in P or N to operate the starter.

P (Park)

P locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from rotating.

⚠ *WARNING*

Always set the selector lever to P and set the parking brake:
Only setting the selector lever to the P position without using the parking brake to hold the vehicle is dangerous. If P fails to hold, the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- Shifting into P, N or R while the vehicle is moving can damage your transmission.
- Shifting into a driving gear or reverse when the engine is running faster than idle can damage the transmission.

R (Reverse)

In position R, the vehicle moves only backward. You must be at a complete stop before shifting to or from R, except under rare circumstances as explained in Rocking the Vehicle (page 3-62).

NOTE

(With parking sensor system)
When the selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON, the parking sensor system is activated and a beep sound is heard. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-148.

N (Neutral)

In N, the wheels and transmission are not locked. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or brakes are on.

⚠ *WARNING*

If the engine is running faster than idle, do not shift from N or P into a driving gear:
It's dangerous to shift from N or P into a driving gear when the engine is running faster than idle. If this is done, the vehicle could move suddenly, causing an accident or serious injury.

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle:
Shifting into N while driving is dangerous. Engine braking cannot be applied when decelerating which could lead to an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle. Doing so can cause transmission damage.

NOTE

Apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal before moving the selector lever from N to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

D (Drive)

D is the normal driving position. From a stop, the transmission will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence.

M (Manual)

M is the manual shift mode position. Gears can be shifted up or down by operating the selector lever. Refer to Manual Shift Mode on page 4-55.

▼Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)

Active Adaptive Shift (AAS) automatically controls the transmission shift points to best suit the road conditions and driver input. This improves driving feel. The transmission may switch to AAS mode when driving up and down slopes, cornering, driving at high elevations, or depressing the accelerator pedal quickly while the selector lever is in the D position. Depending on the road and driving conditions/vehicle operations, gear shifting could be delayed or not occur, however, this does not indicate a problem because the AAS mode will maintain the optimum gear position.

▼Shift-Lock System

The shift-lock system prevents shifting out of P unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

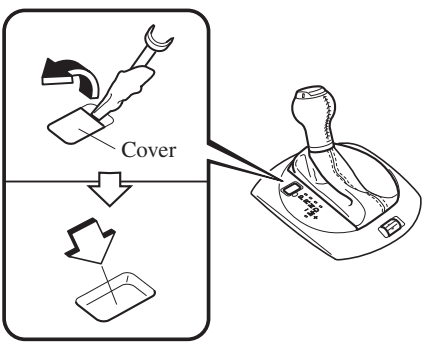
NOTE
• When the ignition is switched to ACC or the ignition is switched off, the selector lever cannot be shifted from P. • The ignition cannot be switched to OFF if the selector lever is not in P.

▼Shift-Lock Override

If the selector lever will not move from P using the proper shift procedure, continue to hold down the brake pedal.

Type A

1. Remove the shift-lock override cover using a cloth-wrapped flat head screwdriver.
2. Insert a screwdriver and push it down.

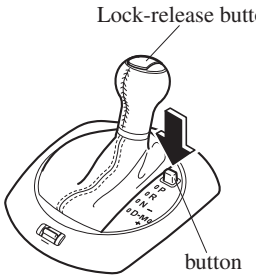


3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

Take the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the system checked.

Type B

1. Press the lock-release button with the button pressed.

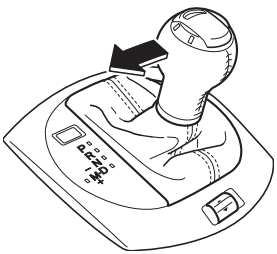


2. Move the selector lever.

Take the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the system checked.

▼Manual Shift Mode

The manual shift mode gives you the feel of driving a manual transmission vehicle by allowing you to operate the selector lever manually. This allows you to control engine rpm and torque to the drive wheels much like a manual transmission when more control is desired.
To change to manual shift mode, shift the lever from D to M.



NOTE

Changing to manual shift mode while driving will not damage the transmission.

To return to automatic shift mode, shift the lever from M to D.

NOTE

- If you change to manual shift mode when the vehicle is stopped, the gear will shift to M1.
- If you change to manual shift mode without depressing the accelerator pedal when driving in D range, 5th gear/6th gear, the gear will shift to M4/M5.

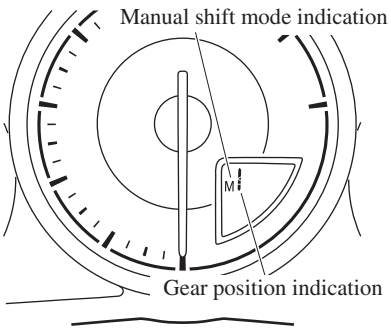
Indicators

Manual shift mode indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication in the instrument panel illuminates.

Gear position indication

The numeral for the selected gear illuminates.

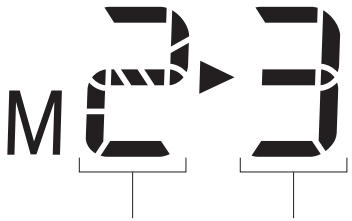


NOTE

If the gears cannot be shifted down when driving at higher speeds, the gear position indication will flash twice to signal that the gears cannot be shifted down (to protect the transmission).

Gear Shift Indicator*

The gear shift indicator supports you to obtain optimum fuel economy and smooth driving. It displays the selected gear position in the instrument cluster as well as notifies the driver to change to the most suitable gear position corresponding to the actual driving condition.



Selected gear position Suitable gear position

Indication	Condition
Numeral	The selected gear position is displayed.
▶ and numeral	Shift up or down to the indicated gear position is recommended.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not rely solely on the shift-up/shift-down recommendations by indications. The actual driving situation might require shift operations different from indication. To avoid the risk of accidents, the road and traffic conditions have to be judged correctly by the driver before shifting.

NOTE

The gear shift indicator turns off when the following operations are performed.

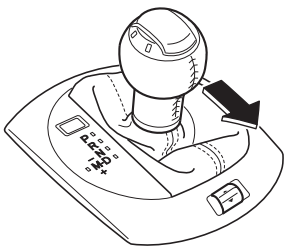
- The vehicle is stopped.
- Manual shift mode is cancelled.

Manually shifting up

You can shift gears up by operating the selector lever or the steering shift switches*.
M1 → M2 → M3 → M4 → M5 → M6

Using selector lever

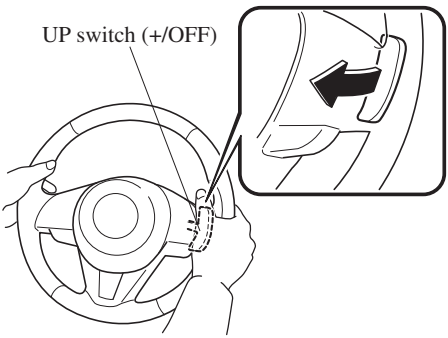
To shift up to a higher gear, tap the selector lever back + once.



*Some models.

Using steering shift switch*

To shift up to a higher gear with the steering shift switches, pull the UP switch (**+/OFF**) toward you once with your fingers.



⚠ *WARNING*

Keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when using fingers on the steering shift switches:
Putting your hands inside the rim of the steering wheel when using the steering shift switches is dangerous. If the driver's air bag were to deploy in a collision, your hands could be impacted causing injury.

NOTE

- When driving slowly, the gears may not shift up.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE while in manual shift mode. In addition, manual shift mode switches to automatic shift mode while the accelerator pedal is completely depressed.
  This function is cancelled while the DSC is turned off. However, if the vehicle is continuously driven at a high rpm, the gears may automatically shift up to protect the engine.
- The steering shift switch can be used temporarily even if the selector lever is in the D position while driving. In addition, it returns to automatic shift mode when the UP switch (**+/OFF**) is pulled rearward for a sufficient amount of time.

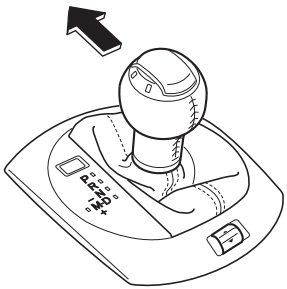
*Some models.

Manually shifting down

You can shift gears down by operating the selector lever or the steering shift switches*.
M6 → M5 → M4 → M3 → M2→ M1

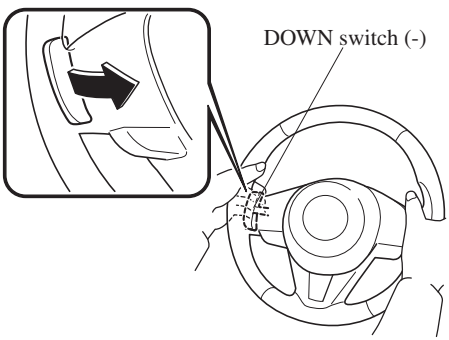
Using selector lever

To shift down to a lower gear, tap the selector lever forward − once.



Using steering shift switch*

To shift down to a lower gear with the steering shift switches, pull the DOWN switch − toward you once with your fingers.



⚠ WARNING

Do not use engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:
Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when using fingers on the steering shift switches:
Putting your hands inside the rim of the steering wheel when using the steering shift switches is dangerous. If the driver's air bag were to deploy in a collision, your hands could be impacted causing injury.

NOTE

- When driving at high speeds, the gear may not shift down.
- During deceleration, the gear may automatically shift down depending on vehicle speed.
- When depressing the accelerator fully, the transmission will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed. However, the gears do not kickdown while the DSC is turned off.

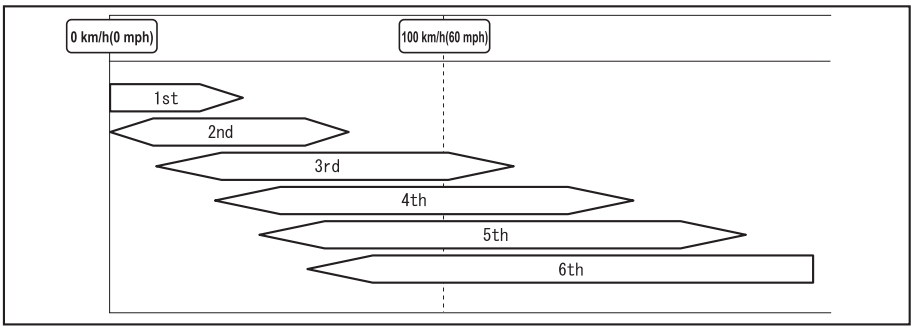
*Some models.

Second gear fixed mode

When the selector lever is moved back + while the vehicle speed is about 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less, the transmission is set in the second gear fixed mode. The gear is fixed in second while in this mode for easier acceleration from a stop and driving on slippery roads such as snow-covered roads.
If the selector lever is moved back + or forward − while in the second gear fixed mode, the mode will be cancelled.

Shift gear (shifting) speed limit

For each gear position while in the manual mode, the speed limit is set as follows: When the selector lever is operated within the range of the speed limit, the gear is shifted.



Shift up

The gear does not shift up while the vehicle speed is lower than the speed limit.

Shift down

The gear does not shift down while the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit.
If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit and the gear does not shift down, the gear position indication flashes 2 times to notify the driver that the gear cannot be shifted.

Kickdown

When the accelerator pedal is depressed fully while driving, the gear shifts down.
However, the gears do not kickdown while the DSC is turned off.

NOTE
The gear also shifts down using kickdown while in the second gear fixed mode.

Auto-shift down

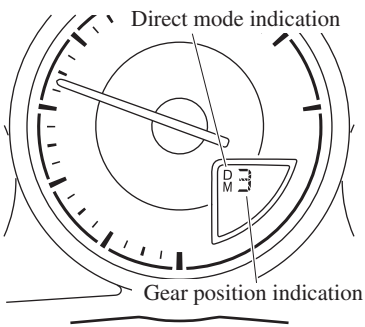
The gear shifts down automatically depending on the vehicle speed during deceleration.

NOTE
If the vehicle comes to a stop while in the second gear fixed mode, the gear remains in second.

▼Direct Mode*

Direct mode can be used for temporarily switching gears by operating the steering shift switch while the vehicle is being driven with the selector lever in the D range.
While in direct mode, the D and M indication illuminate and the gear position in use is illuminated.
Direct mode is cancelled (released) under the following conditions.

- The UP switch (**+/OFF**) is pulled rearward for a certain amount of time or longer.
- The vehicle is driven for a certain amount of time or longer (time differs depending on the driving conditions while operating).
- The vehicle is stopped or moving at a slow speed.



NOTE

Shifting up and down while in direct mode may not be possible depending on the vehicle speed. In addition, because direct mode is cancelled (released) depending on the rate of acceleration or if the accelerator is fully depressed, use of the manual shift mode is recommended if you need to drive the vehicle in a particular gear for long periods.

▼Driving Tips

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not let the vehicle move in a direction opposite to the direction selected by the selector lever:
Do not let the vehicle move backward with the selector lever in a forward position, or do not let the vehicle move forward with the selector lever in the reverse position. Otherwise, the engine may stop, causing the loss of the power brake and power steering functions, and make it difficult to control the vehicle which could result in an accident.

Passing

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing steep grades, depress the accelerator fully. The transmission will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.

*Some models.

NOTE

- The accelerator pedal may initially feel heavy as it is being depressed, then feel lighter as it is depressed further. This change in pedal force aids the engine control system in determining how much the accelerator pedal has been depressed for performing kickdown, and functions to control whether or not kickdown should be performed.
- While the selector lever is in the M position and the DSC is turned off, manual shift mode does not switch to automatic shift mode even if the accelerator pedal is completely depressed. Operate the selector lever.

Climbing steep grades from a stop

To climb a steep grade from a stopped position:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift to D or M1, depending on the load weight and grade steepness.
3. Release the brake pedal while gradually accelerating.

Descending steep grades

When descending a steep grade, shift to lower gears, depending on load weight and grade steepness. Descend slowly, using the brakes only occasionally to prevent them from overheating.

Lighting Control

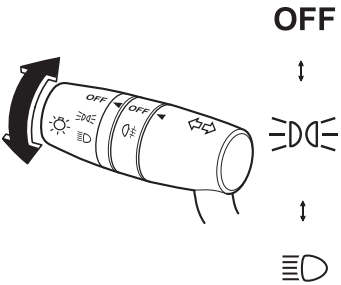
▼Headlights

Turn the headlight switch to turn the headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel illumination on or off.
When the headlight switch is turned to the ≣D or ≣D position, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.
(With auto-light control)
When the headlight switch is turned to the **AUTO** position, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on/off in conjunction with the automatic on/off operation of the headlights.

NOTE

- To prevent discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on while the engine is off unless safety requires them.
- Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).

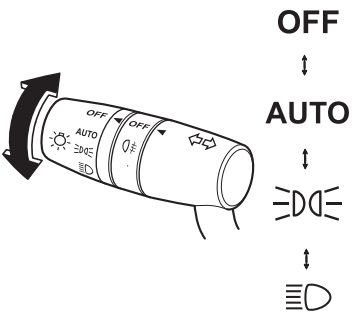
Without auto-light control



Switch Position	OFF					
Ignition Position	**ON**	**ACC or OFF**	**ON**	**ACC or OFF**	**ON**	**ACC or OFF**
Headlights	Off	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Running lights	On*1	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Tail lights Position lights Number plate lights Instrument panel illumination	On*2	Off	On	On	On	On*3

*1 It turns on while driving the vehicle.
*2 When the running lights are turned on, the position lights, tail lights, and number plate lights turn on. The instrument panel illumination does not turn on.
*3 If the driver's door is opened or 30 s have elapsed with the lights turned on, the lights turn off.

With auto-light control



Switch Position	OFF		AUTO					
Ignition Position	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF
Headlights	Off	Off	Auto*1	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Running lights	On*2	Off	Auto*1	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Tail lights Position lights Number plate lights Instrument panel illumination	On*3	Off	Auto*1	On*4/ Off*5	On	On	On	On*6

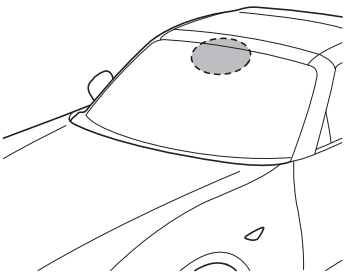
*1 The headlight and other light settings switch automatically depending on the surrounding brightness detected by the sensor.
*2 It turns on while driving the vehicle.
*3 When the running lights are turned on, the position lights, tail lights, and number plate lights turn on. The instrument panel illumination does not turn on.
*4 While the lights are turned on, they will remain on even if the ignition is switched to a position other than ON. If the driver's door is opened or 30 s have elapsed with the lights turned on, the lights turn off.
*5 When the ignition is switched to a position other than ON, the lights will not turn on even if the light switch is switched to AUTO.
*6 If the driver's door is opened or 30 s have elapsed with the lights turned on, the lights turn off.

Auto-light control

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the light sensor senses the surrounding lightness or darkness and automatically turns the headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel illumination on or off (see chart above).

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not shade the light sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the light sensor will not operate correctly.



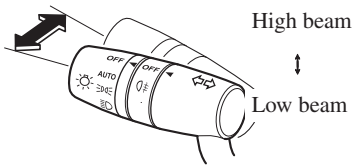
- The light sensor also works as a rain sensor for the auto-wiper control. Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely — this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow — when it is particularly tempting to leave the engine running.

NOTE

- The headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel illumination may not turn off immediately even if the surrounding area becomes well-lit because the light sensor determines that it is night time if the surrounding area is continuously dark for several minutes such as inside long tunnels, traffic jams inside tunnels, or in indoor parking lots.
  In this case, the lights turn off if the light switch is turned to the OFF position.
- When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched to ACC or the ignition is switched off, the headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel illumination will turn off.
- The instrument panel illumination can be adjusted by rotating the knob in the instrument cluster. Also, the antidazzle mode can be changed by rotating the knob until a beep sound is heard. To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination: Refer to Instrument Panel Illumination on page 4-28.
- The sensitivity of the AUTO lights may be changed by an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

▼Headlight High-Low Beam

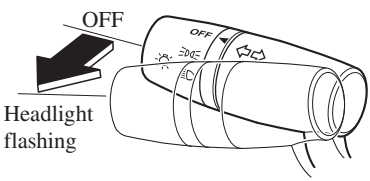
The headlights switch between high and low beams by moving the lever forward or backward.



When the headlight high-beams are on, the headlight high-beam indicator light is turned on.

▼Flashing the Headlights

Can be used when the ignition is switched ON.
To flash the headlights, pull the lever fully towards you (the headlight switch does not need to be on).



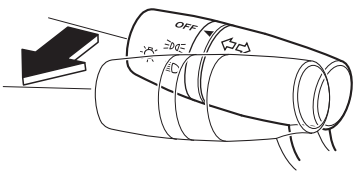
The headlight high-beam indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates simultaneously. The lever will return to the normal position when released.

▼Coming Home Light

The coming home light turns on the headlights (low beams) when the lever is operated.

<u>To turn on the lights</u>

When the lever is pulled with the ignition switched to ACC or OFF, the low beam headlights turn on.
The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed after the doors are closed.



NOTE

- The time until the headlights turn off after all of the doors are closed can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
- If no operations are done for 3 minutes after the lever is pulled, the headlights turn off.
- The headlights turn off if the lever is pulled again while the headlights are illuminated.

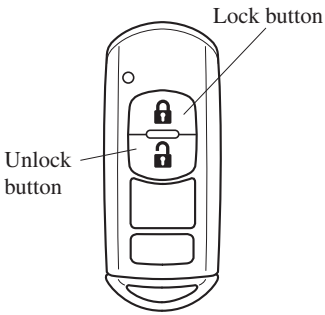
▼Leaving Home Light

The leaving home light turns on the lights when the transmitter unlock button is pressed while away from the vehicle.
The following lights turn on when the leaving home light is operated.
Low beams, Position lights, Tail lights, Number plate lights.

To turn on the lights

When the ignition switch and the headlight switch are in the following conditions, the headlights will illuminate when the transmitter unlock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal. The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed (30 seconds).

- Ignition switch: off
- Headlight switch: or



NOTE

- Operation of the leaving home light can be turned on or off.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
- When the transmitter lock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal, the headlights turn off.
- When the headlight switch is in a position other than or , the headlights turn off.

▼Headlight Levelling

The number of passengers and weight of cargo in the luggage compartment change the angle of the headlights.

The angle of the headlights will be automatically adjusted when turning on the headlights.

▼Running Lights

Some countries require moving vehicles to have their lights on (running lights) during the daytime.

The running lights turn on automatically when the vehicle starts moving.

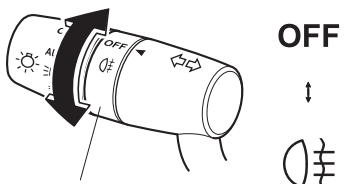
They turn off when the parking brake is operated or the selector lever is shifted to the P position (automatic transmission vehicle).

NOTE
(Except countries prohibited by law) The running lights can be deactivated. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

Rear Fog Light*

The rear fog light can be used when the ignition is switched ON.
The rear fog light helps your vehicle to be seen.
The headlights must be turned on to turn on the rear fog light.

To turn the rear fog light on, rotate the fog light switch to the position (the fog light switch returns to its original position automatically).



Fog light switch

The rear fog light indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates while the rear fog light is on.

To turn the rear fog light off, do any of the following:

- Rotate the fog light switch to the position again (the fog light switch returns to its original position automatically).
- Turn the headlight switch to the OFF position.

The rear fog light indicator light in the instrument cluster goes off when the rear fog light is turned off.

*Some models.

NOTE

(With auto-light control)

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the headlights, exterior lights and instrument panel illuminated, the rear fog light turns on when the rear fog light switch is turned on.

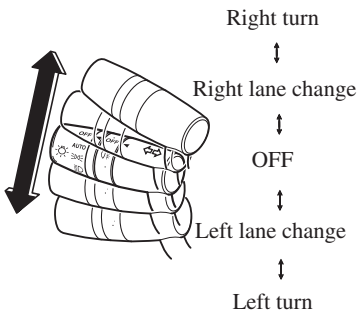
Turn and Lane-change Signals

The ignition must be switched ON to use the turn and lane-change signals.

▼Direction Indicators

Move the signal lever down (for a left turn) or up (for a right turn) to the stop position. The signal will self-cancel after the turn is completed.

If the indicator light continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to its original position.



The direction indicators in the instrument cluster flash according to the operation of the direction indicator lever to show which signal is working.

NOTE

- If an indicator light stays on without flashing or if it flashes abnormally, one of the direction indicator bulbs may be burned out.
- A personalised function is available to change the turn indicator sound volume. (page 9-10)

▼Lane-change Signals

Move the lever halfway toward the direction of the lane change—until the indicator flashes— and hold it there. It will return to the off position when released.

▼Three-flash Turn Signal

After releasing the direction indicator lever, the direction indicator flashes three times. The operation can be cancelled by moving the lever in the direction opposite to which it was operated.

NOTE

The three-flash turn signal function can be switched to operable/inoperable using the personalisation function.
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

Windscreen Wipers and Washer

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wipers.

⚠ *WARNING*

Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:
Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

Only use windscreen washer fluid mixed with anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions:
Using windscreen washer fluid without anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions is dangerous as it could freeze on the windscreen and block your vision which could cause an accident. In addition, make sure the windscreen is sufficiently warmed using the defroster before spraying the washer fluid.

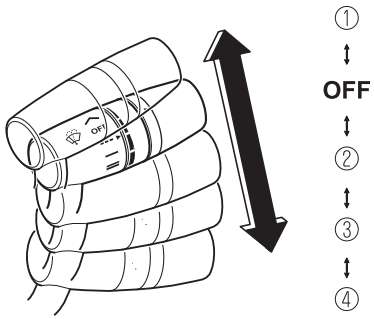
NOTE

If the windscreen wipers are operated under cold weather conditions or during snowfall, they could stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen, park the vehicle in a safe place, turn the wiper switch off, and then remove the accumulated snow. If the wiper switch is turned to another position other than OFF, the wipers will operate. If the wipers do not operate even though the wiper switch is turned to a position other than OFF, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

▼Windscreen Wipers

Turn the wipers on by pressing the lever up or down.

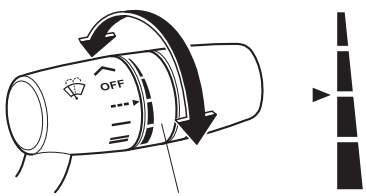
With intermittent wiper



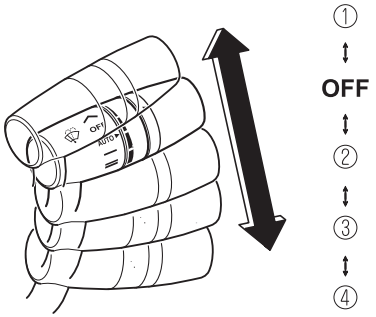
Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
①	⌃	MIST	Operation while pulling up lever
OFF			Stop
②	---	INT	Intermittent
③	—	LO	Low speed
④	=	HI	High speed

Variable-speed intermittent wipers

Set the lever to the intermittent position and choose the interval timing by rotating the ring.



With auto-wiper control

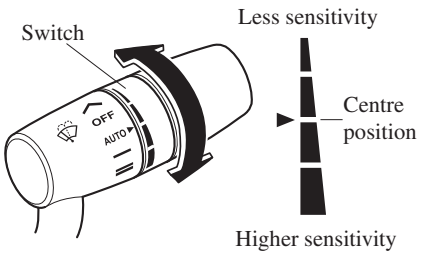


Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
①	⌃	MIST	Operation while pulling up lever
OFF			Stop
②	AUTO	AUTO	Auto control
③	—	LO	Low speed
④	=	HI	High speed

Auto-wiper control

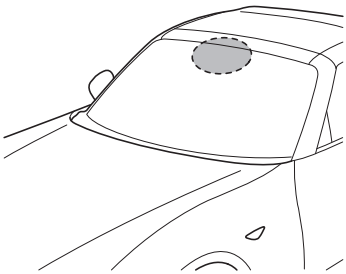
When the wiper lever is in the **AUTO** position, the rain sensor senses the amount of rainfall on the windscreen and turns the wipers on or off automatically (off—intermittent—low speed—high speed).

The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted by turning the switch on the wiper lever.
From the centre position (normal), rotate the switch upward for higher sensitivity (faster response) or rotate it downward for less sensitivity (slower response).



⚠ CAUTION

- Do not shade the rain sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the rain sensor will not operate correctly.



- When the wiper lever is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:
  - If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.
  - If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object from either outside or inside the vehicle.

  Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically.
  If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely (when it is most likely that the engine is left running) this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow.

NOTE

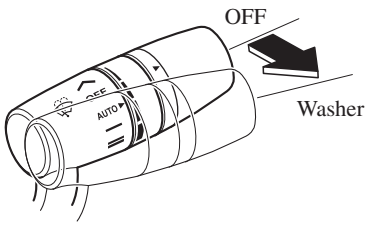
- Switching the auto-wiper lever from the OFF to the **AUTO** position while driving activates the windscreen wipers once, after which they operate according to the rainfall amount.
- The auto-wiper control may not operate when the rain sensor temperature is about –10 °C (14 °F) or lower, or about 85 °C (185 °F) or higher.
- If the windscreen is coated with water repellent, the rain sensor may not be able to sense the amount of rainfall correctly and auto-wiper control may not operate properly.
- If dirt or foreign matter (Such as ice or matter containing salt water) adheres to the windscreen above the rain sensor or if the windscreen is iced, it could cause the wipers to move automatically. However, if the wipers cannot remove this ice, dirt or foreign matter, the auto-wiper control will stop operation. In this case, set the wiper lever to the low speed position or high speed position for manual operation, or remove the ice, dirt or foreign matter by hand to restore the auto-wiper operation.

NOTE

- If the auto-wiper lever is left in the AUTO position, the wipers could operate automatically from the effect of strong light sources, electromagnetic waves, or infrared light because the rain sensor uses an optical sensor. It is recommended that the auto-wiper lever be switched to the OFF position other than when driving the vehicle under rainy conditions.
- The auto-wiper control functions can be turned off.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

▼Windscreen Washer

Pull the lever toward you and hold it to spray washer fluid.



NOTE

If the windscreen washer is turned on when the windscreen wipers are not operating, the windscreen wipers operate a few times.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-23). If the fluid level is normal, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

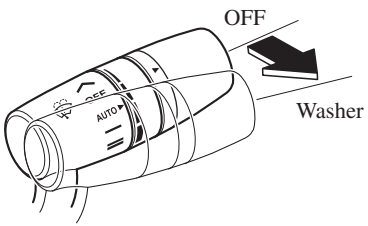
(With headlight washers)
When the headlights are on, the headlight washers operate automatically once every fifth time the windscreen washer operates.
Refer to Headlight Washer on page 4-77.

Headlight Washer*

The ignition must be switched ON and the headlights must be turned on.

The headlight washers operate automatically once every fifth time the windscreen washer operates.

If you want to operate headlight washers, double flick the wiper lever.



NOTE

If air enters the headlight washer fluid pipe under conditions such as when the vehicle is brand-new or after an empty washer tank is replenished with washer fluid, washer fluid will not spray even when the wiper lever is operated. If this occurs, perform the following procedure:

1. Start the engine.
2. Turn on the headlights.
3. Double flick the wiper lever several times until the washer fluid sprays.

Rear Window Defogger

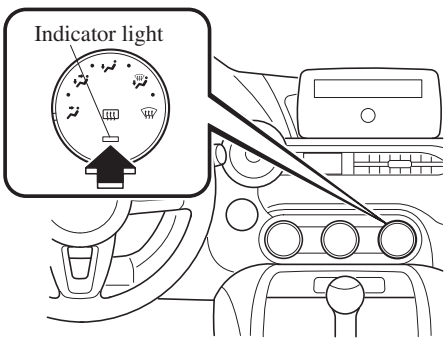
The rear window defogger clears fog from the rear window.

The ignition must be switched ON to use the defogger.

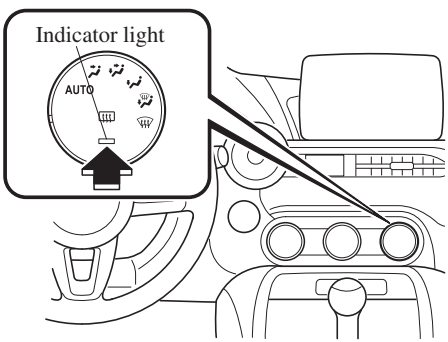
Press the switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The rear window defogger operates for about 15 minutes and then turns off automatically.
The indicator light illuminates when the defogger is operating.

To turn off the rear window defogger before the 15 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.

Manual Air-Conditioning



Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning



*Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaners with abrasives to clean the inside of the rear window surface. They may damage the defogger grid inside the window.
- Before opening the convertible top, make sure the rear window defogger switch is turned off. Otherwise the heat generated from the defogger could damage the convertible top and the internal material.

NOTE

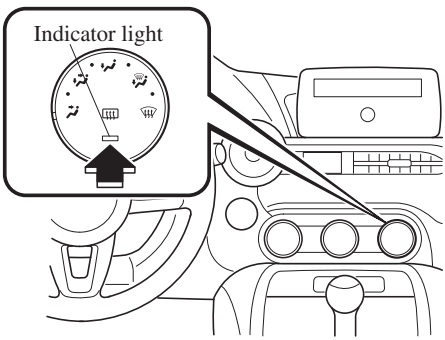
This defogger is not designed for melting snow. If there is an accumulation of snow on the rear window, remove it before using the defogger.

▼Mirror Defogger*

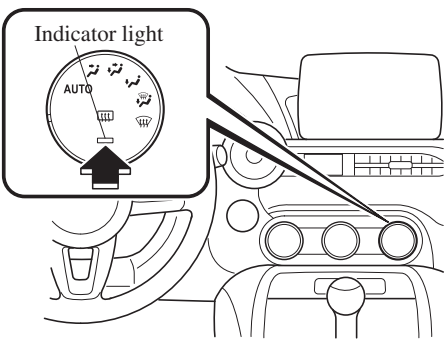
The mirror defoggers defrost the outside mirrors.

The mirror defoggers operate in conjunction with the rear window defogger.
To turn on the mirror defoggers, switch the ignition ON and press the rear window defogger switch (page 4-77).

Manual Air-Conditioning



Fully Automatic Air-Conditioning



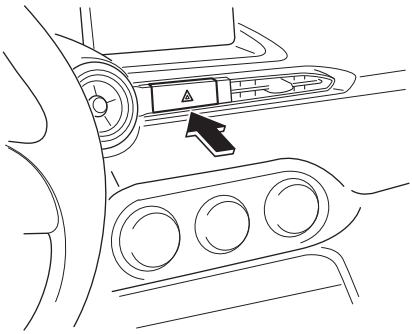
*Some models.

Horn

To sound the horn, press the mark on the steering wheel.

Hazard Warning Flasher

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.

Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

NOTE

- The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.
- Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.
- If the brake pedal is depressed while driving on slippery roads, the emergency stop signal system could operate causing all the turn and lane change signals to flash. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-84.
- While the emergency stop signal system is operating, all the direction indicators automatically flash rapidly to caution the driver of a vehicle following behind your vehicle of a sudden braking situation. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-84.

Brake System

▼Foot Brake

This vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal use.

Should power-assist fail, you can stop by applying greater force than normal to the brake pedal. But the distance required to stop will be greater than usual.

⚠ *WARNING*

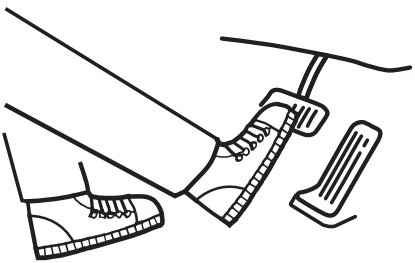
Do not coast with the engine stalled or turned off, find a safe place to stop:
Coasting with the engine stalled or turned off is dangerous. Braking will require more effort, and the brake's power-assist could be depleted if you pump the brake. This will cause longer stopping distances or even an accident.

Shift to a lower gear when going down steep hills:
Driving with your foot continuously on the brake pedal or steadily applying the brakes for long distances is dangerous. This causes overheated brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances or even total brake failure. This could cause loss of vehicle control and a serious accident. Avoid continuous application of the brakes.

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:
Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not drive with your foot held on the clutch pedal or brake pedal, or hold the clutch pedal depressed halfway unnecessarily. Doing so could result in the following:
  - The clutch and brake parts will wear out more quickly.
  - The brakes can overheat and adversely affect brake performance.
- Always depress the brake pedal with the right foot. Applying the brakes with the unaccustomed left foot could slow your reaction time to an emergency situation resulting in insufficient braking operation.



- Wear shoes appropriate for driving in order to avoid your shoe contacting the brake pedal when depressing the accelerator pedal.

▼Parking Brake

⚠ CAUTION

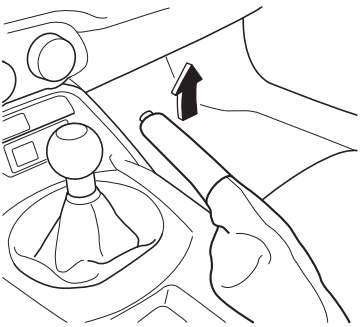
Driving with the parking brake on will cause excessive wear of the brake parts.

NOTE

For parking in snow, refer to Winter Driving (page 3-62) regarding parking brake use.

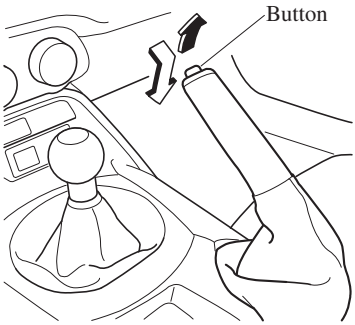
Setting the parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and then firmly pull the parking brake lever fully upwards with sufficient force to hold the vehicle in a stationary position.



Releasing the parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and pull the parking brake lever upwards, then press the release button. While holding the button, lower the parking brake lever all the way down to the released position.

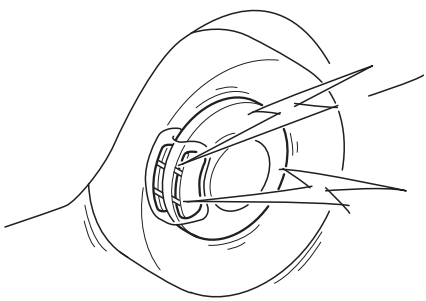


▼Warning Light

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

▼Brake Pad Wear Indicator

When the disc brake pads become worn, the built-in wear indicators contact the disc plates. This causes a screeching noise to warn that the pads should be replaced.



When you hear this noise, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not drive with worn disc pads:
Driving with worn disc pads is dangerous. The brakes could fail and cause a serious accident. As soon as you hear a screeching noise consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Brake Assist

During emergency braking situations when it is necessary to depress the brake pedal with greater force, the brake assist system provides braking assistance, thus enhancing braking performance.

When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the brakes apply more firmly.

NOTE

- When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the pedal will feel softer but the brakes will apply more firmly. This is a normal effect of the brake assist operation and does not indicate a malfunction.
- When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, a motor/pump operation noise may be heard. This is a normal effect of the brake assist and does not indicate a malfunction.
- The brake assist equipment does not supersede the functionality of the vehicle's main braking system.

Emergency Stop Signal System

Your Mazda is equipped with an emergency stop signal system that is designed to determine whether you are depressing the brake pedal with greater force than during normal braking such as in a situation requiring emergency braking. If the system determines that such a situation is occurring, it flashes all the direction indicators rapidly to caution the driver of the vehicle following behind your vehicle of the sudden braking situation.
The system turns off when it determines that the brake pedal is released or that an emergency braking situation no longer exists based on the reduced vehicle speed.

NOTE

- If you bring your vehicle to a complete stop while all the direction indicators are flashing rapidly, the rapid flashing of all the direction indicators changes back to the normal flashing pattern.
- The emergency stop signal system does not operate at vehicle speeds under about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- If the brake pedal is depressed while driving on slippery roads, the emergency stop signal system could operate causing all the turn and lane change signals to flash.

Hill Launch Assist (HLA)

Hill Launch Assist (HLA) is a function which assists the driver in accelerating from a stop while on a slope. When the driver releases the brake pedal and depresses the accelerator pedal while on a slope, the function prevents the vehicle from rolling. The braking force is maintained automatically after the brake pedal is released on a steep grade.
For vehicles with a manual transmission, Hill Launch Assist (HLA) operates on a downward slope when the shift lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the shift lever is in a position other than the reverse (R) position.
For vehicles with an automatic transmission, Hill Launch Assist (HLA) operates on a downward slope when the selector lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the selector lever is in a forward gear.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not rely completely on Hill Launch Assist (HLA):
Hill Launch Assist (HLA) is an auxiliary device for accelerating from a stop on a slope. The system only operates for about two seconds and therefore, relying only on the system, when accelerating from a stop is dangerous because the vehicle may move (roll) unexpectedly and cause an accident.
The vehicle could roll depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something. In addition, for vehicles with a manual transmission, the vehicle could still roll depending on how the clutch pedal or the accelerator pedal is operated.
Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before starting to drive the vehicle.

NOTE

- Hill Launch Assist (HLA) does not operate on a gentle slope. In addition, the gradient of the slope on which the system will operate changes depending on the vehicle's load.
- Hill Launch Assist (HLA) does not operate if the parking brake is applied, the vehicle has not stopped completely, or the clutch pedal is released.
- While Hill Launch Assist (HLA) is operating, the brake pedal may feel stiff and vibrate, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Hill Launch Assist (HLA) does not operate while the TCS/DSC indicator light is illuminated.
  Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
- Hill Launch Assist (HLA) does not turn off even if the DSC OFF switch is pressed to turn off the TCS/DSC.
- **(Automatic Transmission)**
  Although the Hill Launch Assist (HLA) does not operate during idling stop, the vehicle roll prevention function operates to prevent vehicle roll.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS control unit continuously monitors the speed of each wheel. If one wheel is about to lock up, the ABS responds by automatically releasing and reapplying that wheel's brake.

The driver will feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal and may hear a chattering noise from the brake system. This is normal ABS system operation. Continue to depress the brake pedal without pumping the brakes.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not rely on ABS as a substitute for safe driving:
The ABS cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), driving on ice and snow, and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

NOTE

- Braking distances may be longer on loose surfaces (snow or gravel, for example) which usually have a hard foundation. A vehicle with a normal braking system may require less distance to stop under these conditions because the tyres will build up a wedge of surface layer when the wheels skid.
- The sound of the ABS operating may be heard when starting the engine or immediately after starting the vehicle, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control System (TCS) enhances traction and safety by controlling engine torque and braking. When the TCS detects driving wheel slippage, it lowers engine torque and operates the brakes to prevent loss of traction.

This means that on a slick surface, the engine adjusts automatically to provide optimum power to the drive wheels, limiting wheel spin and loss of traction.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not rely on the Traction Control System (TCS) as a substitute for safe driving:
The Traction Control System (TCS) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

Use snow tyres or tyre chains and drive at reduced speeds when roads are covered with ice and/or snow:
Driving without proper traction devices on snow and/or ice-covered roads is dangerous. The Traction Control System (TCS) alone cannot provide adequate traction and you could still have an accident.

NOTE

To turn off the TCS, press the DSC OFF switch (page 4-89).

▼TCS/DSC Indicator Light

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

- In addition to the indicator light flashing, a slight labouring sound will come from the engine. This indicates that the TCS/DSC is operating properly.
- On slippery surfaces, such as fresh snow, it will be impossible to achieve high rpm when the TCS is on.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) automatically controls braking and engine torque in conjunction with systems such as ABS and TCS to help control side slip when driving on slippery surfaces, or during sudden or evasive manoeuvring, enhancing vehicle safety.

Refer to ABS (page 4-86) and TCS (page 4-87).

DSC operation is possible at speeds greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not rely on the Dynamic Stability Control as a substitute for safe driving:
The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- The DSC may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:
  - Use tyres of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all four wheels.
  - Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all four wheels.
  - Do not mix worn tyres.
- The DSC may not operate correctly when tyre chains are used or a temporary spare tyre is installed because the tyre diameter changes.

▼TCS/DSC Indicator Light

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

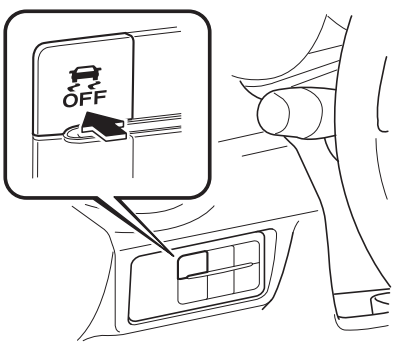
▼DSC OFF Indicator Light

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. It also illuminates when the DSC OFF switch is pressed and TCS/DSC is switched off.
Refer to DSC OFF Switch on page 4-89.

If the light remains illuminated and the TCS/DSC is not switched off, take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The DSC may have a malfunction.

▼DSC OFF Switch

Press the DSC OFF switch to turn off the TCS/DSC. The DSC OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.



Press the switch again to turn the TCS/DSC back on. The DSC OFF indicator light will turn off.

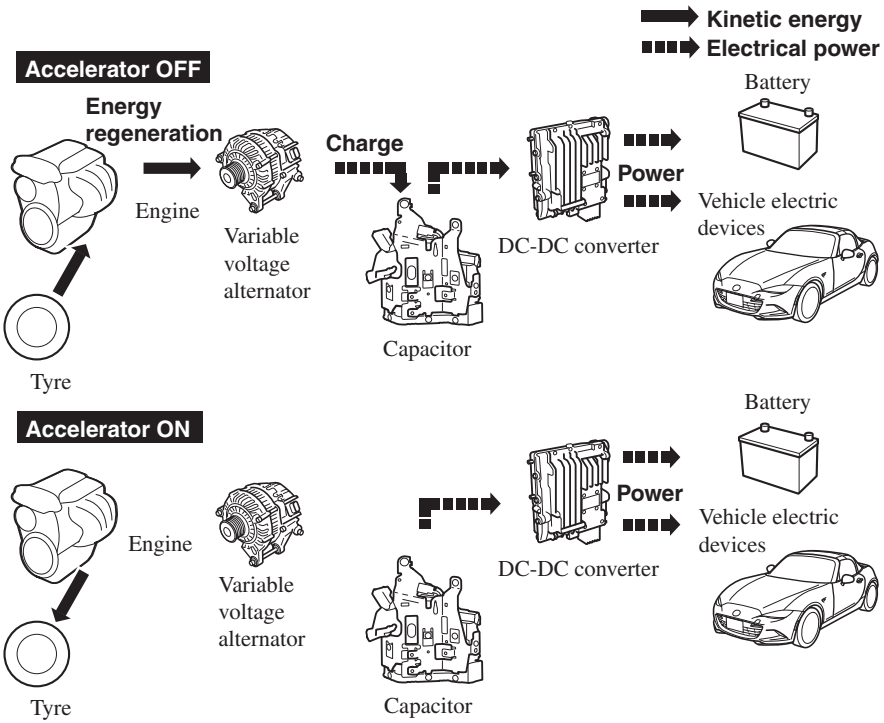
NOTE

- When DSC is on and you attempt to free the vehicle when it is stuck, or drive it out of freshly fallen snow, the TCS (part of the DSC system) will activate. Depressing the accelerator will not increase engine power and freeing the vehicle may be difficult. When this happens, turn off the TCS/DSC.
- If the TCS/DSC is off when the engine is turned off, it automatically activates when the ignition is switched ON.
- Leaving the TCS/DSC on will provide the best traction.
- If the DSC OFF switch is pressed and held for 10 seconds or more, the DSC OFF switch malfunction detection function operates and the DSC system activates automatically. The DSC OFF indicator light turns off while the DSC system is operative.

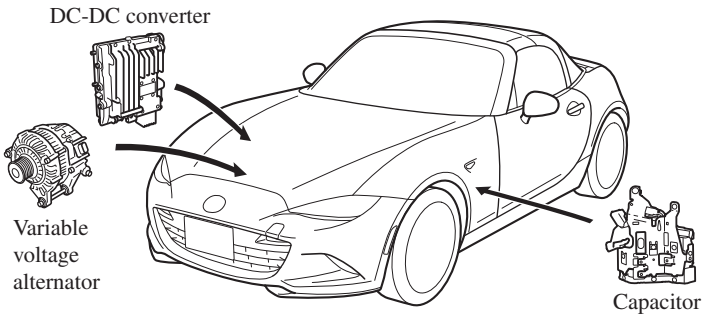
i-ELOOP*

i-ELOOP is a regenerative braking system. When you depress the brake pedal or use engine braking, the kinetic energy that occurs is converted to electrical energy by the power generator and the converted electrical energy is stored in the rechargeable battery (capacitor and battery). The stored electricity is used as power to charge the battery and the vehicle's electrical devices.

- A variable voltage alternator is incorporated in the power generator which converts the kinetic energy to electricity and can generate electricity efficiently according to the vehicle conditions.
- A capacitor is used to store large amounts of electricity instantly which can be utilized quickly.
- A DC-DC converter is incorporated which steps down the stored electricity to voltage useable by the vehicle's electrical devices.



 *Some models.



⚠ CAUTION

High-current electricity flows through the following parts, therefore do not touch them.

- Variable voltage alternator
- DC-DC converter
- Capacitor

NOTE

- A difference in the fuel economy may occur depending on how the vehicle's electrical devices are used.
- If the capacitor is to be disposed of, always consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
  For details, go to the following URL.
  http://mazda.com/recycle/capa/

▼i-ELOOP Indicator Light/Control Status Display

The driver is notified of the i-ELOOP power generating status and the vehicle conditions by the i-ELOOP indicator light (green) and the control status display.

i-ELOOP indicator light (green) (vehicles with Type B instrument cluster)

The light turns on during power generation.

Control status display (vehicles with type B/type C audio)

The i-ELOOP power generating status is displayed in the centre display.
Refer to Control Status Display on page 4-94.

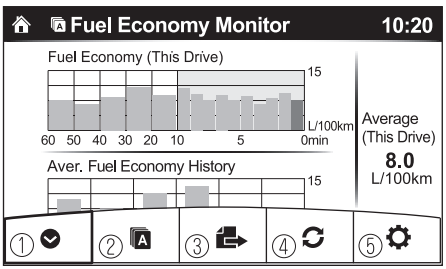
Fuel Economy Monitor*

For vehicles with type B/type C audio, the Control Status, Fuel Consumption, and Effectiveness*1 are switched and displayed by operating each icon in the display.
In addition, after completing a trip, the total energy efficiency to date is displayed in the ending display when the ending display is turned on.

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the applications screen.
2. Select the “Fuel Economy Monitor”.
3. Operate the commander switch or touch the screen and display the menu.

NOTE
When the menu is displayed by touching the screen, the display is hidden automatically after 6 seconds.

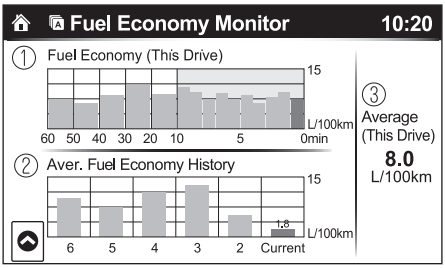
4. Select the icon in the menu and perform the operation. Each icon operates as follows:

Indication on display	Control status
	① Hides the menu display.
	② Displays the application screen.
	③ Switches the Fuel Economy Monitor in the order of Control Status, Fuel Consumption, and Effectiveness*1.
	④ Resets the fuel economy data.
	⑤ Displays the following setting screen. •Ending display on/off switching •On/off switching for function which synchronizes reset fuel economy data to trip meter (Trip A)

*1 With i-stop function.

▼Fuel Consumption Display

Information regarding the fuel economy is displayed.

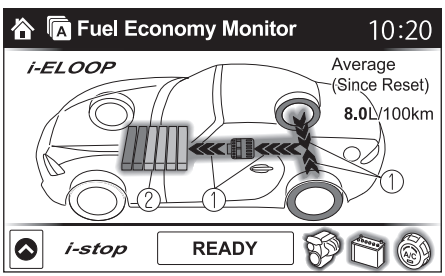
Indication on display	Control status
	① Displays the fuel economy for the past 60 minutes. •Displays the fuel economy every minute for the past 1 to 10 minutes. •Displays the fuel economy every 10 minutes for the past 10 to 60 minutes. ② Displays the average fuel economy over the past 5 resets and after the current reset. ③ Calculates the average fuel economy every minute after vehicle travel begins, and displays it.

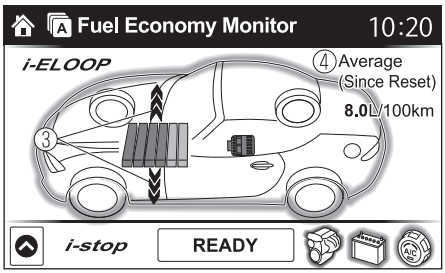
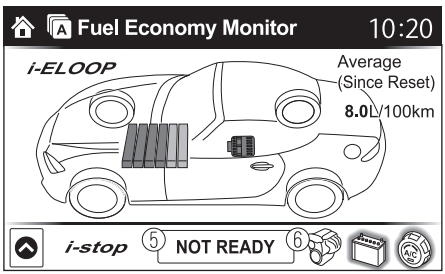
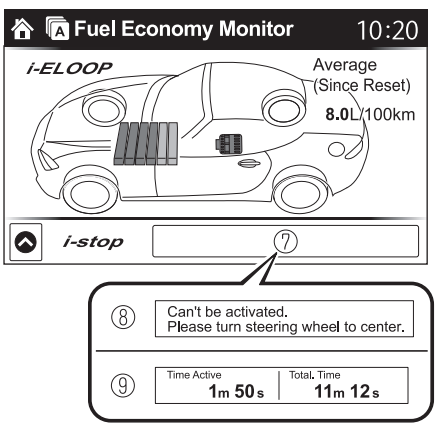
NOTE

- The fuel economy data can be reset by doing the following operation:
  - Press the reset switch from the menu screen.
  - When the function which synchronizes the fuel economy monitor and the trip meter is on, reset trip A of the trip meter.
  - Delete the average fuel economy information displayed in the trip computer.
- After resetting the fuel economy data, “-- -” is displayed while the average fuel economy is calculated.

▼Control Status Display (With i-stop Function)

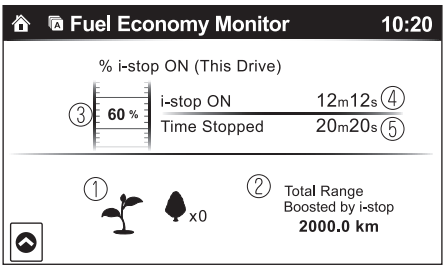
The i-stop operation status and the i-ELOOP power generating status are displayed.

Indication on display	Control status
	① Displays the level of electricity generated by regenerative braking. ② Displays the amount of the electricity stored in the rechargeable battery.

Indication on display	Control status
	③ Displays the status of the electricity stored in the rechargeable battery and being supplied to the electrical devices (whole vehicle in display is illuminated simultaneously).
	④ Displays the accumulated fuel economy.
	⑤ Displays the readiness status as to whether operation of the i-stop function is available.
	⑥ Displays the operation readiness status of the i-stop function on the vehicle side (engine, battery, and A/C) using icon colouring. The blue colour indicates that the i-stop function is ready to operate, and the grey colour indicates that it is not ready for operation.
	⑦ Displays the i-stop function status while the vehicle is stopped.
	⑧ Indicates the operations required by the driver to operate the i-stop function while it is not operating.
	⑨ Displays the current amount of time that the i-stop function has been operating and the accumulated amount of time that it has been operating.

▼Effectiveness Display (With i-stop Function)

The actual performance of the energy efficiency is displayed.

Indication on display	Control status
	① The leaf graphic grows according to the amount of CO_2 emissions reduced by the system effects. The cumulative total amount of leaf growth is indicated in terms of the number of tree graphics.
	② Displays the total driving distance which could be extended by the operation of the i-stop function.
	③ Displays the percentage of time that the vehicle was stopped by the i-stop function operation out of the total amount of time that the vehicle was stopped.
	④ Displays the amount of time that the i-stop function has operated.
	⑤ Displays the total amount of time that the vehicle was stopped.

▼Ending Screen Display

If the ending display on the fuel economy monitor is on when the ignition is switched from ON to OFF, the actual energy efficiency (with i-stop function) or the information regarding the fuel economy (without i-stop function) is displayed.

Drive Selection*

Drive selection is a system to switch the vehicle's drive mode. When the sport mode is selected, vehicle's response against accelerator operation is enhanced. This provides additional quick acceleration which may be needed to safely make manoeuvres such as lane changes, merging onto freeways, or passing other vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the sport mode when driving on slippery roads such as wet or snow-covered roads. It may cause tyre slipping.

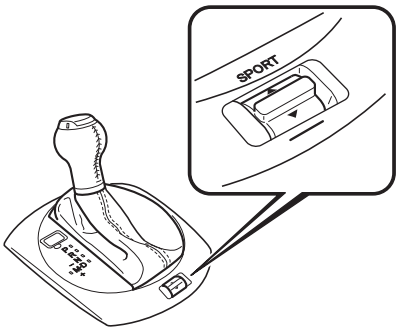
NOTE

- When the sport mode is selected, driving at higher engine speeds increases and it may increase fuel consumption. Mazda recommends that you cancel the sport mode on normal driving.
- Drive mode cannot be switched in the following conditions:
  - ABS/TCS/DSC is operating
  - Cruise control is operating.
  - Steering wheel is being operated abruptly

*Some models.

▼Drive Selection Switch

Press the drive selection switch forward (“SPORT”) to select the sport mode. Pull the drive selection switch back (“—”) to cancel the sport mode.

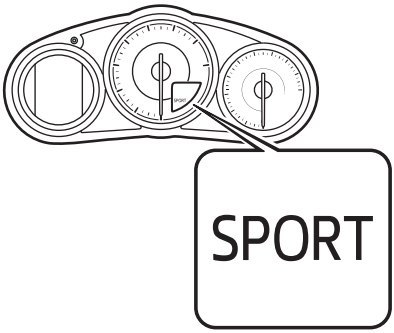


NOTE

- When the ignition is switched off, the sport mode is cancelled.
- Depending on the driving conditions when sport mode is selected, the vehicle may perform shift-down or slightly accelerate.

▼Select Mode Indication

When the sport mode is selected, the select mode indication turns on in the instrument cluster.



NOTE

If the drive selection cannot be switched to sport mode, the select mode indication flashes to notify the driver.

Power Steering

- Power steering is only operable when the engine is running. If the engine is off or if the power steering system is inoperable, you can still steer, but it requires more physical effort.
  If the steering feels stiffer than usual during normal driving or the steering vibrates, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- The warning light notifies the driver of system abnormalities and operation conditions.
  Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

⚠ CAUTION

Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme left or right for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. This could damage the power steering system.

i-ACTIVSENSE*

i-ACTIVSENSE is a collective term covering a series of advanced safety and driver support systems which make use of a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and radar sensors.
Because each system has its limitations, always drive carefully and do not rely solely on the systems.

Driver awareness support systems

Nighttime visibility

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS).....4-102
High Beam Control System (HBC) 4-103

Left/right side and rear side detection

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 4-106
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System 4-112

Rear obstruction detection when leaving a parking space

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 4-119

Driver support system

Speed control

Adjustable Speed Limiter 4-122

▼Camera and Sensors

Forward sensing camera (FSC)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines the conditions ahead of the vehicle while travelling at night and detects traffic lanes. The following systems also use the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).

- High Beam Control system (HBC)
- Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed at the top of the windscreen near the rearview mirror.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-129.

 *Some models.

Radar sensors (rear)

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensors. The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.
Refer to Radar Sensors (Rear) on page 4-132.

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)*

The adaptive front lighting system (AFS) automatically adjusts the headlight beams to the left or right in conjunction with the operation of the steering wheel after the headlights have been turned on.
A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.

NOTE

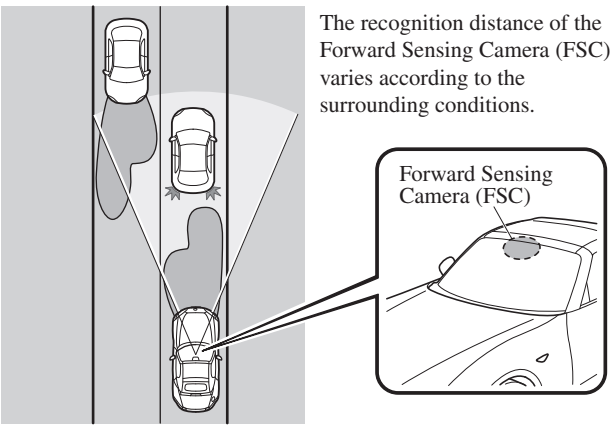
- Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).
- The Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) function can be switched to operable/inoperable using the personalisation function.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

 *Some models.

High Beam Control System (HBC)*

The High Beam Control System (HBC) determines the conditions in front of the vehicle using the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) while driving in darkness to automatically switch the headlights between high and low beams.
Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-42.
While driving the vehicle at a speed of about 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the headlights are switched to high beams when there are no vehicles ahead or approaching in the opposite direction.
The system switches the headlights to low beams when one of the following occurs:

- The system detects a vehicle or the headlights/lights of a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction.
- The vehicle is driven on roads lined with streetlamps or on roads in well-lit cities and towns.
- The vehicle is driven at less than about 20 km/h (12 mph).



The recognition distance of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) varies according to the surrounding conditions.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not adjust the vehicle height, modify the headlight units, or remove the camera, otherwise the system will not operate normally.
- Do not rely excessively on the High Beam Control System (HBC) and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.

*Some models.

NOTE

The timing in which the system switches the headlights changes under the following conditions. If the system does not switch the headlights appropriately, manually switch between high and low beams according to the visibility as well as road and traffic conditions.

- When there are sources of light in the area such as street lamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.
- When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.
- When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.
- When driving on roads with sharp turn or hilly terrain.
- When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles in front of you or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.
- When there is sufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.
- When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects.
- When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle in front of you spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.

▼To Operate the System

The High Beam Control System (HBC) operates to switch the headlights automatically between high and low beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the AUTO and high beam position.
The High Beam Control System (HBC) determines that it is dark based on the brightness of the surrounding area. At the same time, the High Beam Control System (HBC) indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster illuminates.

NOTE

- When the vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the headlights automatically switch to high beams when there are no vehicles ahead or approaching in the opposite direction.
  When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the High Beam Control System (HBC) switches the headlights to low beams.
- The low beams may not switch to high beams when cornering.
- Operation of the High Beam Control System (HBC) function can be disabled. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

▼Manual Switching

Switching to low beams

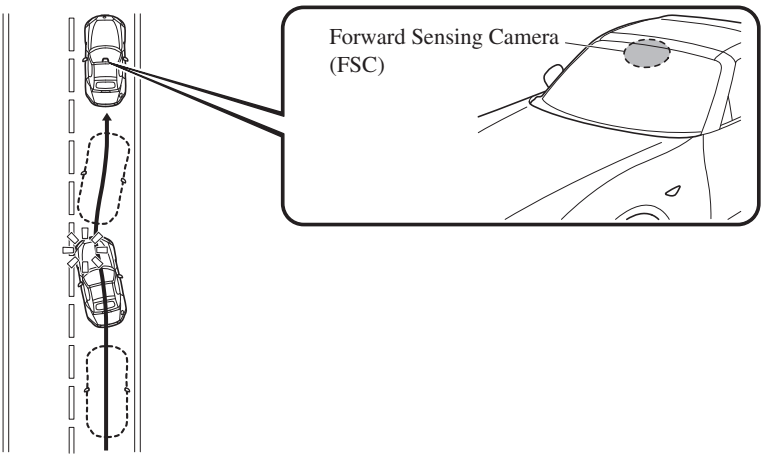
Shift the lever to the low beam position.
The High Beam Control System (HBC) indicator light (green) turns off.

Switching to high beams

Turn the headlight switch to the ≣D position.
The High Beam Control System (HBC) indicator light (green) turns off and the ≣D is illuminated.

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*

The LDWS system notifies the driver that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane.
The system detects the white or yellow lines on the traffic lane using the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and if it determines that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane, it notifies the driver by flashing the LDWS warning light and activating the LDWS warning beep, and by the multi-information display (vehicles with multi-information display).
Use the LDWS when you drive the vehicle on roads with white or yellow lines.
Refer to Forward Sensing Camera on page 4-129.



The warning light illuminates when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not use the LDWS under the following conditions:
The system may not operate adequately according to the actual driving conditions, resulting in an accident.

- ***Driving on roads with tight curves.***
- ***Driving under bad weather conditions (rain, fog, and snow).***

The functions of the LDWS have limitations:
Always stay on course using the steering wheel and drive with care. The system is not designed to compensate for a driver's lack of caution and if you rely too much on the LDWS it could lead to an accident. The driver is responsible for assuring lane changes and other manoeuvres. Always pay attention to the direction in which the vehicle is travelling and the vehicle's surroundings.

 *Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not modify the suspension. If the vehicle height or the damping force of the suspensions is changed, the LDWS may not operate correctly.

NOTE

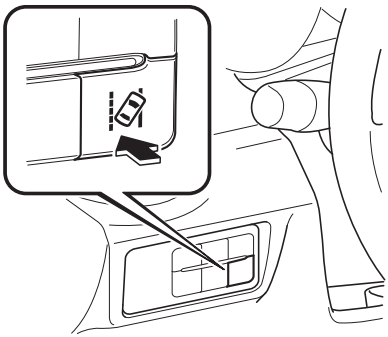
- If your vehicle deviates from its traffic lane, the LDWS operates (warning sound and indicator light). Steer the vehicle adequately to drive the vehicle to the centre of the lane.
- When the direction indicator lever is operated for a lane change, the LDWS warning is automatically cancelled. The LDWS warning becomes operable when the direction indicator lever is returned and the system detects the white or yellow lines.
- If the steering wheel, accelerator pedal, or brake pedal is operated abruptly and the vehicle moves close to a white or yellow line, the system determines that the driver is making a lane change and the LDWS warning is automatically cancelled.
- The LDWS may not operate during the period immediately after the vehicle has deviated from its lane and the LDWS has operated, or the vehicle deviates from its lane repeatedly within a short period of time.
- The LDWS does not operate if it does not detect the white or yellow lines of the traffic lane.

NOTE

- Under the following conditions, the LDWS may not be able to detect white or yellow lines correctly and the LDWS may not operate correctly.
  - If an object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.
  - Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment the vehicle is inclined.
  - The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.
  - When the vehicle is driven on the entry and exit to or from the rest area or tollgate of a highway.
  - The white or yellow lines are less visible because of dirt or paint flaking.
  - The vehicle ahead is running near a white or yellow line and the line is less visible.
  - A white or yellow line is less visible because of bad weather (rain, fog, or snow).
  - The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane due to construction.
  - A misleading line is picked up on the road such as a temporary line for construction, or because of shade, lingering snow, or grooves filled with water.
  - The surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.
  - The windscreen is dirty or foggy.
  - Back-light is reflecting from the road surface.
  - The road surface is wet and shiny after rain, or there are puddles on the road.
  - The shade of a guardrail parallel to a white or yellow line is on the road.
  - The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.
  - The road is excessively uneven.
  - The vehicle is shaken after hitting a road bump.
  - There are two or more adjacent white or yellow lines.
  - There are various road markings or lane markings of various shapes near an intersection.

▼When the System Operates

1. The system goes on operation standby when the LDWS switch is pressed and the LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off.



2. Drive the vehicle in the centre of the driving lane while the LDWS OFF indicator light is turned off. The system becomes operational when all of the following conditions are met.

   • The vehicle is driven in the centre of the driving lane with the white or yellow lines on the left and right sides, or on either side.
   • The vehicle speed is 65 km/h (41 mph) or faster.
   • The vehicle is driven on a straight road or road with gentle curves.

   The LDWS does not operate in the following cases:

   • The system cannot detect white or yellow lines.
   • The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).
   • The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
   • The vehicle is making a curve at an inadequate speed.

NOTE

- The LDWS does not operate until the system detects a white or yellow line on either the left or right.
- When the system detects a white or yellow line on one side only, the system will activate the warning only when the vehicle deviates on the side where the white or yellow line is being detected.
- The distance and warning sensitivity (likelihood of a warning) which the system uses to determine the possibility of a lane departure can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LDWS cancels automatically and the LDWS warning light in the instrument cluster turns on.

• The temperature inside the camera is high or low.
• The windscreen around the camera is foggy.
• The windscreen around the camera is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

The LDWS is enabled automatically when the operation conditions are met, and the LDWS warning light turns off.

Auto cancel warning

When the following operations are performed, the LDWS determines that the driver intends to make a lane change and the LDWS warning is cancelled automatically. The LDWS is enabled automatically after the driver performs the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed abruptly.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed abruptly.
- The direction indicator lever is operated (after the direction indicator lever is returned, the LDWS may not operate for about 3 seconds which is the period of time required to make a lane correction).

NOTE
After about 60 seconds have elapsed with the direction indicator lever left operating, the LDWS warning may operate if the vehicle is close to a white or yellow line.

▼Cancelling the System

Press the LDWS OFF switch to cancel the LDWS. The LDWS OFF indicator light turns on.

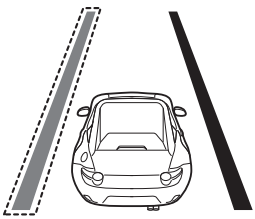
Vehicle lane display (vehicles with multi-information display)
The vehicle lane lines are no longer indicated in the multi-information display when the LDWS is cancelled.

NOTE
When the ignition is switched OFF, the LDWS becomes operational the next time the ignition switched ON.

▼Lane Departure Warning

If the system determines that there is the possibility of a lane departure, the LDWS warning beep activates and the LDWS warning light flashes. Operate the steering wheel appropriately and steer the vehicle to the centre of the lane.
For vehicles equipped with the multi-information display and the active driving display, the colour of the lane line in the direction which the system determined that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane changes from white to amber and the vehicle lane line flashes.

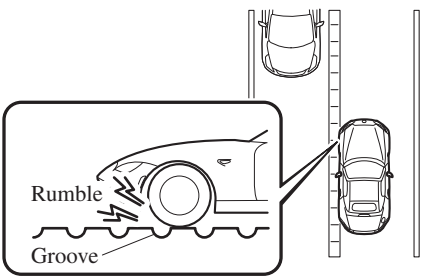
Indication on display



NOTE

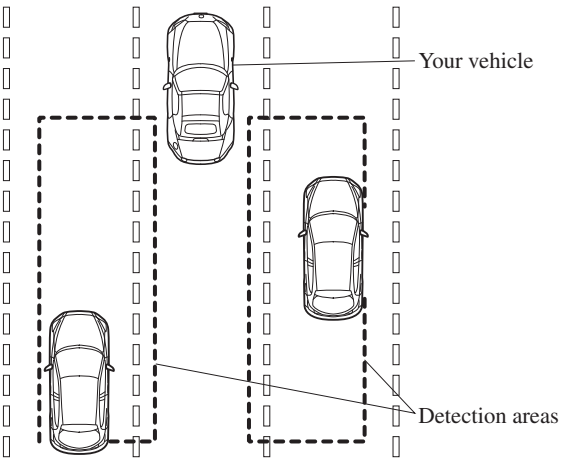
- If the LDWS warning sound is set to rumble*1, the sound will be heard from the vehicle speaker on the side which the system determined the vehicle may be deviating from its lane.
- It may be difficult to hear the LDWS warning beep depending on the surrounding conditions such as outside noise.
- The volume of the LDWS warning sound can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
- The type of warning sound (rumble*1/beep) on the LDWS can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

*1 A rumble strip is a series of grooves in the road pavement surface positioned at specific intervals, and when the vehicle passes over it a vibration and rumble sound is produced which alerts the driver that the vehicle is departing from the lane. The rumble sound is a reproduction of the sound which occurs when a vehicle passes over a rumble strip.



Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System*

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides during lane changes by alerting the driver to the presence of vehicles approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane.
The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) detects vehicles approaching from the rear while travelling in the forward direction at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster and turns on the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights equipped on the door mirrors depending on the conditions. If the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a lane change in the direction in which the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated, the system warns the driver of a vehicle in the detection area by flashing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light and activating a beep sound.
The detection area on this system covers the driving lanes on both sides of the vehicle and from the rear part of the doors to about 50 m (164 ft) behind the vehicle.



⚠ *WARNING*

Always check the surrounding area visually before making an actual lane change:
The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at your rear when making a lane change. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light may not flash or it might be delayed even though a vehicle is in an adjacent driving lane. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

 *Some models.

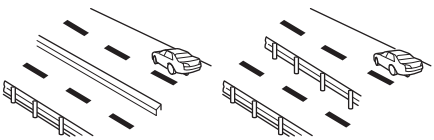
NOTE

- The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) will operate when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The ignition is switched ON.
  - The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch is pressed and the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off.
  - The vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster.
- The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) will not operate under the following circumstances.
  - The vehicle speed falls below about 25 km/h (15 mph) even though the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light is turned off.
  - The shift lever (manual transmission)/selector lever (automatic transmission) is shifted to reverse (R) and the vehicle is reversing.
- In the following cases, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.
  - Some problem with the system including the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights is detected.
  - A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.
  - There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear). Remove any snow, ice or mud on the rear bumper.
  - Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.
  - The temperature near the radar sensors (rear) becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.
  - The battery voltage has decreased.
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.
  - A vehicle is in the detection area at the rear in an adjacent driving lane but it does not approach. The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) determines the condition based on radar detection data.
  - A vehicle is travelling alongside your vehicle at nearly the same speed for an extended period of time.
  - Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.
  - A vehicle in an adjacent driving lane is attempting to pass your vehicle.
  - A vehicle is in an adjacent lane on a road with extremely wide driving lanes. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set at the road width of expressways.

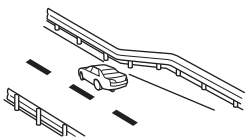
NOTE

- In the following cases, the activation of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and the warning beep may not occur or they may be delayed.
  - A vehicle makes a lane change from a driving lane two lanes over to an adjacent lane.
  - Driving on steep slopes.
  - Crossing the summit of a hill or mountain pass.
  - The turning radius is small (making a sharp turn, turning at intersections).
  - When there is a difference in the height between your driving lane and the adjacent lane.
  - Directly after pressing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch and the system becomes operable.
- If the road width is extremely narrow, vehicles two lanes over may be detected. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set according to the road width of expressways.
- The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights may turn on in reaction to stationary objects on the road or the roadside such as guardrails, tunnels, sidewalls, and parked vehicles.

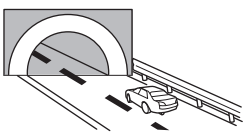
Objects such as guardrails and concrete walls running alongside the vehicle.

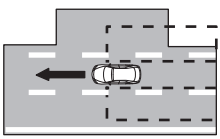


Places where the width between guardrails or walls on each side of the vehicle narrows.



The walls at the entrance and exits of tunnels, turnouts.





- A Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light may flash or the warning beep may be activated several times when making a turn at a city intersection.
- Turn off the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radar’s radio waves will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.

NOTE

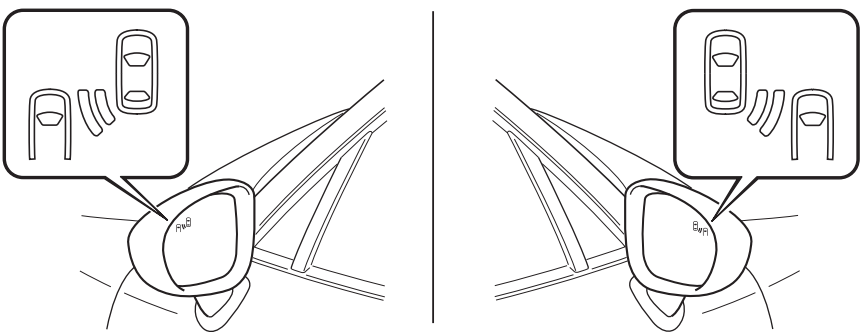
- In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flashing of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights equipped on the door mirrors.
  - Snow or ice is adhering to the door mirrors.
  - The door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.
- The system switches to the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function when the shift lever (manual transmission) or the selector lever (automatic transmission) is shifted to the reverse (R) position.
  Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-119.

▼Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Lights/Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Beep

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) or Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system notifies the driver of the presence of vehicles in adjacent lanes to the rear of your vehicle using the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and the warning beep while the systems are operational.

Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights are equipped on the left and right door mirrors. The warning lights turn on when a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane is detected.



When the ignition is switched ON, the malfunction warning light turns on momentarily and then turns off after a few seconds.

Forward driving (Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system operation)

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system detects vehicles approaching from the rear and turns on the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights equipped on the door mirrors according to the conditions. Additionally, while a Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light flashes.

Reverse driving (Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system operation)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system detects vehicles approaching from the left and right of your vehicle and flashes the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights.

Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights turn on when the position lights are turned on, the brightness of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights is dimmed.
If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights are difficult to see due to glare from surrounding brightness when travelling on snow-covered roads or under foggy conditions, press the dimmer cancellation button to cancel the dimmer and increase the brightness of Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights when they turn on.
Refer to Instrument Panel Illumination on page 4-28.

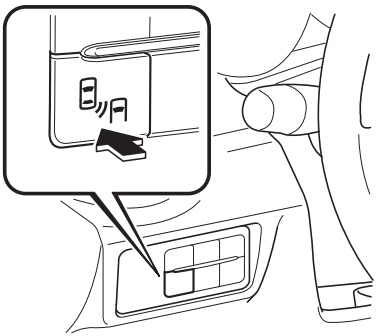
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep is activated simultaneously with the flashing of a Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light.

▼Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light

- When the ignition is switched ON, the malfunction warning light turns on momentarily and then turns off after a few seconds.
- The BSM OFF Indicator Light illuminates when the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch is pressed to turn off the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems.
- A malfunction in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Dealer.
  - The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON.
  - The light remains turned on even if the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch is operated.
  - It turns on while driving the vehicle.

▼Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Switch



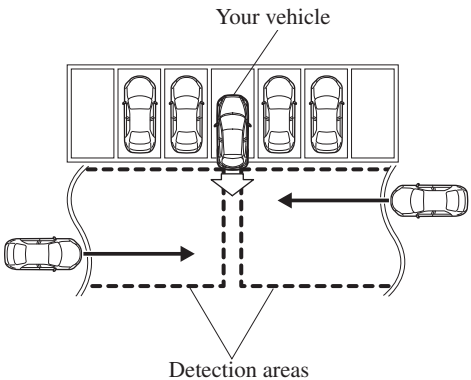
When the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch is pressed, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off and the BSM OFF Indicator Light in the instrument cluster turns on.
If the switch is pressed again, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems become operable and the BSM OFF Indicator Light turns off.

NOTE

- When the ignition is switched off, the condition before the system was turned off is maintained.
  For example, if the ignition is switched OFF while the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are operational, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems remain operational the next time the ignition is switched ON.
- The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off when the battery is disconnected such as when the battery terminals or fuses have been removed and re-installed.
  To turn the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems back on, press the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch.

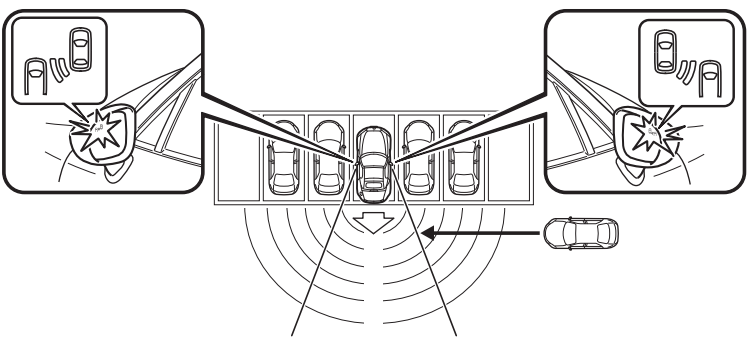
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides while the vehicle is reversing by alerting the driver to the presence of vehicles approaching the rear of the vehicle.
The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system detects vehicles approaching from the left and right sides of the vehicle while the vehicle is being reversed out of a parking space, and notifies the driver of possible danger using the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and the warning buzzer.



Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) operation

1. The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system operates when the shift lever (manual transmission) or the selector lever (automatic transmission) is shifted to the reverse (R) position.
2. If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light flashes and the warning beep is activated simultaneously.



*Some models.

⚠ *WARNING*

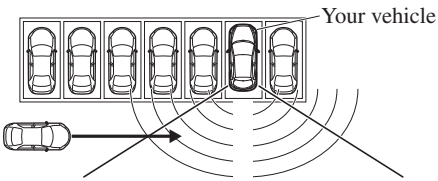
Always check the surrounding area visually before actually putting the vehicle in reverse:
The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at the rear when putting the vehicle in reverse. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light may not flash or it might be delayed even though a vehicle is behind your vehicle. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

NOTE

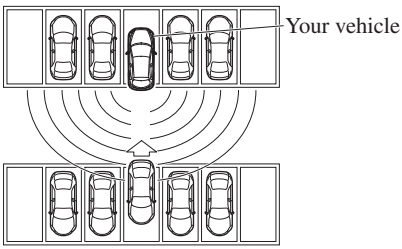
- In the following cases, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.
  - Some problem with the system including the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights has occurred.
  - A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.
  - There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear).
  - Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.
  - The temperature near the radar sensors becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.
  - The battery voltage has decreased.

NOTE

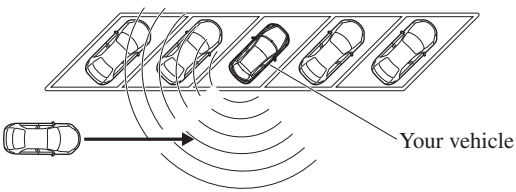
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.
  - The vehicle speed when reversing is about 10 km/h (6.3 mph) or faster.
  - The radar sensor (rear) detection area is obstructed by a nearby wall or parked vehicle. (Reverse the vehicle to a position where the radar sensor detection area is no longer obstructed.)



  - A vehicle is approaching directly from the rear of your vehicle.



  - The vehicle is parked on a slant.



  - Directly after pressing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch and the system becomes operable.
- In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flashing of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights equipped on the door mirrors.
  - Snow or ice adheres to the door mirrors.
  - The door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.
- Turn off the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.

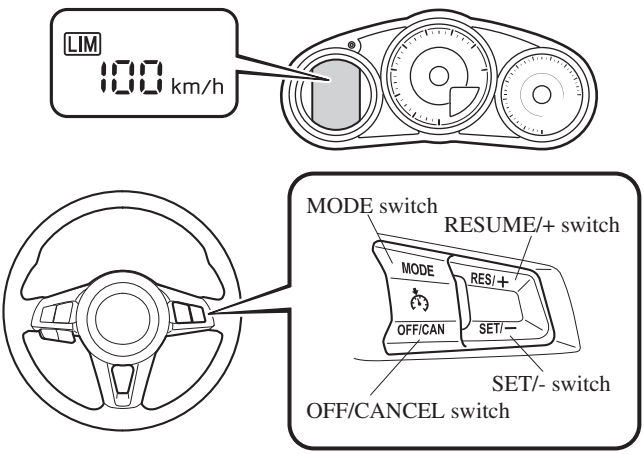
Adjustable Speed Limiter*

The adjustable speed limiter is a function to prevent the vehicle from being driven at a vehicle speed faster than a set speed. The vehicle speed is controlled to kept it below the set speed even if the accelerator pedal is depressed.
The adjustable speed limiter can be set between 30 km/h (20 mph) and 200 km/h (125 mph).
The vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when the vehicle is driven on a down slope, however, the system notifies the driver by flashing the display and operating a warning sound.

⚠ *WARNING*

Always turn off the system when changing drivers:
If the driver is changed and the new driver is unaware of the adjustable speed limiter function, the vehicle may not accelerate when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, leading to an accident.

The system consists of the adjustable speed limiter display and the speed limiter switch on the steering wheel.



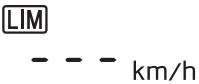
 *Some models.

▼Adjustable Speed Limiter Display

The setting status of the adjustable speed limiter is displayed in the display in the instrument cluster.

Stand-by display

Displays when the speed limiter switch is operated and the system is turned on.
Turns off when the system is turned off.



Setting display

Displays when the SET– switch is operated and the speed is set.

Cancel display

Displays when any of the following operations is done and the system is temporarily cancelled.

- OFF/CANCEL switch is operated
- Accelerator pedal is strongly depressed

▼Adjustable Speed Limiter Main Indication (White)/Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Indication (Green), Adjustable Speed Limiter Main Indicator Light (Amber)/Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Indicator Light (Green)

Type A instrument cluster

(Adjustable speed limiter main indication (white))
The indication display in white when the MODE switch is pressed and the adjustable speed limiter is activated.
(Adjustable speed limiter set indication (green))
The indication display in green when a speed has been set.

Type B instrument cluster

(Adjustable speed limiter main indicator light (amber))
The indicator light illuminates amber when the MODE switch is pressed and the adjustable speed limiter is activated.
(Adjustable speed limiter set indicator light (green))
The indicator light illuminates green when a speed has been set.

▼Speed Limiter Warning Beep

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more, a warning sound operates continuously and the adjustable speed limiter display flashes at the same time. The warning sound operates and the display flashes until the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.
Verify the safety of the surrounding area and adjust the vehicle speed by applying the brakes. Additionally, keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.

⚠ CAUTION

If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET − or RESUME/+ switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 3 km/h (2 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.

NOTE

When the system is temporarily cancelled by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the adjustable speed limiter display shows the cancel display. If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more while the cancel display is displayed, the set speed display flashes but the warning sound is not operated.

▼Activation/Deactivation

NOTE

When the ignition is switched off, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched off while the adjustable speed limiter is operating, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

Activation

(Type A Instrument Cluster)

Press the MODE switch to operate the system. The adjustable speed limiter screen is displayed, and the adjustable speed limiter main indication displays in white.

NOTE

When the cruise control is operating after pressing the MODE switch, press the mode switch again to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.

(Type B Instrument Cluster)

Press the MODE switch to operate the system. The adjustable speed limiter screen is displayed, and the adjustable speed limiter main indicator light (amber) turns on.

NOTE
When the cruise control is operating after pressing the MODE switch, press the mode switch again to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, do the following operations:
(Type A Instrument Cluster)

When a cruising speed has been set (adjustable speed limiter set indication displays in green)

Long-press the OFF/CANCEL switch or press the OFF/CANCEL switch 2 times. The adjustable speed limiter screen is no longer displayed and the adjustable speed limiter set indication (green) does not display.

When a cruising speed has not been set (adjustable speed limiter main indication displays in white)

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch. The adjustable speed limiter screen is no longer displayed and the adjustable speed limiter main indication (white) does not display.

NOTE
When the MODE switch is pressed during adjustable speed limiter operation, the system switches to the cruise control.

(Type B Instrument Cluster)

When a cruising speed has been set (adjustable speed limiter set indicator light (green) turns on)

Long-press the OFF/CANCEL switch or press the OFF/CANCEL switch 2 times. The adjustable speed limiter screen is no longer displayed and the adjustable speed limiter set indicator light (green) turns off.

When a cruising speed has not been set (adjustable speed limiter main indicator light (amber) turns on)

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch. The adjustable speed limiter screen is no longer displayed and the adjustable speed limiter main indicator light (amber) turns off.

NOTE
When the MODE switch is pressed during adjustable speed limiter operation, the system switches to the cruise control.

▼Setting the System

⚠ *WARNING*

Always verify the safety of the surrounding area when setting the adjustable speed limiter:
If the speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed, the vehicle speed is decreased to the set speed. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and keep a safer distance between vehicles ahead and behind you.

1. Press the MODE switch to turn the system on.
2. Press the SET − to set the speed. When the current vehicle speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) or more, the speed is set to the current vehicle speed. When the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed is set to 30 km/h (20 mph).
3. To increase the set speed, press the RESUME/+ switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by pressing the RESUME/+ switch momentary. For example, the set speed increases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the RESUME/+ switch 4 times.
4. To decrease the set speed, press the SET − switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) decrements. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by pressing the SET − switch momentary. For example, the set speed decreases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the SET − switch 4 times.

NOTE

- When the vehicle set speed is displayed in the instrument cluster, press the RESUME/+ switch to set the displayed vehicle speed.
- The system is temporarily cancelled when the vehicle is accelerated by depressing the accelerator pedal strongly, however, it resumes when the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.
- The vehicle speed may exceed the set speed on a down slope.

▼Temporarily Cancelling the System

The system is temporarily cancelled (stand-by status) when any of the following operations is done while the adjustable speed limiter is displayed.

- OFF/CANCEL switch is pressed
- Accelerator pedal is strongly depressed

Press the RESUME/+ switch to resume the operation at the previous set speed. The adjustable speed limiter display remains displayed.

NOTE

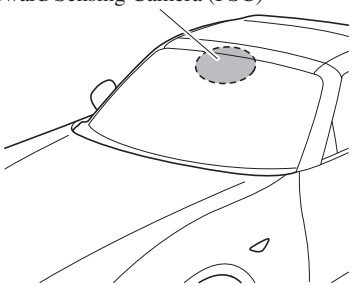
The set speed can be set by pressing the SET− switch while the system is in stand-by status.
The adjustable speed limiter is not cancelled by depressing the brake pedal.

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)*

Your vehicle is equipped with a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC). The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is positioned near the rearview mirror and used by the following systems.

- High Beam Control System (HBC)
- Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)



The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines the conditions ahead of the vehicle while travelling at night and detects traffic lanes. The distance in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.

*Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not apply accessories, stickers or film to the windscreen near the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
  If the area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens is obstructed, it will cause the system to not operate correctly. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.
- Do not disassemble or modify the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
  Disassembly or modification of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) will cause a malfunction or mistaken operation. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.
- Heed the following cautions to assure the correct operation of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
  - The direction of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) has been finely adjusted, therefore do not change the installation position or remove the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
  - Be careful not to scratch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens or allow it to get dirty.
  - Do not remove the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cover.
  - Do not place objects on the instrument panel which reflect light.
  - Always keep the windscreen glass around the camera clean by removing dirt or fogging. Use the windscreen defroster to remove fogging on the windscreen.
  - Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer regarding cleaning the interior side of the windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
  - Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer before performing repairs around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
  - The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed to the windscreen. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for windscreen repair and replacement.
  - When performing repairs around the rearview mirror, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
  - Do not hit or apply strong force to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or the area around it. If strong force is applied, stop using the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS), and the High Beam Control System (HBC) and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
  - The direction in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is pointed has been finely adjusted. Do not change the installation position of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or remove it. Otherwise, it could result in damage or malfunction.

NOTE

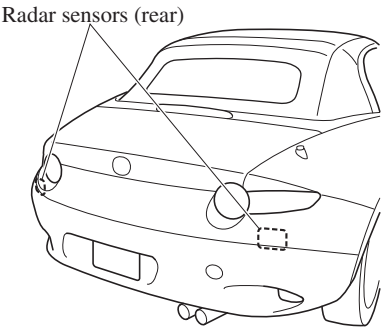
- In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot detect target objects correctly, and each system may be unable to operate normally.
  - The height of the vehicle ahead is low.
  - You drive your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.
  - Headlights are not turned on during the night or when going through a tunnel.
- In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly.
  - When driving next to walls with no patterning (including fences and longitudinally striped walls).
  - The tail lights of the vehicle ahead are turned off.
  - A vehicle is outside the illumination range of the headlights.
  - The vehicle is making a sharp turn, or ascending or descending a steep slope.
  - Entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Heavy luggage is loaded causing the vehicle to tilt.
  - Strong light is shone at the front of the vehicle (back light or high-beam light from on-coming vehicles).
  - There are many light emitters on the vehicle ahead.
  - When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off at nighttime.
  - The vehicle ahead has a special shape. For example, a vehicle towing a trailer house or a boat, or a vehicle carrier carrying a vehicle with its front pointed rearward.

Radar Sensors (Rear)*

Your vehicle is equipped with radar sensors (rear). The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring system (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.



The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.
Always keep the surface of the rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) clean so that the radar sensors (rear) operate normally. Also, do not apply items such as stickers.
Refer to Exterior Care on page 6-53.

⚠ CAUTION

If the rear bumper receives a severe impact, the system may no longer operate normally. Stop the system immediately and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

 *Some models.

NOTE

- The detection ability of the radar sensors (rear) has limitations. In the following cases, the detection ability may lower and the system may not operate normally.
  - The rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) has become deformed.
  - Snow, ice or mud adheres to the radar sensors (rear) on the rear bumper.
  - Under bad weather conditions such as rain, snow and fog.
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.
  - Stationary objects on a road or a road side such as small, two-wheeled vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, animals, and shopping carts.
  - Vehicle shapes which do not reflect radar waves well such as empty trailers with a low vehicle height and sports cars.
- Vehicles are shipped with the direction of the radar sensors (rear) adjusted for each vehicle to a loaded vehicle condition so that the radar sensors (rear) detect approaching vehicles correctly. If the direction of the radar sensors (rear) has deviated for some reason, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- For repairs or replacement of the radar sensors (rear), or bumper repairs, paintwork, and replacement near the radar sensors, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Turn off the system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.
- The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.

Cruise Control*

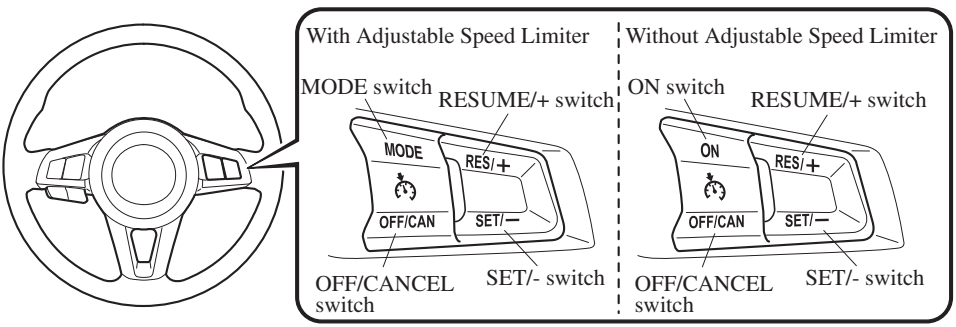
With cruise control, you can set and automatically maintain any speed of more than about 25 km/h (16 mph).

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not use the cruise control under the following conditions:
Using the cruise control under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in loss of vehicle control.

- ***Hilly terrain***
- ***Steep inclines***
- ***Heavy or unsteady traffic***
- ***Slippery or winding roads***
- ***Similar restrictions that require inconsistent speed***

▼Cruise Control Switch



 *Some models.

▼Cruise Main Indication (White)/ Cruise Set Indication (Green), Cruise Main Indicator Light (Amber)/Cruise Set Indicator Light (Green)

Type A instrument cluster

(Cruise main indication (white))
The indication turns on (white) when the cruise control system is activated.
(Cruise set indication (green))
The indication turns on (green) when a cruising speed has been set.

Type B instrument cluster

(Cruise main indicator light (amber))
The indicator light turns on (amber) when the cruise control system is activated.
(Cruise set indicator light (green))
The indicator light turns on (green) when a cruising speed has been set.

▼Activation/Deactivation

⚠ *WARNING*

Always turn off the cruise control system when it is not in use:
Leaving the cruise control system in an activation-ready state while the cruise control is not in use is dangerous as the cruise control could unexpectedly activate if the activation button is accidentally pressed, and result in loss of vehicle control and an accident.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched off, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched off while the cruise control is operating, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

Activation

With adjustable speed limiter

To activate the system, press the MODE switch. The cruise main indicator light (amber)/cruise main indication (white) turns on.

NOTE

When the adjustable speed limiter is operating after pressing the MODE switch, press the MODE switch again to switch to the cruise control.

Without adjustable speed limiter

To activate the system, press the ON switch. The cruise main indicator light (amber)/cruise main indication (white) turns on.

Deactivation

With adjustable speed limiter

To deactivate the system, press the OFF/CANCEL switch. The cruise main indicator light (amber)/cruise main indication (white) turns off.

NOTE
When the MODE switch is pressed during cruise control system operation, the system switches to the adjustable speed limiter.

Without adjustable speed limiter

To deactivate the system, press the OFF/CANCEL switch. The cruise main indicator light (amber)/cruise main indication (white) turns off.

▼To Set Speed

1. **(With adjustable speed limiter)**
   Activate the cruise control system by pressing the MODE switch. The cruise main indicator light (amber)/cruise main indication (white) turns on.
   (Without adjustable speed limiter)
   Activate the cruise control system by pressing the ON switch. The cruise main indicator light (amber)/cruise main indication (white) turns on.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 25 km/h (16 mph).
3. Set the cruise control by pressing the SET/− switch at the desired speed. The cruise control is set at the moment the SET/− switch is pressed. Release the accelerator pedal simultaneously. The cruise set indicator light/cruise set indication (green) turns on.

NOTE

- The cruise control speed setting cannot be performed under the following conditions:
  - **(Automatic transmission)**
    The selector lever is in the P or N position.
  - **(Manual transmission)**
    The shift lever is in the neutral position.
  - The parking brake is applied.
  - **(Vehicles with adjustable speed limiter)**
    The MODE switch for the adjustable speed limiter is pressed.
- Release the SET/− or RESUME/+ switch at the desired speed, otherwise the speed will continue increasing while the RESUME/+ switch is pressed and held, and continue decreasing while the SET/− switch is pressed and held (except when the accelerator pedal is depressed).
- On a steep grade, the vehicle may momentarily slow down while ascending, or speed up while descending.
- The cruise control will cancel if the vehicle speed decreases below 21 km/h (13 mph) when climbing a steep grade.
- The cruise control may cancel at about 15 km/h (9 mph) below the preset speed such as when climbing a long, steep grade.

The vehicle speed preset using the cruise control is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Type A Instrument Cluster

Type B Instrument Cluster

▼To Increase Cruising Speed

Follow either of these procedures.

To increase speed using cruise control switch

Press the RESUME/+ switch and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the switch at the desired speed.

Press the RESUME/+ switch and release it immediately to adjust the preset speed. Multiple operations will increase the preset speed according to the number of times it is operated.

Increasing speed with a single RESUME/+ switch operation

Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in km/h: 1 km/h (0.6 mph)
Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in mph: 1 mph (1.6 km/h)

To increase speed using accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate to the desired speed. Press the SET/− switch and release it immediately.

NOTE
Accelerate if you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on. Greater speed will not interfere with or change the set speed. Take your foot off the accelerator to return to the set speed.

▼To Decrease Cruising Speed

Press the SET/− switch and hold it. The vehicle will gradually slow.
Release the switch at the desired speed.

Press the SET/− switch and release it immediately to adjust the preset speed. Multiple operations will decrease the preset speed according to the number of times it is operated.

Decreasing speed with a single SET/− switch operation

Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in km/h: 1 km/h (0.6 mph)
Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in mph: 1 mph (1.6 km/h)

▼To Resume Cruising Speed at More Than 25 km/h (16 mph)

If some other method besides the OFF/CANCEL switch was used to cancel cruising speed (such as applying the brake pedal) and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RESUME/+ switch is pressed.
If vehicle speed is below 25 km/h (16 mph), increase the vehicle speed up to 25 km/h (16 mph) or more and press the RESUME/+ switch.

▼To Temporarily Cancel

To temporarily cancel the system, use one of these methods:

- Slightly depress the brake pedal.
- **(Manual transmission)**
  Depress the clutch pedal.
- Press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

If the RESUME/+ switch is pressed when the vehicle speed is 25 km/h (16 mph) or higher, the system reverts to the previously set speed.

NOTE

- If any of the following conditions occur, the cruise control system is temporarily cancelled.
  - The parking brake is applied.
  - **(Vehicles with adjustable speed limiter)**
    The MODE switch for the adjustable speed limiter is pressed.
  - **(Automatic transmission)**
    The selector lever is in the P or N position.
  - **(Manual transmission)**
    The shift lever is in the neutral position.
- When the cruise control system is temporarily cancelled by even one of the applicable cancel conditions, the speed cannot be re-set.
- **(Automatic transmission)**
  The cruise control cannot be cancelled while driving in manual mode (selector lever shifted from D to M position). Therefore, engine braking will not be applied even if the transmission is shifted down to a lower gear. If deceleration is required, lower the set speed or depress the brake pedal.

▼To Deactivate

When a cruising speed has been set (cruise set indicator light/cruise set indication(green) turns on)

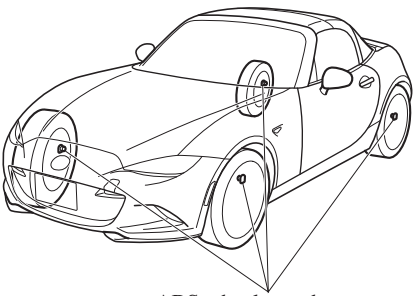
Long-press the OFF/CANCEL switch or press the OFF/CANCEL switch 2 times.

When a cruising speed has not been set (cruise main indicator light (amber)/ cruise main indication (white)turns on)

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Conventional Tyres)*

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors the air pressure of all four tyres. If the air pressure of one or more tyres is too low, the system warns the driver by indicating the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light in the instrument cluster and operating a beep sound. The system monitors the tyre pressures indirectly using the data sent from the ABS wheel speed sensors.
To allow the system to operate correctly, the system needs to be initialized with the specified tyre pressure (value on the tyre pressure label). Follow the procedure and perform the initialization.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-143.
The warning light flashes when the system has a malfunction.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.



 *Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

- Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)
  As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
  Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.
  Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.
  The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
- To avoid false readings, the system samples for a little while before indicating a problem. As a result it will not instantaneously register a rapid tyre deflation or blow out.

NOTE

Because this system detects slight changes in tyre conditions, the timing of the warning may be faster or slower in the following cases:

- The size, manufacturer, or the type of tyres is different from the specification.
- The size, manufacturer, or the type of a tyre is different from the others, or the level of tyre wear is excessively different between them.
- A run-flat tyre, studless tyre, snow tyre, or tyre chains are used.
- An emergency tyre is used (The tyre pressure monitoring system warning light may flash and then continue illuminating).
- A tyre is repaired using the emergency flat tyre repair kit.
- The tyre pressure is excessively higher than the specified pressure, or the tyre pressure is suddenly lowered for some reason such as a tyre burst during driving.
- The vehicle speed is lower than about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) (including when the vehicle is stopped), or the drive period is shorter than 5 minutes.
- The vehicle is driven on an extremely rough road or a slippery, icy road.
- Hard steering and rapid acceleration/deceleration are repeated such as during aggressive driving on a winding road.
- Load on the vehicle is applied to a tyre such as by loading heavy luggage to one side of the vehicle.
- System initialization has not been implemented with the specified tyre pressure.

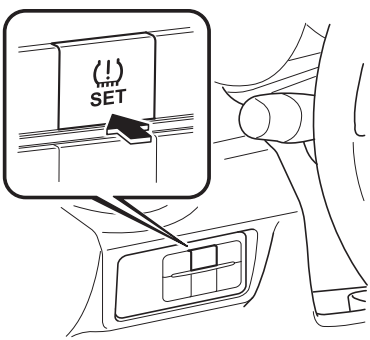
▼Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization

In the following cases, system initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally.

- A tyre pressure is adjusted.
- Tyre rotation is performed.
- A tyre or wheel is replaced.
- The battery is replaced or completely drained.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system warning light is illuminated.

Initialization method

1. Park the car in a safe place and firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Let the tyres cool, then adjust the tyre pressure of all four (4) tyres to the specified pressure indicated on the tyre pressure label located on the driver's door frame (door open).
   Refer to Tyres on page 9-8.
3. Switch the ignition ON.
4. Press and hold the tyre pressure monitoring system set switch and verify that the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light in the instrument cluster flashes twice and a beep sound is heard once.



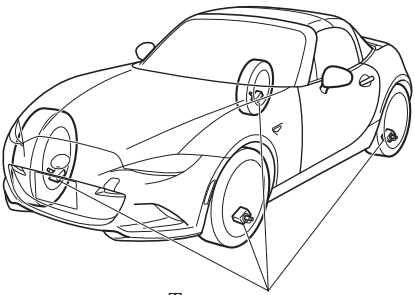
⚠ CAUTION

If the system initialization is performed without adjusting the tyre pressure, the system cannot detect the normal tyre pressure and it may not illuminate the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light even if a tyre pressure is low, or it may illuminate the light even if the pressures are normal.
Adjust the tyre pressure on all four tyres and initialize the system when the warning light is turned on. If the warning light turns on for a reason other than a flat tyre, the tyre pressure of all four tyres may have decreased naturally.
The system initialization will not be performed if the switch is pressed while the vehicle is being driven.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres)*

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors the pressure for each tyre.
If tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres, the system will inform the driver via the warning light in the instrument cluster and by the warning beep sound.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.
Refer to Tyre Inflation Pressure Warning Beep on page 7-53.

The tyre pressure sensors installed on each wheel send tyre pressure data by radio signal to the receiver unit in the vehicle.


Tyre pressure sensors

NOTE
When the ambient temperature is low due to seasonal changes, tyre temperatures are also lower. When the tyre temperature decreases, the air pressure decreases as well. The TPMS warning light may illuminate more frequently. Visually inspect the tyres daily before driving, and check tyre pressures monthly with a tyre pressure gauge. When checking tyre pressures, use of a digital tyre pressure gauge is recommended.

TPMS does not alleviate your need to check the pressure and condition of all four tyres regularly.

 *Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

- Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)
  As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
  Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.
  Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.
  The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
- To avoid false readings, the system samples for a little while before indicating a problem. As a result it will not instantaneously register a rapid tyre deflation or blow out.

▼System Error Activation

When the TPMS warning light flashes, there may be a system malfunction. Consult an Authorised Mazda Dealer.
A system error activation may occur in the following cases:

- When there is equipment or a device near the vehicle using the same radio frequency as that of the tyre pressure sensors.
- When a metallic device such as a non-genuine navigation system is equipped near the centre of the instrument panel, which may block radio signals from the tyre pressure sensor to the receiver unit.
- When using the following devices in the vehicle that may cause radio interference with the receiver unit.
  - A digital device such as a personal computer.
  - A current converter device such as a DC-AC converter.
- When excess snow or ice adheres to the vehicle, especially around the wheels.
- When the tyre pressure sensor batteries are exhausted.
- When using a wheel with no tyre pressure sensor installed.
- When using tyres with steel wire reinforcement in the side walls.
- When using tyre chains.

▼Tyres and Wheels

⚠ CAUTION

When inspecting or adjusting the tyre air pressures, do not apply excessive force to the stem part of the wheel unit. The stem part could be damaged.

Changing tyres and wheels

The following procedure allows the TPMS to recognise a tyre pressure sensor's unique ID signal code whenever tyres or wheels are changed, such as changing to and from winter tyres.

NOTE

Each tyre pressure sensor has a unique ID signal code. The signal code must be registered with the TPMS before it can work. The easiest way to do it is to have an Authorised Mazda Dealer change your tyre and complete ID signal code registration.

When having tyres changed at an Authorised Mazda Dealer

When an Authorised Mazda Dealer changes your vehicle's tyres, they will complete the tyre pressure sensor ID signal code registration.

When changing tyres yourself

If you or someone else changes tyres, you or someone else can also undertake the steps for the TPMS to complete the ID signal code registration.

1. After tyres have been changed, switch the ignition ON, then back to ACC or OFF.
2. Wait for about 15 minutes.
3. After about 15 minutes, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes and the tyre pressure sensor ID signal code will be registered automatically.

NOTE

If the vehicle is driven within about 15 minutes of changing tyres, the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light will flash because the sensor ID signal code would not have been registered. If this happens, park the vehicle for about 15 minutes, after which the sensor ID signal code will register upon driving the vehicle for 10 minutes.

Replacing tyres and wheels

⚠ CAUTION

- When replacing/repairing the tyres or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorised Mazda Dealer, or the tyre pressure sensors may be damaged.
- The wheels equipped on your Mazda are specially designed for installation of the tyre pressure sensors. Do not use non-genuine wheels, otherwise it may not be possible to install the tyre pressure sensors.

Be sure to have the tyre pressure sensors installed whenever tyres or wheels are replaced.
When having a tyre or wheel or both replaced, the following types of tyre pressure sensor installations are possible.

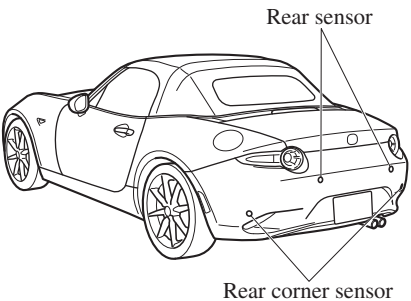
- The tyre pressure sensor is removed from the old wheel and installed to the new one.
- The same tyre pressure sensor is used with the same wheel. Only the tyre is replaced.
- A new tyre pressure sensor is installed to a new wheel.

NOTE

- The tyre pressure sensor ID signal code must be registered when a new tyre pressure sensor is purchased. For purchase of a tyre pressure sensor and registration of the tyre pressure sensor ID signal code, consult an Authorised Mazda Dealer.
- When reinstalling a previously removed tyre pressure sensor to a wheel, replace the grommet (seal between valve body/sensor and wheel) for the tyre pressure sensor.

Parking Sensor System*

The parking sensor system uses ultrasonic sensors to detect obstructions around the vehicle while parking the vehicle in a garage or during parallel parking when the shift lever (manual transmission)/selector lever (automatic transmission) is in reverse (R). The system is equipped with an assist device to notify the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction using a beep sound.



⚠ *WARNING*

Do not rely completely on the parking sensor system and be sure to confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving.
This system can assist the driver in operating the vehicle in the backward directions while parking. The detection ranges of the sensors are limited, therefore, driving the vehicle while relying only on the system may cause an accident. Always confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving.

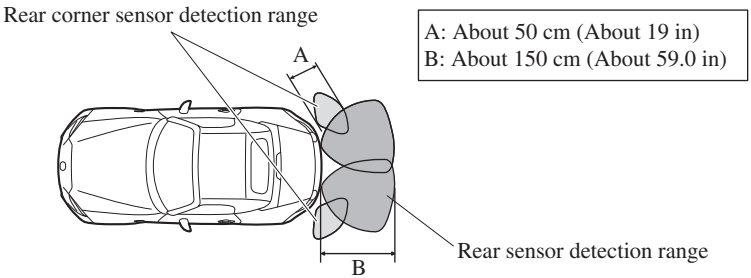
 *Some models.

NOTE

- Do not install any accessories within the detection ranges of the sensors. It may affect the system operation.
- Depending on the type of obstruction and the surrounding conditions, the detection range of a sensor may narrow, or the sensors may not be able to detect obstructions.
- The system may not operate normally under the following conditions:
  - Mud, ice, or snow is adhering to the sensor area (Returns to normal operation when removed).
  - The sensor area is frozen (Returns to normal operation when the ice is thawed).
  - The sensor is covered by a hand.
  - The sensor is excessively shocked.
  - The vehicle is excessively tilted.
  - Under extremely hot or cold weather conditions.
  - The vehicle is driven on bumps, inclines, gravel, or grass covered roads.
  - Anything which generates ultrasound is near the vehicle, such as another vehicle's horn, the engine sound of a motorcycle, the air brake sound of a large-sized vehicle, or another vehicle's sensors.
  - The vehicle is driven in heavy rain or in road conditions causing water-splash.
  - A commercially-available wing pole or an aerial for a radio transmitter is installed to the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is moving towards a tall or square curbstone.
  - An obstruction is too close to the sensor.
- Obstructions under the bumper may not be detected. Obstructions that are lower than the bumper or thin which may have been initially detected but are no longer detected as the vehicle approaches more closely.
- The following types of obstructions may not be detected:
  - Thin objects such as wire or rope
  - Things which absorb sonic waves easily such as cotton or snow
  - Angular shaped objects
  - Very tall objects, and those which are wide at the top
  - Small, short objects
- Always have the system inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if any shock is applied to the bumpers, even in a minor accident. If the sensors are deviated, they cannot detect obstructions.
- The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- The beeper which indicates a system malfunction may not be heard if the ambient temperature is extremely cold, or mud, ice, or snow adheres to the sensor area. Remove any foreign material from the sensor area.
- When installing a trailer hitch, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Sensor Detection Range

The sensors detect obstructions within the following range.



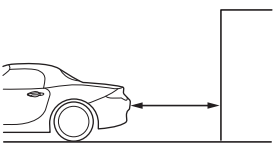
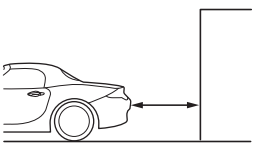
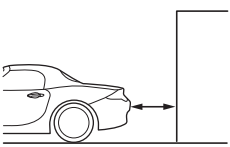
▼Park Assist Sensor System Operation

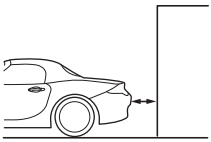
When the ignition is switched ON and the shift lever (manual transmission)/selector lever (automatic transmission) is shifted to the reverse (R), the beep sound activates and the system is enabled for use.

▼Parking Sensor Warning Beep

The beeper sounds as follows while the system is operating.

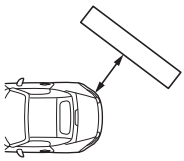
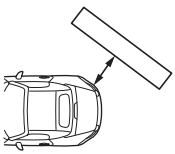
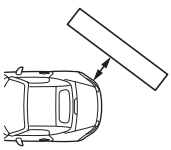
Rear Sensor

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
Farthest distance	Approx. 150 cm—60 cm (59.0—23.0 in) 	Slow intermittent sound
Far distance	Approx. 60—45 cm (23—17 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 45—35 cm (17—13 in) 	Fast intermittent sound

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
Close distance	Within approx. 35 cm (13 in) 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

Rear Corner Sensor

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
Far distance	Approx. 50—38 cm (19—14 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 38—25 cm (14.0—9.8 in) 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in) 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

NOTE

If an obstruction is detected in a zone for 6 seconds or more, the beep sound is stopped (except for the close-distance zone). If the same obstruction is detected in another zone, the corresponding beep sound is heard.

▼When Warning Beep is Activated

The system notifies the driver of an abnormality by activating the beep sound.

Beep	How to check
The beep sound is not heard.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
When the engine switch is turned ON or if the parking sensor detects a problem while driving, the intermittent sound of the buzzer is heard 1—4 times.*1	Remove any foreign material from the sensor area. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

*1 The number of times the buzzer activates changes depending on the malfunction location.

5 Interior Features

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

Air-Conditioning System 5-2
Operating Tips 5-2
Vent Operation 5-3
Manual Type 5-5
Fully Automatic Type 5-10

Audio System 5-14
Aerial 5-14
Operating Tips for Audio System 5-14
Audio Set [Type A (non-touchscreen)] 5-28
Audio Set [Type B/Type C (touchscreen)] 5-44
Audio Control Switch Operation* 5-69
AUX/USB mode 5-71

Bluetooth® 5-90
Bluetooth®* 5-90
Bluetooth® Hands-Free* 5-99
Bluetooth® Audio* 5-108
Troubleshooting 5-119

Interior Equipment 5-123
Sunvisors 5-123
Interior Lights 5-123
Accessory Socket 5-125
Cup Holder 5-126
Storage Compartments 5-131
Removable Ashtray* 5-133
Windblocker 5-133

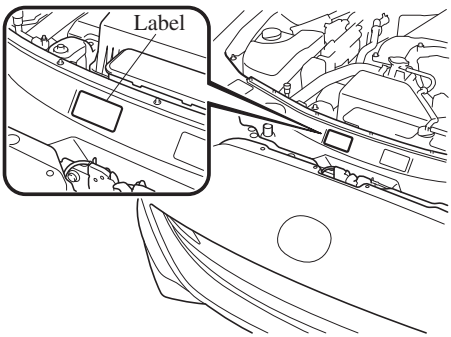
*Some models.

Operating Tips

- Operate the air-conditioning system with the engine running.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the fan control dial on for a long period of time with the ignition switched ON when the engine is not running.
- **(With i-stop)**
  The airflow amount may decrease slightly while the i-stop function is operating.
- Clear all obstructions such as leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the cowl grille to improve the system efficiency.
- Use the air-conditioning system to defog the windows and dehumidify the air.
- The recirculate mode should be used when driving through tunnels or while in a traffic jam, or when you would like to shut off outside air for quick cooling of the interior.
- Use the outside air position for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then run the air-conditioning system.

- Run the air conditioner about 10 minutes at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated.

- Have the air conditioner checked before the weather gets hot. Lack of refrigerant may make the air conditioner less efficient.
  The refrigerant specifications are indicated on a label attached to the inside of the engine compartment. Check the label before refilling the refrigerant. If the wrong type of refrigerant is used, it could result in a serious malfunction of the air conditioner.
  For details, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



Vent Operation

▼Adjusting the Vents

Directing airflow

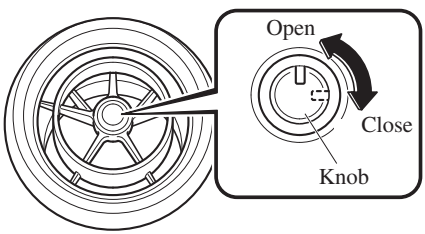
To adjust the direction of airflow, move the adjustment knob.

NOTE
When using the air conditioner under humid ambient temperature conditions, the system may blow fog from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

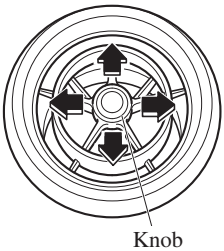
Centre vents (driver) and Side vents

Air vent open/close

NOTE
The air vents can be fully opened and closed by operating the knob.

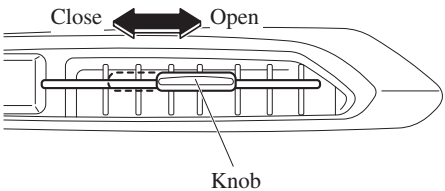


Airflow direction adjustment

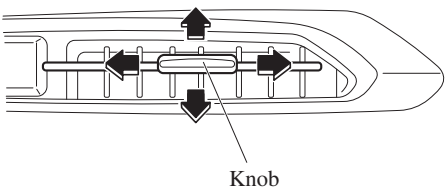


Centre vents (passenger)

Air vent open/close

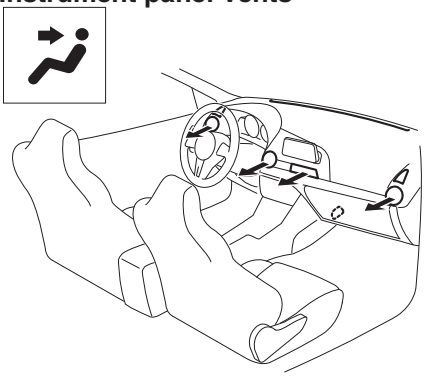


Airflow direction adjustment

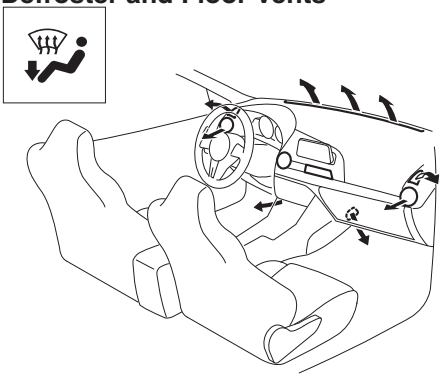


▼Selecting the Airflow Mode

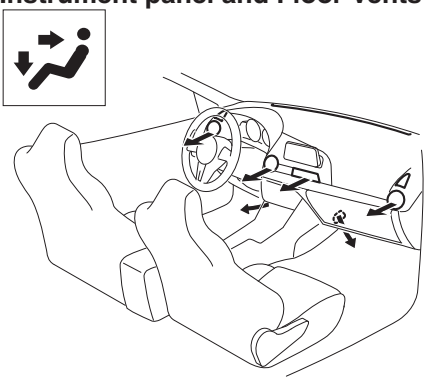
Instrument panel Vents



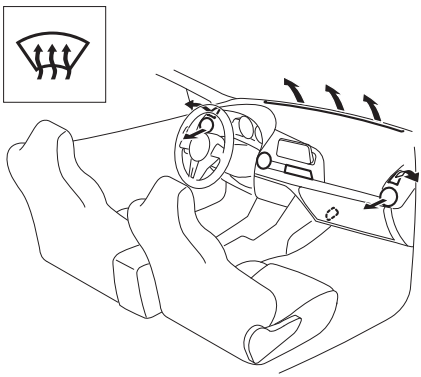
Defroster and Floor Vents



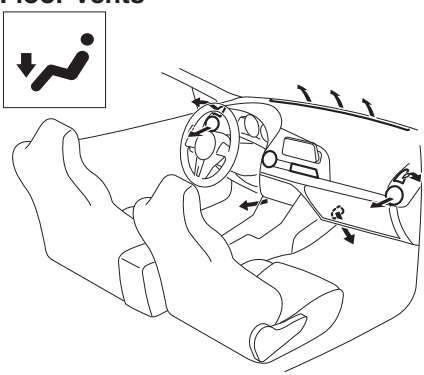
Instrument panel and Floor Vents



Defroster Vents

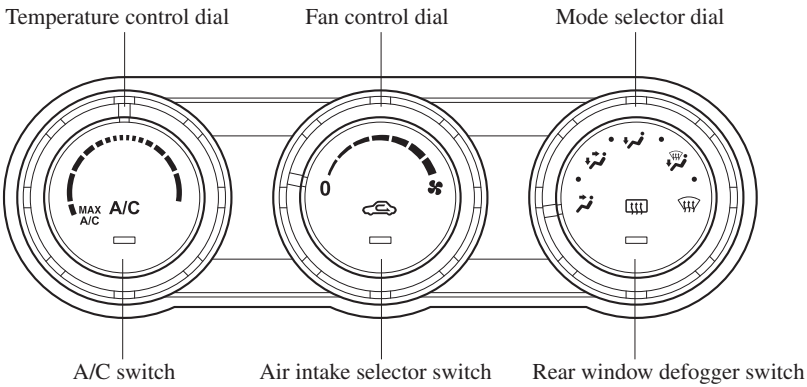


Floor Vents

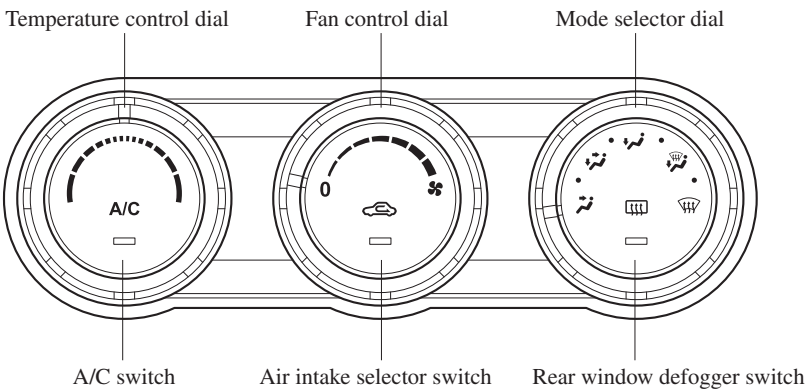


Manual Type

Type A



Type B



▼Control Switches

Temperature control dial

This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold.

NOTE

(Type A)
When the mode is set to, , or a position in between them with the fan control dial in a position other than 0 and the temperature control dial in the maximum cold position, the air intake selector switches to the recirculated air position and the A/C turns on automatically.
If A/C is not desired, press the A/C switch to turn it off.

Fan control dial

This dial allows variable fan speeds.
The fan has seven speeds.

Mode selector dial

Turn the mode selector dial to select airflow mode (page 5-4).

NOTE

- The mode selector dial can be set at the intermediate positions (●) between each mode. Set the dial to an intermediate position if you want to split the airflow between the two modes.
- For example, when the mode selector dial is at the ● position between the and positions, airflow from the floor vent is less than that of the position.

A/C switch

Press the A/C switch to turn the air conditioner on. The indicator light on the switch will illuminate when the fan control dial is in any position except OFF.

Press the switch once again to turn the air conditioner off.

NOTE

The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).

Air intake selector

This switch controls the source of air entering the vehicle.

Outside or recirculated air positions can be selected. Press the switch to select outside/recirculated air positions.

Recirculated air position (indicator light illuminated)

Outside air is shut off. Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when quick cooling is desired.

Outside air position (indicator light turned off)

Outside air is allowed to enter the cabin. Use this mode for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the position in cold or rainy weather:
Using the position in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

Rear window defogger switch

Press the rear window defogger switch to defrost the rear window.
Refer to Rear Window Defogger on page 4-77.

▼Heating

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air position (indicator light turns off).
3. Set the temperature control dial to the hot position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn on the air conditioner.

NOTE

- If the windscreen fogs up easily, set the mode selector dial to the position.
- If cooler air is desired at face level, set the mode selector dial at the position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.
- The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).

▼Cooling (With air conditioner)

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the temperature control dial to the cold position.
3. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
4. Turn on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C switch.
5. After cooling begins, adjust the fan control dial and temperature control dial as needed to maintain maximum comfort.

⚠ CAUTION

If the air conditioner is used while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic, monitor the engine coolant temperature warning light to see if it is illuminated or flashing (page 4-42).
The air conditioner may cause engine overheating. If the warning light is illuminated or flashing, turn the air-conditioning off (page 7-24).

NOTE

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control dial to the extreme cold position and set the air intake selector to the recirculated air position, then turn the fan control dial fully clockwise.
- If warmer air is desired at floor level, set the mode selector dial at the position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.
- The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).

▼Ventilation

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air position (indicator light turns off).
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.

▼Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
3. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
4. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn on the air conditioner.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not defog the windscreen using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position:
Using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windscreen to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident. Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when using the position.

NOTE

- For maximum defrosting, turn on the air conditioner, set the temperature control dial to the extreme hot position, and turn the fan control dial fully clockwise.
- If warm air is desired at the floor, set the mode selector dial to the position.
- **(Type A)**
  When the fan control dial is ON, and the mode selector dial is in the position, the outside air position is automatically selected.
- **(Type B)**
  When the fan control dial is ON, and the mode selector dial is in the position, the outside air position is automatically selected. The air intake selector cannot be changed to the recirculated air position.

▼Dehumidifying (With air conditioner)

Operate the air conditioner in cool or cold weather to help defog the windscreen and side windows.

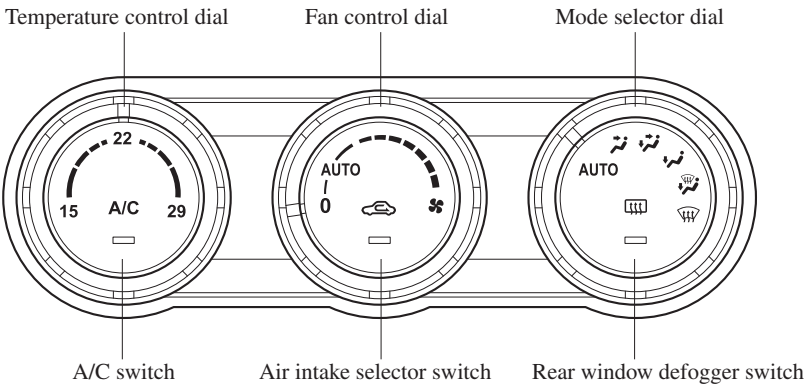
1. Set the mode selector dial to the desired position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air position (indicator light turns off).
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
5. Turn on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C switch.

NOTE

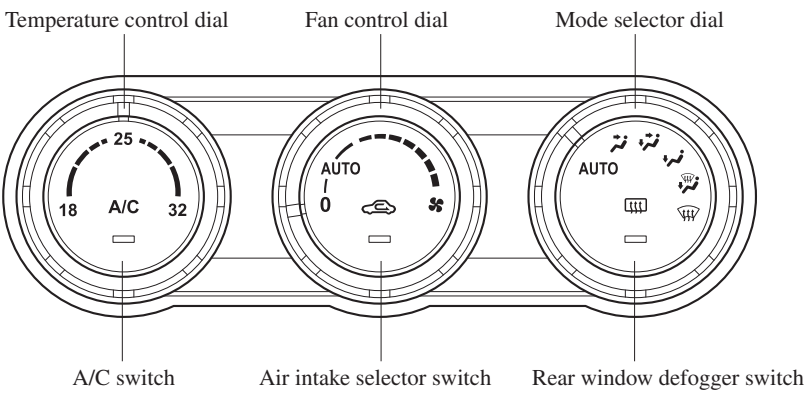
One of the functions of the air conditioner is dehumidifying the air and, to use this function, the temperature does not have to be set to cold. Therefore, set the temperature control dial to the desired position (hot or cold) and turn on the air conditioner when you want to dehumidify the cabin air.

Fully Automatic Type

Type A



Type B



▼Control Switches

Temperature control dial

This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold.

Fan control dial

The fan has seven speeds.

AUTO position

The amount of airflow will be automatically controlled in accordance with the set temperature.

Except AUTO position

The airflow amount can be adjusted to the desired level by turning the dial.

0 position

To turn off the system, set the dial to 0 position.

Mode selector dial

Turn the mode selector dial to select airflow mode (page 5-4).

AUTO position

The airflow mode automatically adjusts to the selected temperature.

Except AUTO position

The desired airflow position can be selected by turning the dial.

NOTE

- With the airflow mode set to the position and the temperature control dial set at a medium temperature, heated air is directed to the feet and air at a comparably lower temperature will flow through the central, left and right vents.
- When the fan control dial is ON, and the mode selector dial is in the position, the air conditioner is automatically turned on and the outside air position is automatically selected to defrost the windscreen.

A/C switch

The air-conditioning (cooling/dehumidifying functions) can be turned on or off by pressing the switch while the fan control dial is at a position other than 0. The indicator light turns on while the air-conditioning is operating.

NOTE

The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).

Air intake selector

Outside or recirculated air positions can be selected. Press the switch to select outside/ recirculated air positions.

Recirculated air position (indicator light illuminated)

Outside air is shut off. Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when quick cooling is desired.

Outside air position (indicator light turned off)

Outside air is allowed to enter the cabin. Use this mode for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not use the position in cold or rainy weather:
Using the position in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

Rear window defogger switch

Press the rear window defogger switch to defrost the rear window.
Refer to Rear Window Defogger on page 4-77.

▼Operation of Automatic Air-conditioning

1. Set the mode selector dial to the AUTO position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air position (indicator light turned off).

NOTE

If the recirculated air position is used for long periods in cold weather or high humidity, the windscreen may fog up more easily.

3. Set the fan control dial to the AUTO position.
4. Press the A/C switch to operate the air-conditioning (turn indicator light on).
5. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
6. To turn off the system, set the fan control dial to the 0 position.

NOTE

- Setting the temperature to maximum hot or cold will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.
- When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.

▼Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging

Set the mode selector dial to the position and turn the fan control dial to the desired speed.
In this position, the outside air position is automatically selected, and when the fan control dial is ON, the air conditioner automatically turns on. The air conditioner will directly dehumidify the air to the front windscreen and side windows (page 5-4). Airflow amount will be increased.

⚠ *WARNING*

Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when defogging (position):
Using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windscreen to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

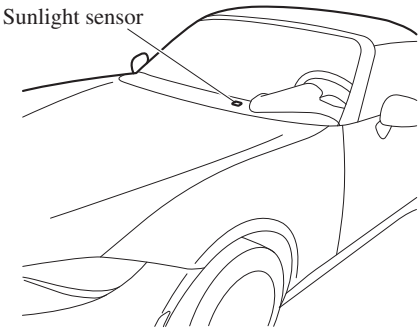
NOTE

Use the temperature control dial to increase the air flow temperature and defog the windscreen more quickly.

▼Sunlight/Temperature Sensor

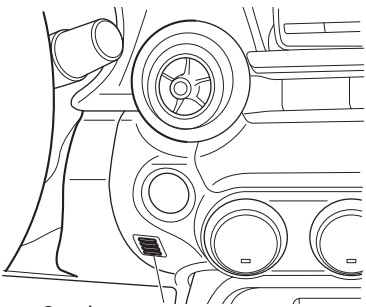
Sunlight sensor

Do not place objects on the sunlight sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



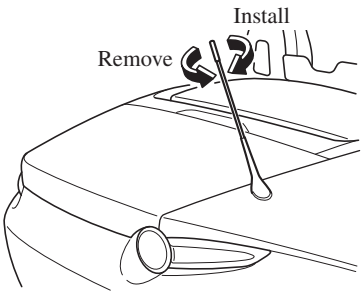
Interior temperature sensor

Do not cover the interior temperature sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



Aerial

To remove the aerial, turn it anticlockwise.
To install the aerial, turn it clockwise.
Make sure the aerial is securely installed.



⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the aerial, remove it before passing beneath a low overhead clearance.

NOTE

When leaving your vehicle unattended, we recommend that you remove the aerial and store it inside the vehicle.

Operating Tips for Audio System

⚠ *WARNING*

Always adjust the audio while the vehicle is stopped:
Do not adjust the audio control switches while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the audio while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident.
Even if the audio control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

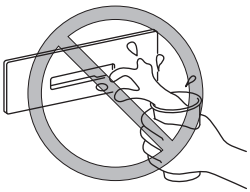
⚠ CAUTION

For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

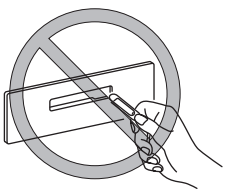
NOTE

- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio system on for a long period of time when the engine is not running.
- If a cellular phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system, however, this does not indicate that the system has been damaged.

Do not spill any liquid on the audio system.



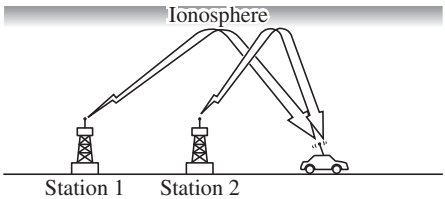
Do not insert any objects, other than CDs, into the slot.



▼Radio Reception

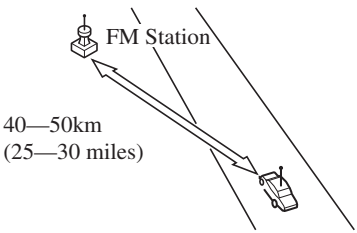
AM characteristics

AM signals bend around such things as buildings or mountains and bounce off the ionosphere.
Therefore, they can reach longer distances than FM signals.
Because of this, two stations may sometimes be picked up on the same frequency at the same time.

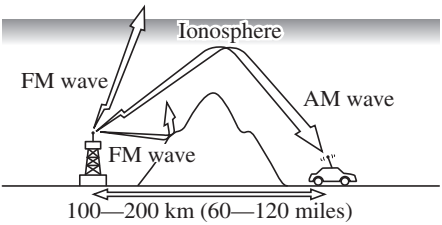


FM characteristics

An FM broadcast range is usually about 40—50 km (25—30 miles) from the source. Because of extra coding needed to break the sound into two channels, stereo FM has even less range than monaural (non-stereo) FM.



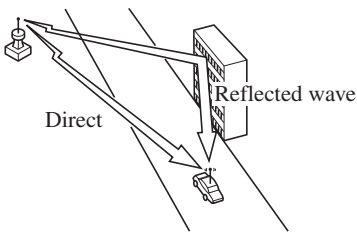
Signals from an FM transmitter are similar to beams of light because they do not bend around corners, but they do reflect. Unlike AM signals, FM signals cannot travel beyond the horizon. Therefore, FM stations cannot be received at the great distances possible with AM reception.



Atmospheric conditions can also affect FM reception. High humidity will cause poor reception. However, cloudy days may provide better reception than clear days.

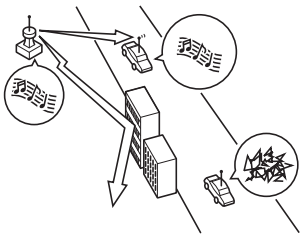
Multipath noise

Since FM signals can be reflected by obstructions, it is possible to receive both the direct signal and the reflected signal at the same time. This causes a slight delay in reception and may be heard as a broken sound or a distortion. This problem may also be encountered when in close proximity to the transmitter.



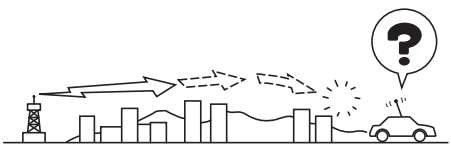
Flutter/Skip noise

Signals from an FM transmitter move in straight lines and become weak in valleys between tall buildings, mountains, and other obstacles. When a vehicle passes through such an area, the reception conditions may change suddenly, resulting in annoying noise.



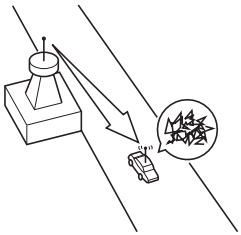
Weak signal noise

In suburban areas, broadcast signals become weak because of distance from the transmitter. Reception in such fringe areas is characterised by sound breakup.



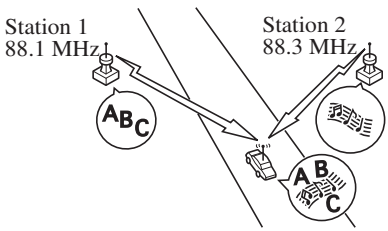
Strong signal noise

This occurs very close to a transmitter tower. The broadcast signals are extremely strong, so the result is noise and sound breakup at the radio receiver.



Station drift noise

When a vehicle reaches the area of two strong stations broadcasting at similar frequencies, the original station may be temporarily lost and the second station picked up. At this time there will be some noise from this disturbance.



▼Operating Tips for CD Player

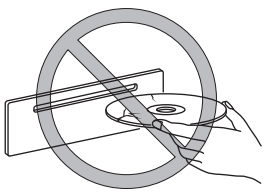
Condensation phenomenon

Immediately after turning on the heater when the vehicle is cold, the CD or optical components (prism and lens) in the CD player may become clouded with condensation. At this time, the CD will eject immediately when placed in the unit. A clouded CD can be corrected simply by wiping it with a soft cloth. Clouded optical components will clear naturally in about an hour. Wait for normal operation to return before attempting to use the unit.

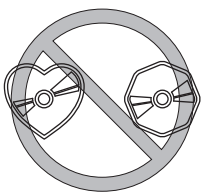
Handling the CD player

The following precautions should be observed.

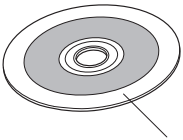
- Do not use deformed or cracked CDs. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



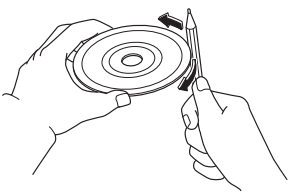
- Do not use non-conventional discs such as heart-shaped, octagonal discs, etc. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



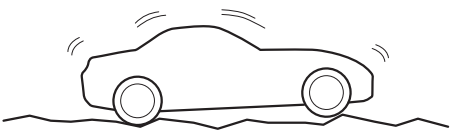
- If the memory portion of the CD is transparent or translucent, do not use the disc.



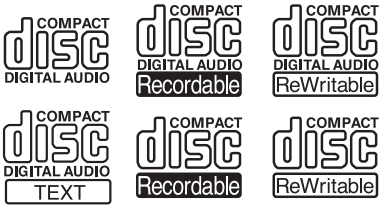
- A new CD may have rough edges on its inner and outer perimeters. If a disc with rough edges is used, proper setting will not be possible and the CD player will not play the CD. In addition, the disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction. Remove the rough edges in advance by using a ball-point pen or pencil as shown in the following figure. To remove the rough edges, rub the side of the pen or pencil against the inner and outer perimeter of the CD.



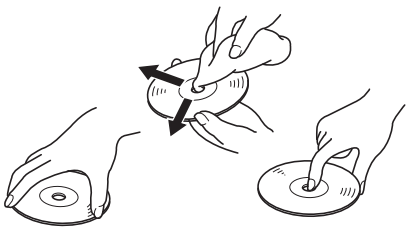
- When driving over uneven surfaces, the sound may jump.



- CDs bearing the logo shown in the illustration can be played. No other discs can be played.



- Use discs that have been legitimately produced. If illegally-copied discs such as pirated discs are used, the system may not operate properly.
- Be sure never to touch the signal surface when handling the CDs. Pick up a CD by grasping the outer edge or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.



- Do not stick paper or tape on the CD. Avoid scratching the reverse side (the side without a label). The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- Dust, finger smudges, and dirt can decrease the amount of light reflected from the signal surface, thus affecting sound quality. If the CD should become soiled, gently wipe it with a soft cloth from the centre of the CD to the edge.
- Do not use record sprays, antistatic agents, or household spray cleaners. Volatile chemicals such as benzine and thinner can also damage the surface of the CD and must not be used. Anything that can damage, warp, or fog plastic should never be used to clean CDs.

- The CD player ejects the CD if the CD is inserted upside down. Also dirty and/or defective CDs may be ejected.
- Do not insert cleaning discs in the CD player.
- Do not insert any disc with a peel-off seal affixed to it.
- This unit may not be able to play certain CD-R/CD-RWs made using a computer or music CD recorder due to disc characteristics, scratches, smudges, dirt, etc., or due to dust or condensation on the lens inside the unit.
- Storing CDs in the vehicle exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature may damage the CD-R/CD-RWs, and make them unplayable.
- CD-R/CD-RW exceeding 700 MB cannot be played.
- This unit may not be able to play certain discs made using a computer due to the application (writing software) setting used. (For details, consult the store where the application was purchased.)
- It is possible that certain text data, such as titles, recorded on a CD-R/CD-RW may not be displayed when musical data (CD-DA) is playing.
- The period from when a CD-RW is inserted to when it begins playing is longer than a normal CD or CD-R.
- Completely read the instruction manual and cautions for CD-R/CD-RWs.
- Do not use discs with cellophane tape adhering, partially peeled off labels, or adhesive material exuding from the edges of the CD label. Also, do not use discs with a commercially-available CD-R label affixed. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.

▼Operating Tips for MP3

MP3 stands for MPEG Audio Layer 3, which is standardised voice compression established by the ISO*1 working group (MPEG).
Use of MP3 allows for audio data to be compressed to approximately a tenth of the source data size.
This unit plays files with the extension (.mp3) as MP3 files.

*1 International Organisation for Standardisation

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

NOTE

Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue-generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, lead and/or any other media), broadcasting/streaming via the Internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required.
For details, please visit http://www.mp3licensing.com.

- This audio system handles MP3 files that have been recorded on CD-R/CD-RW/CD-ROMs.
- When naming an MP3 file, be sure to add an MP3 file extension (.mp3) after the file name.
- The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

▼Operating Tips for WMA

WMA is short for Windows Media*1 Audio and is the audio compression format used by Microsoft*1.
Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3.
This unit plays files with the extension (.wma) as WMA files.

*1 Windows Media and Microsoft are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation U.S. in the United States and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

- WMA files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension “.wma” to the end of the file name, and then write it to the disc/memory.

▼Operating Tips for AAC

AAC stands for Advanced Audio Coding, which is standardised voice compression established by the ISO*1 working group (MPEG). Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3.
This unit plays files with the extensions (.aac*2/.m4a/.wav*2) as the AAC files.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

- AAC files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension “.aac*2 ”, “.m4a”, or “.wav*2” to the end of the file name, and then write it to the memory.

*1 International Organisation for Standardisation
*2 Type B/Type C

▼Operating Tips for DVD Player

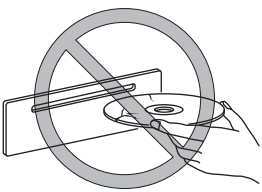
Condensation phenomenon

Immediately after turning on the heater when the vehicle is cold, the DVD or optical components (prism and lens) in the DVD player may become clouded with condensation. At this time, the DVD will eject immediately when placed in the unit. A clouded DVD can be corrected simply by wiping it with a soft cloth. Clouded optical components will clear naturally in about an hour. Wait for normal operation to return before attempting to use the unit.

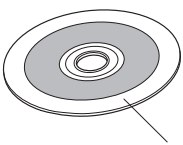
Handling the DVD player

The following precautions should be observed.

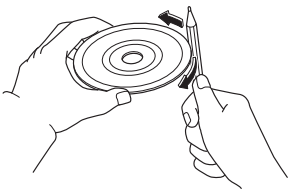
- Do not use deformed or cracked DVDs. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



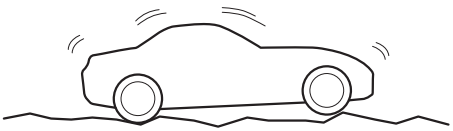
- Do not use non-conventional discs such as heart-shaped, etc. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- If the memory portion of the DVD is transparent or translucent, do not use the disc.



- A new DVD may have rough edges on its inner and outer perimeters. If a disc with rough edges is used, proper setting will not be possible and the DVD player will not play the DVD. In addition, the disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction. Remove the rough edges in advance by using a ball-point pen or pencil as shown in the following figure. To remove the rough edges, rub the side of the pen or pencil against the inner and outer perimeter of the DVD.



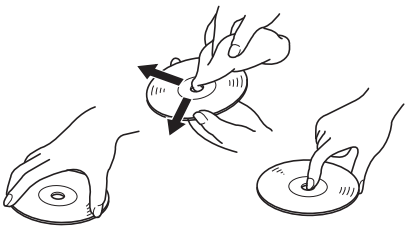
- When driving over uneven surfaces, the sound may jump.



- DVDs bearing the logo shown in the illustration or DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RW written with video data (DVD-Video/DVD-VR file) can be played.

- Use discs that have been legitimately produced. If illegally-copied discs such as pirated discs are used, the system may not operate properly.

- Be sure never to touch the signal surface when handling the DVDs. Pick up a DVD by grasping the outer edge or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.



- Do not stick paper or tape on the DVD. Avoid scratching the reverse side (the side without a label). The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- Dust, finger smudges, and dirt can decrease the amount of light reflected from the signal surface, thus affecting sound quality. If the DVD should become soiled, gently wipe it with a soft cloth from the centre of the DVD to the edge.
- Do not use record sprays, antistatic agents, or household spray cleaners. Volatile chemicals such as benzine and thinner can also damage the surface of the DVD and must not be used. Anything that can damage, warp, or fog plastic should never be used to clean DVDs.
- The DVD player ejects the DVD if the DVD is inserted upside down. Also dirty and/or defective DVDs may be ejected.
- Do not insert cleaning discs in the DVD player.
- Do not insert any disc with a peel-off seal affixed to it.
- This unit may not be able to play certain DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RWs made using a computer or DVD recorder due to disc characteristics, scratches, smudges, dirt, etc., or due to dust or condensation on the lens inside the unit.
- Storing DVDs in the vehicle exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature may damage the DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RWs, and make them unplayable.
- This unit may not be able to play certain discs made using a computer due to the application (writing software) setting used. (For details, consult the store where the application was purchased.)
- Completely read the instruction manual and cautions for DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RWs.
- Do not use discs with cellophane tape adhering, partially peeled off labels, or adhesive material exuding from the edges of the DVD label. Also, do not use discs with a commercially-available DVD-R label affixed. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- The conditions in which a DVD video can be played may be pre-determined depending on the intentions of the disc software creator. Functions may not operate as the user intends because this DVD player operates according to the design intentions of the software creator. Always refer to the instructions accompanying the disc to be played.
- Manufactured under license by Dolby Labouratories, Inc.. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Labouratories.

NOTE

- Video data (DVD-Video/DVD-VR files) written to DVD/DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RW can be played.
- This unit is compatible for playback of dual-layer DVD/DVD-R.
- Regional number for this unit is [2] or [3] (regional number depends on market).
- DVD-Video/DVD-VR files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.

Mark indicating on disc

Marks indicated on discs or packages are as follows:

Mark		Meaning
NTSC	PAL	Indicates a colour TV system (broadcast system depends on market).
2		Indicates the number of audio tracks. The number indicates the number of audio recordings.
2		Indicates the number of subtitled languages. The number indicates the number of recorded languages.
3		Number of angles. The number indicates the number of recorded angles.
16:9 LB	4 : 3	Indicates the screen modes which can be selected. “16:9” indicates a wide screen and “4:3” indicates a standard screen.
ALL	2 / 3	Indicates the region code for which a disc can be played. ALL indicates global applicability, and a number indicates applicability based on region.

Glossary

DVD-Video

DVD-Video is a video image storing standard determined by the DVD forum. “MPEG2”, a global standard in digital compression technologies, has been adopted which compresses on average about 1/40th of the image data and stores it. In addition, a variable-rate coding technology, which changes the assigned information amount according to the shape of the screen image, has been adopted.
Audio information can be stored using Dolby digital instead of PCM (Pulse Code Modulation) and more realistic sounding audio can be enjoyed.
In addition, various, supplementary functions such as multi-language availability are provided for enhanced enjoyment.

DVD-VR

DVD-VR is short for DVD Video Recording Format; video image storing standard determined by the DVD forum.

Multi-angle

One of the DVD player's functions. Because scenes can be recorded in multiple angles (camera position), users can choose a desired angle.

Multi-language

As a function of the DVD player, audio or subtitles for the same video images can be stored in multiple languages and the language can be selected freely.

Region code

DVD players and discs are assigned codes for each market region and only discs manufactured for that specific region can be played.
A disc cannot be played if the region code assigned to the player is not indicated on the disc.
In addition, even if a region code is not indicated on the disc, disc playback may be prohibited depending on the region. In this case, a disc may not be playable in this DVD player.

▼Operating Tips for OGG

OGG is the audio compression format for Xiph. Org Foundation.
Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3.
This unit plays files with the extension (.ogg) as OGG files.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

- OGG files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension “.ogg” to the end of the file name, and then write it to the disc/memory.

▼Operating Tips for USB device

This unit plays audio files as follows:

Extension	Playback with this unit
.mp3	MP3
.wma	WMA
.aac*1	AAC
.m4a	
.wav*1	WAV
.ogg*1	OGG

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.

NOTE

- Playback may not be possible depending on the type and condition of the USB flash memory even if the audio file complies with the standard.
- A copyright protected WMA/AAC file cannot be played in this unit.
- **(Type B/Type C)**
  If a file name in the USB memory is too long, it could cause operation problems such as not being able to playback the song.
  (Recommended: Within 80 characters)
- The order of the music data stored in the device may differ from the playback order.
- To prevent loss or damage of stored data, we recommend that you always back up your data.
- If a device exceeds the maximum electric current value of 1,000 mA, it may not operate or recharge when connected.
- Do not pull out the USB device while in the USB mode (only pull it out while in FM/AM radio or CD mode).
- The device will not operate if the data is password protected.

MP3/WMA/AAC/OGG*1 files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files/folder names may not display correctly.

*1 Type B/Type C

▼Operating Tips for iPod

This unit supports playback of music files recorded to an iPod.

* iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

The iPod may not be compatible depending on the model or OS version. In this case, an error message is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

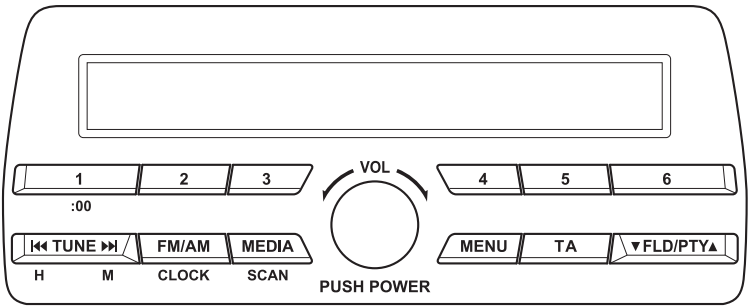
- Remove the iPod when it is not in use. Because the iPod is not designed to withstand excessive changes in temperature inside the cabin, it could be damaged or the battery may deteriorate due to the excessive temperature or humidity inside the cabin if it is left in the vehicle.
- If data in the iPod is lost while it is connected to the unit, Mazda cannot guarantee recovery of any lost data.
- If the iPod battery is deteriorated, the iPod may not recharge and playback may not be possible when it is connected to the unit.
- For details on using the iPod, refer to the iPod instruction manual.
- When connecting the iPod to a USB port, all commands are made from the audio unit. iPod control is not possible.

NOTE

The audio unit cannot display images or videos stored in an iPod.

MEMO

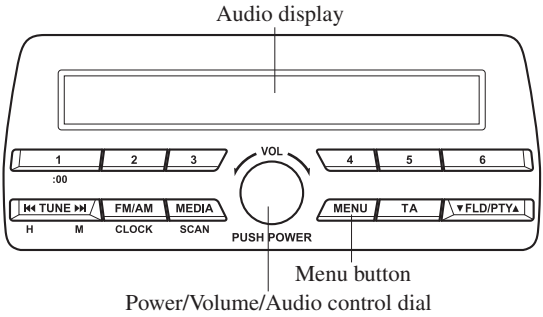
Audio Set [Type A (non-touchscreen)]



① Power/Volume/Sound Controls ..... page 5-30
② Clock ..... page 5-32
③ Operating the Radio ..... page 5-34
④ Operating the Compact Disc (CD) Player ..... page 5-38
⑤ How to use Auxiliary jack/USB port ..... page 5-41
⑥ Error Indications ..... page 5-42

MEMO

▼Power/Volume/Sound Controls



Power ON/OFF

Switch the ignition to ACC or ON. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on. Press the power/volume dial again to turn the audio system off.

Volume adjustment

To adjust the volume, turn the power/volume dial. Turn the power/volume dial clockwise to increase volume, anticlockwise to decrease it.

Audio sound adjustment

1. Press the menu button (**MENU**) to select the function. The selected function will be indicated.
2. Turn the audio control dial to adjust the selected functions as follows:

Indication	Setting value	
	Turn Anticlockwise	Turn Clockwise
AF (Setting Alternative Frequency (AF))	Off	On
REG (Setting Regional Programme (REG))	Off	On
ALC (Automatic volume adjustment)	Level decrease	Level increase
BASS (Low pitch sound)	Decrease bass	Increase bass
TREB (Treble sound)	Decrease treble	Increase treble
FADE (Front/back volume balance)	—	Reduces volume of front speakers
BAL (Left/right volume balance)	Shift the sound to the left	Shift the sound to the right
BEEP (Audio operation sound)	Off	On
12Hr < > 24Hr (12 Hr/24 Hr time adjustment)	12Hr (Flashing)	24Hr (Flashing)

NOTE

If not operated for several seconds, the display returns to the previous display. To reset bass, treble, fade, and balance, press the menu button (**MENU**) for 2 seconds. The unit will beep and "CLEAR" will be displayed.

AF (Setting Alternative Frequency (AF))

The AF function of the Radio Data System (RDS) can be set on or off.
Refer to Operating the Radio on page 5-34.

REG (Setting Regional Programme (REG))

The REG function of the Radio Data System (RDS) can be set on or off.
Refer to Operating the Radio on page 5-34.

ALC (Automatic volume adjustment)

The automatic level control (ALC) changes the audio volume automatically according to the vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the higher the volume increases. ALC has ALC OFF and ALC LEVEL 1 to 7 modes. At ALC LEVEL 7, the amount that the volume can increase is at the maximum. Select the mode according to the driving conditions.

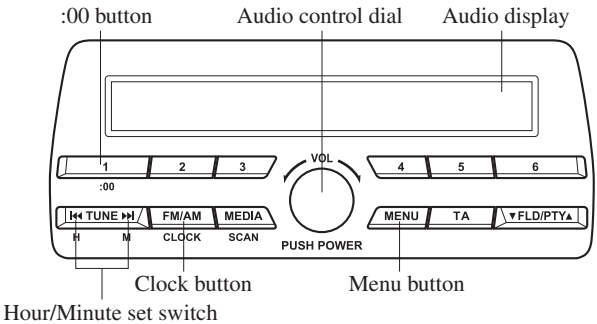
BEEP (Audio operation sound)

The setting for the operation sound when pressing and holding a button can be changed. The initial setting is ON. Set to OFF to mute the operation sound.

12Hr < > 24Hr
(12 Hr/24 Hr time adjustment)

Rotating the audio control dial switches the display between 12 and 24-hour clock time (page 5-32).

▼Clock



Setting the time

The clock can be set at any time when the ignition is switched to ACC or ON.

1. To adjust the time, press the clock button (**FM/AM**) for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard.
2. The clock's current time will flash.
   Time adjustment
   - To adjust the time, press the hour/minute set button (⏮, ⏭) while the clock's current time is flashing.
   - The hours advance while the hour set button (⏮) is pressed. The minutes advance while the minute set button (⏭) is pressed.
3. Press the clock button (**FM/AM**) again to start the clock.

Time resetting

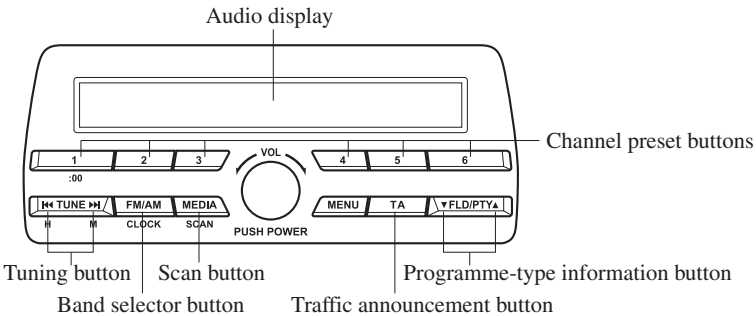
1. Press the clock button (**FM/AM**) for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard.
2. Press the :00 button (1).
3. When the button is pressed, the time will be reset as follows:
   (Example)
   12:01—12:29→12:00
   12:30—12:59→1:00

NOTE

- When the :00 button (1) is pressed, the seconds will start at “00”.
- Switching between 12 and 24-hour clock time:
  Press the menu button (**MENU**) several times until 12 and 24-hour clock time are displayed. Turn the audio control dial in either direction, select the desired clock setting while the preferred clock time is flashing.

MEMO

▼Operating the Radio



Radio ON

Press a band selector button (**FM/AM**) to turn the radio on.

Band selection

Successively pressing the band selector button (**FM/AM**) switches the bands as follows: FM1→FM2→MW/LW.

The selected mode will be indicated.

NOTE
If the FM broadcast signal becomes weak, reception automatically changes from STEREO to MONO for reduced noise.

Tuning

The radio has the following tuning methods: Manual, Seek, Scan, Preset channel, and Auto memory tuning. The easiest way to tune stations is to set them on preset channels.

Manual tuning

Select the station by pressing the tuning button (⏮, ⏭) lightly.

Seek tuning

Automatic search for radio stations starts when the tuning button (⏮, ⏭) is pressed until a beep sound is heard. The search stops when a station is found.

NOTE
If you continue to press and hold the button, the frequency will continue changing without stopping.

Scan tuning

Press and hold the scan button (**MEDIA**) to automatically sample strong stations. Scanning stops at each station for about 5 seconds. To hold a station, press and hold the scan button (**MEDIA**) again during this interval.

Preset channel tuning

The 6 preset channels can be used to store 6 MW/LW and 12 FM stations.

1. To set a channel first select MW/LW, FM1, or FM2. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press a channel preset button for about 2 seconds until a beep is heard. The preset channel number or station frequency will be displayed. The station is now held in the memory.
3. Repeat this operation for the other stations and bands you want to store. To tune one in the memory, select MW/LW, FM1, or FM2 and then press its channel preset button. The station frequency or the channel number will be displayed.

Radio Data System (RDS)

NOTE
The radio data system (RDS) does not function if it is out of the system's service coverage area.

Alternative frequency (AF)

AF functions on FM stations. Press the menu button (**MENU**) and select the AF mode to turn it on and “AF” will be displayed. If the radio reception of the current station weakens, the system switches to an alternative station automatically.

If you wish to continue a regional programme, press the menu button (**MENU**) and select the REG mode to turn it on. “REG ON” is displayed. To cancel it, press the audio control dial and select the REG mode to turn it off. “REG OFF” is displayed.

Traffic announcement (TA)

If the traffic announcement button (**TA**) is pressed, the unit switches to TA mode and “TA” is displayed.

If a TA broadcast is received while in the TA mode, the TA broadcast intercedes even while using other functions (FM, CD, USB device, AUX, or BT audio), and “Traffic Info” is displayed.
During a TA broadcast, press the traffic announcement button (**TA**) to end the broadcast and return to the previous mode.

Programme-type information (PTY)

Some FM stations transmit programme-type codes. This code enables alternative stations transmitting the same programme-type code to be found quickly.

Press the programme-type information button (▼,▲) while in FM mode. The programme-type code and “PTY” will be displayed during reception. If there is no programme-type code, “None” will be displayed.

(To choose a programme-type:)

1. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) when the programme-type code is displayed.
2. Operate any one of the following:
   - Press the pre-programmed channel preset button (1 to 6).
   - Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲).

(To scan for programme-type information:)

1. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) when the programme-type code is displayed.
2. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) until the beep sounds. The unit will scan for broadcasts, if none are found, “Nothing” will be displayed and the unit will return to the previously tuned band.

(To store programme types in the channel preset buttons:)

1. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) when the programme-type code is displayed.
2. Press the Programme-type information button (▼,▲) and select the programme type.
3. While the programme type is displayed, press a channel preset button for about 2 seconds.

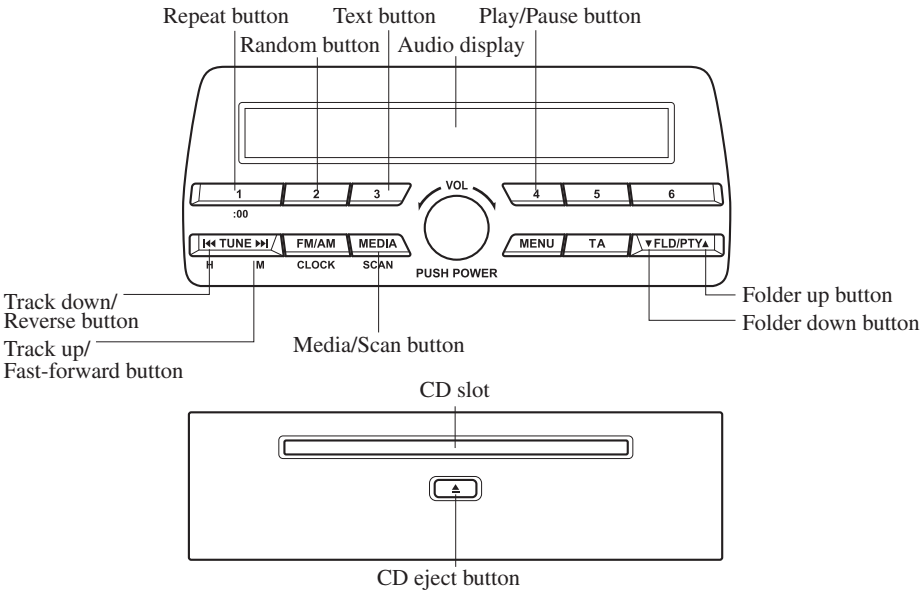
Emergency broadcast

If an emergency broadcast is received, the emergency broadcast intercedes even while using other functions (FM, CD, USB device, AUX, or BT audio), and “Alarm!” is displayed.

When the emergency broadcast ends, the system will return to the previous mode.

MEMO

▼Operating the Compact Disc (CD) Player*



Type	Playable data
Music/MP3/WMA/ AAC CD player	•Music data (CD-DA) •MP3/WMA/AAC file

NOTE

If a disc has both music data (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA/AAC files, playback of the two or three file types differs depending on how the disc was recorded.

Inserting the CD

Insert the CD into the slot, label-side up. The auto-loading mechanism will set the CD and begin play.

NOTE

There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the CD.

Ejecting the CD

Press the CD eject button (⏏) to eject the CD.

*Some models.

Playback

Press the media button (MEDIA) to switch to CD mode and start playback.

NOTE
The CD mode cannot be selected if a CD has not been inserted.

Pause

To stop playback, press the Play/Pause button (4).
Press the button again to resume playback.

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (▶▶|) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (|◀◀) to reverse through a track at high speed.

Track search

Press the track up button (▶▶|) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (|◀◀) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the track down button (|◀◀) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Folder search (during MP3/WMA/AAC CD playback)

To change to the previous folder, press the folder down button (▼), or press the folder up button (▲) to advance to the next folder.

Music scan

During music CD playback

This function scans the titles on a CD and plays 10 seconds of each song to aid you in finding a song you want to listen to.
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) again to cancel scan playback.

During MP3/WMA/AAC CD playback

This function scans the titles in a folder currently being played and plays 10 seconds of each song to aid you in finding a song you want to listen to. Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

During music CD playback

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “TRACK RPT” is displayed (♫ is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

During MP3/WMA/AAC CD playback

(Track repeat)

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “TRACK RPT” is displayed (♫ is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the repeat playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

(Folder repeat)

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the current folder repeatedly. “FOLDER RPT” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

During music CD playback

1. Press the random button (2) during playback to play the tracks on the CD randomly. “DISC RDM” is displayed (⊘ is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

During MP3/WMA/AAC CD playback

(Folder random)

1. Press the random button (2) during playback to play the tracks in the folder randomly. “FOLDER RDM” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

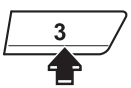
(CD random)

1. Press the random button (2) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks on the CD randomly. “DISC RDM” is displayed (⊘ is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

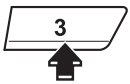
Switching the display

The information displayed on the audio display changes as follows each time the text button (3) is pressed during playback.

Music CD

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	Track number/Elapsed time
	Track number
	Track name
	Album name
	Artist name

MP3/WMA/AAC CD

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	File number/Elapsed time
	Folder number/File number
	File name
	Folder name
	Album name
	Song name
	Artist name

NOTE

- The information viewable in the display is only CD information (such as artist name, song title) which has been recorded to the CD.
- This unit cannot display some characters. Characters which cannot be displayed are indicated by an asterisk (*).

Display scroll

Only 13 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, press and hold the text button (3). The display scrolls the next 13 characters. Press and hold the text button (3) again after the last 13 characters have been displayed to return to the beginning of the title.

NOTE

The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

Message display

If “CHECK CD” is displayed, it means that there is some CD malfunction. Check the CD for damage, dirt, or smudges, and then properly reinsert it. If the message appears again, insert another known good CD. If the message continues to appear, take the unit to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for service.

▼How to use Auxiliary jack/USB port

Audio can be heard from the vehicle's speakers by connecting a commercially-available portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.
Use a commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5ϕ) stereo mini plug lead.
Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.
In addition, audio can be played from the vehicle audio device by connecting a USB device to the USB port.
Refer to AUX/USB mode on page 5-71.

▼Error Indications

If you see an error indication on the audio display, find the cause in the chart. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CHECK CD	CD is inserted upside down	Insert the CD properly. If the error indication continues to display, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
	CD is defective	Insert another CD properly. If the error indication continues to display, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

MEMO

Audio Set [Type B/Type C (touchscreen)]

NOTE
The explanation of functions described in this manual may differ from the actual operation, and the shapes of screens and buttons and the letters and characters displayed may also differ from the actual appearance. Additionally, depending on future software updates, the content may successively change without notice.

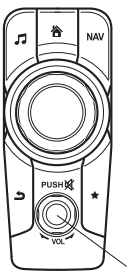
Audio Set (Type B/Type C) has three different human interfaces.

- Commander switch
- Touch panel
- Voice recognition with steering switch and microphone

Commander switch operation

NOTE
For safety reasons, some operations are disabled while the vehicle is being driven.

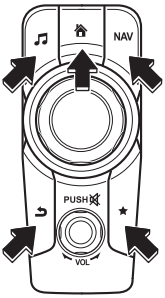
Volume dial operation



Volume dial

Press the volume dial to switch the audio MUTE on and off.
Turn the volume dial to adjust the volume. The volume increases by turning the dial clockwise, and decreases by turning it anticlockwise.

Switches around commander knob



The following operations can be done by pressing the switches around the commander knob.

: Displays the home screen.

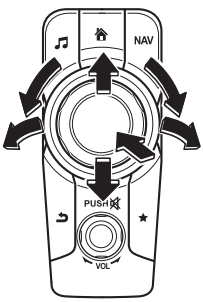
: Displays the Entertainment screen.

NAV : Displays the Navigation screen (Only navigation-equipped vehicles). For operation of the Navigation screen, refer to the navigation system manual. If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed.

★ : Displays the Favourites screen. Long-press to store particular items in Favourites. (Radio, phonebook and destination of the navigation system can be programmed.)

: Returns to previous screen.

Commander knob operation



(Selection of icons on screen)

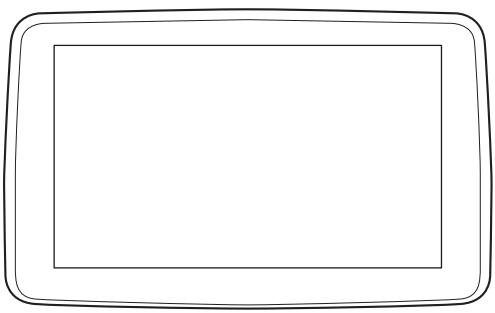
1. Tilt or turn the commander knob and move the cursor to the desired icon.
2. Press the commander knob and select the icon.

NOTE
Long-press operation of the commander knob is also possible for some functions.

Touch panel operation

⚠ CAUTION
Do not press the screen strongly or press it with a sharp-pointed object. Otherwise, the screen could be damaged.

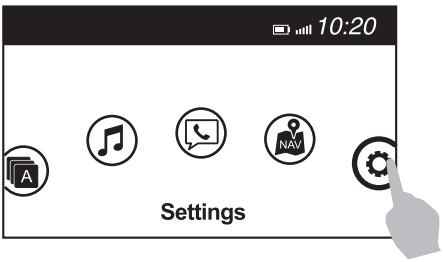
NOTE
For safety reasons, operation of the centre display is disabled while the vehicle is being driven. However, items not displayed in grey can be operated using the commander switch while the vehicle is being driven.



▼Basic Operation Method

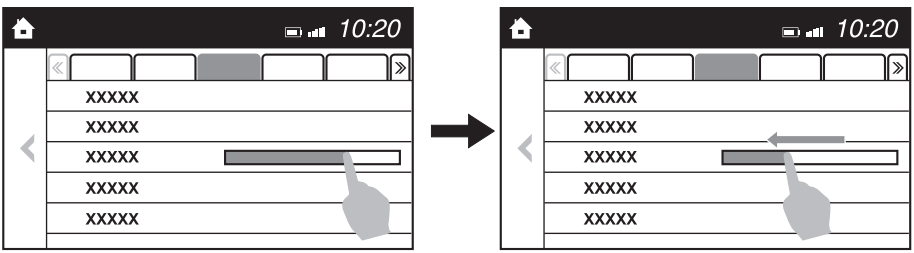
TOUCH & TAP

1. Touch or tap on the item indicated on the screen.
2. The operation is launched and the next item is displayed.



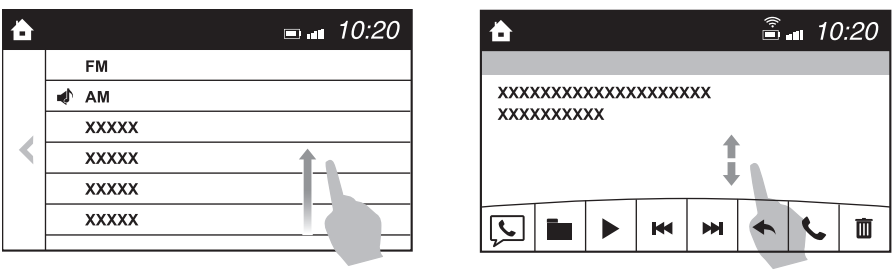
SLIDE

1. Touch the setting item displaying a slider bar.
2. Touch the slider with your finger and move to the desired level.



SWIPE

1. Touch the screen with your finger and move up or down.
2. Items which were not displayed can be displayed.



Return to previous screen

1. Touch the .

Displaying the home screen

1. Touch the .

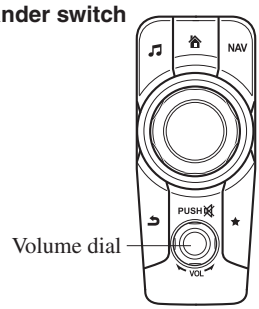
▼Home screen

Icon	Function
	Applications Information such as average fuel economy, maintenance, and warnings can be verified. Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.
	Entertainment Operates audio such as the radio and CDs. The audio source most recently used is displayed. An audio source which cannot be used at that time is skipped and the previous audio source is displayed. To change the audio source, select the icon displayed at the bottom of the screen.
	Communication Bluetooth® related functions are available.
	Navigation Navigation screen is displayed (vehicles with navigation system). If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed. The compass may not indicate the correct bearing when the vehicle is stopped or travelling at a slow speed.
	Settings Overall setting menu (Such as display, sound, Bluetooth® and Language). Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.

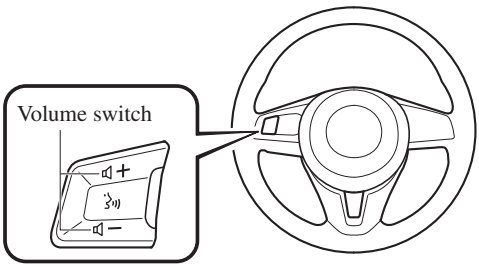
MEMO

▼Volume/Display/Sound Controls

Commander switch



Audio control switch



Volume adjustment

Turn the commander switch volume dial. The volume switch on the steering switch can also be pressed.

Display setting

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
Select the Display tab to select the item you would like to change.

Display OFF/Clock

The centre display can be turned off.
Select Turn Display Off to turn the display off.
When Turn Display Off and Show Clock is selected the centre display turns off and the clock is displayed.
The centre display can be turned back on as follows:

- Touch the centre display.
- Operate the commander switch.

Daytime/nighttime (Mode) screen setting

The daytime or nighttime screen can be selected.

Auto : Switches screen automatically according to headlight illumination condition*1
Day : Daytime screen setting
Night : Nighttime screen setting

*1 The display is constantly on daytime screen when the illumination dimmer is cancelled.

Brightness adjustment

Adjust the centre display brightness using the slider.

Contrast adjustment

Adjust the centre display contrast using the slider.

Display setting reset

All of the screen setting values can be reset to their initial settings.

1. Select Reset.
2. Select Yes.

Audio sound adjustment

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
Select the Sound tab to select the item you would like to change.

Indication	Setting value
Bass (Low pitch sound)	+ Side: Low pitch enhancement − Side: Low pitch reduction
Treble (Treble sound)	+ Side: Treble enhancement − Side: Treble reduction
Fade (Front/Rear volume balance)	Front: Front speaker volume enhancement Rear: Rear speaker volume enhancement
Balance (Left/right volume balance)	Right: Right speaker volume enhancement Left: Left speaker volume enhancement
ALC*1 (Automatic volume adjustment)	Off—Adjustment at seven levels
Bose® AudioPilot*2 (Automatic volume adjustment)	On/Off
Beep (Audio operation sound)	On/Off

*1 Standard audio
*2 Bose® Sound System

ALC (Automatic volume adjustment)
The automatic level control (ALC) is a feature that automatically adjusts audio volume and sound quality according to the vehicle speed. The volume increases in accordance with the increase in vehicle speed, and decreases as vehicle speed decreases.

Bose®AudioPilot (Automatic volume adjustment)
When driving, background noise can interfere with enjoying music.
AudioPilot®*3 noise compensation technology continuously adjusts the music to compensate for background noise and vehicle speed.
It reacts only to sustained noise sources and not intermittent ones, such as speed bumps.
An enhanced DSP algorithm allows faster and more effective compensation for unusual situations, such as driving on a very rough road or at high speeds.
In addition, a system is equipped which switches the audio to the optimum acoustics corresponding to the opening and closing of the soft top/roof.
The acoustic switching function is linked to the operation of the top lock lever/retractable fastback switch and audio playback is muted for about 1 second while switching.
*3 AudioPilot® is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.

▼Operating the Radio (Type B)

Radio ON

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When selecting the desired radio, the following icons are indicated in the lower part of the centre display.
AM/FM Radio

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the station list. Select Update Station List to display the frequencies of up to ten radio stations on the auto memory preset list. Select the desired frequency.
	Displays the Favourites list. Long-press to store radio station currently being aired.
	You can search for receivable radio stations. Scanning stops at each station for about five seconds. Select again to continue receiving the radio station.
	You can change the radio frequency manually. Rotate the commander knob, slide the screen, or touch the radio frequency. Press ◀ or ▶ to change the radio frequency one step at a time. When ◀ or ▶ is long-pressed, the radio frequency changes continually. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Automatic radio station selection. When long-pressed, the radio frequency changes continually. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

Favourites Radio

Selected stations can be registered for convenient operation. Up to 50 stations can be registered. The Favourites list is common to AM and FM radio.

Registering to Favourites

Long-press the ★ icon to register the current radio station. The registration can also be performed using the following procedure.

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select Add/Edit Radio Favourites.
3. Select Add <active station>.
4. The station is added to the bottom of the Favourites list.

NOTE
If the battery is disconnected, your Favourites list will not be deleted.

Selecting radio station from Favourites

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select the radio frequency to tune in the radio station.

Deleting from Favourites

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select Add/Edit Radio Favourites.
3. Select Delete.
4. Select the radio frequency you want to delete.
5. Select Delete.

Changing Favourites list order

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select Add/Edit Radio Favourites.
3. Select Move.
4. Select a radio frequency. The selected radio station can be moved.
5. Slide the radio station or move it using the commander switch, then select OK.

▼Operating the Radio (Type C)

Radio ON

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When selecting the desired radio, the following icons are indicated in the lower part of the centre display.
AM/FM Radio

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the list of receivable RDS radio stations (FM only).
	Displays the station list (AM only). Select Update Station List to display the frequencies of up to ten radio stations on the auto memory preset list. Select the desired frequency.
	Displays the Favourites list. Long-press to store radio station currently being aired.
	You can search for receivable radio stations. Scanning stops at each station for about five seconds. Select again to continue receiving the radio station.
	You can change the radio frequency manually. Rotate the commander knob, slide the screen, or touch the radio frequency. Press ◀ or ▶ to change the radio frequency one step at a time. When ◀ or ▶ is long-pressed, the radio frequency changes continually. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
TA	Switches the TA mode on and off.
	Automatic radio station selection. When long-pressed, the radio frequency changes continually. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Displays the FM settings screen (FM only). On/Off of Alternative frequency and Region lock can be set.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

NOTE
When the ⏮ or ⏭ icon is selected while FM is selected, each programme is selected.

Favourites Radio

Selected stations can be registered for convenient operation. Up to 50 stations can be registered. The Favourites list is common to AM, FM and DAB radio*.

Registering to Favourites

Long-press the ★ icon to register the current radio station. The registration can also be performed using the following procedure.

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select Add/Edit Radio Favourites.
3. Select Add <active station>.
4. The station is added to the bottom of the Favourites list.

NOTE
If the battery is disconnected, your Favourites list will be not deleted.

Selecting radio station from Favourites

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select the radio frequency to tune in the radio station.

Deleting from Favourites

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select Add/Edit Radio Favourites.
3. Select Delete.
4. Select the radio frequency you want to delete.
5. Select Delete.

Changing Favourites list order

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select Add/Edit Radio Favourites.
3. Select Move.
4. Select a radio frequency. The selected radio station can be moved.
5. Slide the radio station or move it using the commander switch, then select OK.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Alternative frequency (AF)

AF functions on FM stations. Turn on the AF mode. If the radio reception of the current station weakens, the system switches to an alternative station automatically.
If you wish to continue a regional programme, turn on the Region lock (REG) mode.

AF/REG on or off switching

Select the ⚙ icon while in FM mode to switch to the FM settings screen. AF/REG on or off switching can be performed as follows:
(AF mode on/off)
Select On/Off on the FM settings screen.
(REG mode on/off)
While the AF mode is on, select On/Off.

*Some models.

Traffic announcement (TA)

Select TA during FM/AM reception to switch to the TA mode.
If a TA broadcast is received while in the TA mode, the TA broadcast intercedes even while using other functions (FM, CD, USB device, AUX, BT audio, Aha™ radio, or Stitcher™ radio), and “Traffic Announcement” is displayed.
If a TA is received on the Entertainment screen, Cancel is displayed on the screen. Select Cancel to cancel the received TA and return to TA reception stand-by. If a TA is received on a screen other than the Entertainment screen, the selection screens for TA Off, Cancel, and Close are displayed on the screen. If Close is selected, the selection screen turns off when a TA is received while continuing to receive TAs.

Selection from Station List

List of receivable RDS radio stations is displayed. You can easily select the station you want to listen to from the list. If a radio station name is not available, the frequency is displayed. In addition, radio stations which have been programmed to a Genre code (Programme types like Rock, News, and so on) can also be displayed separately by category.

NOTE

It may take longer to display the station list depending on the reception conditions.

1. Select the ☰ icon to display the radio station list.
2. Select the radio frequency to tune in the radio station.

(Selecting Genre)

1. Select the Genre on the station list screen to display the genre list screen.
2. Select the genre to display the radio station list in the genre.

NOTE

Only one Genre can be selected.

▼Operating the Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) Radio (Type C)*

What is DAB radio?

DAB radio is a digital broadcasting system for radio.
DAB radio provides a high-quality radio sound source using an auto frequency switching function in boundary areas.
By displaying the radio text, information such as the song name and artist name can be displayed.

NOTE
This unit is also compatible with DAB+ radio.

*Some models.

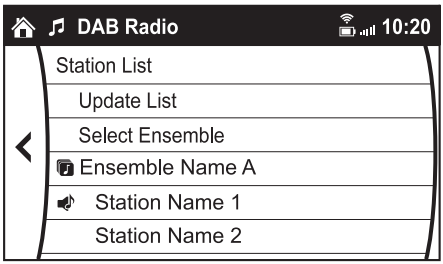
Radio ON

1. Select on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
2. Select DAB, the following icons are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the station list (ensemble and station). Select Update List to update the station list. Select Select Ensemble to select the ensemble you want to display.
	Displays the favourites list. Press and hold to store the currently tuned station to the favourites list. Refer to Operating the Radio (Type C) on page 5-54.
	Searches your desired station from the station list. Tunes to each station in the station list for 10 seconds. Select again when your desired station is tuned. **NOTE** If the station list is not available, it switches to the station list update screen. Perform the station list updating.
TA	Switches the TA mode on and off. Refer to Operating the Radio (Type C) on page 5-54.
	Returns to the previous station. Touch and hold to return to the top station in the previous ensemble.
	Goes to the next station. Touch and hold to go to the top station in the next ensemble.
	Displays the DAB radio setting screen.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

Example of use (Update station list and listen to DAB radio)

1. Select the ☰ icon and display the following screen.



2. Select Update List to update the station list.
3. Select Select Ensemble to select the ensemble you want to display.
4. Select a desired station to start radio reception.

DAB radio setting

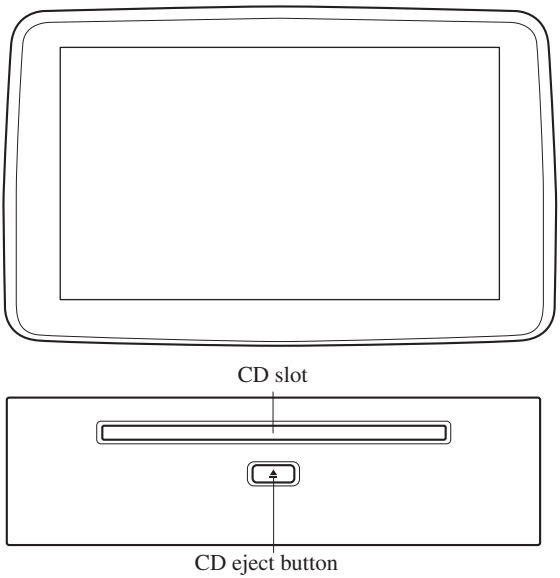
1. Select the ⚙ icon while using DAB radio.
2. Select the desired item and perform the setting.
   The items which can be set are as follows:

Item	Setting	Function
BAND Settings	Band III/L Band/Both	Frequency band can be changed.
DAB-FM Link	On/Off	On: If the reception condition is bad, an FM station which is providing the same broadcast is searched and switched to.
DAB-DAB Link	On/Off	On: If the reception condition is bad, a DAB station which is providing the same broadcast is searched and switched to.
Radio Text	On/Off	On: Radio text is displayed.

NOTE

- The radio text may not be displayed depending on the radio station.
- The radio text cannot be displayed in DAB-FM mode.
- If there is no DAB radio signal, “Signal Lost” is displayed on the screen. Change the ensemble or radio station, or perform station list updating.

▼Operating the Compact Disc (CD) Player*



Type	Playable data
Music/MP3/WMA/ AAC CD player	•Music data (CD-DA) •MP3/WMA/AAC file

NOTE

If a disc has both music data (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA/AAC files, playback of the two or three file types differs depending on how the disc was recorded.

Inserting the CD

Insert the CD into the slot, label-side up. The auto-loading mechanism will set the CD and begin play.

NOTE

There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the CD.

Ejecting the CD

Press the CD eject button (⏏) to eject the CD.

*Some models.

Playback

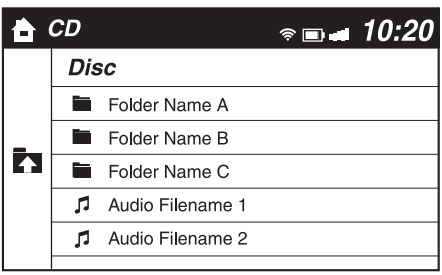
Select the icon on the home screen with a CD inserted and display the Entertainment screen. When CD is selected, the following icons are indicated in the lower part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	(Music CD) Displays the track list of the CD. Select the track you want to play. **(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)** Displays the top level folder/file list. Select the folder you want to select. The files in the selected folder are displayed. Select the file you want to play.
	(MP3/WMA/ACC CDs only) Displays the file list of the folder currently being played. Select the song you want to listen to.
	(Music CD) Replays the song currently being played repeatedly. Select it again to cancel. **(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)** Replays the song currently being played repeatedly. When selected again, the songs in the folder are played repeatedly. Select it again to cancel.
	(Music CD) Plays songs on the CD in random order. Select it again to cancel. **(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)** Plays songs in the folder in random order. When selected again, the songs on the CD are played in random order. Select it again to cancel.
	(Music CD) The beginning of each track on a CD is played to aid in searching for a desired track. When selected again, the operation is cancelled and the song currently being played continues. **(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)** The beginning of each track in a folder is played to aid in searching for a desired track. When selected again, the operation is cancelled and the song currently being played continues. If the audio is operated during scan-play, the track being scan-played is played normally. Then, the audio operation is performed.
	If selected within a few seconds of a song which has started to play, the previous song is selected. If more than a few seconds have elapsed after a song has begun to play, the song currently being played is replayed from the beginning. Long-press to fast reverse. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.

Icon	Function
	Plays a CD. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.
	Advances to the beginning of the next song. Long-press to fast forward. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

Example of use (When searching for a song from the top level of an MP3/ WMA/AAC CD)

1. Select the icon to display the folder/file list at the top level.



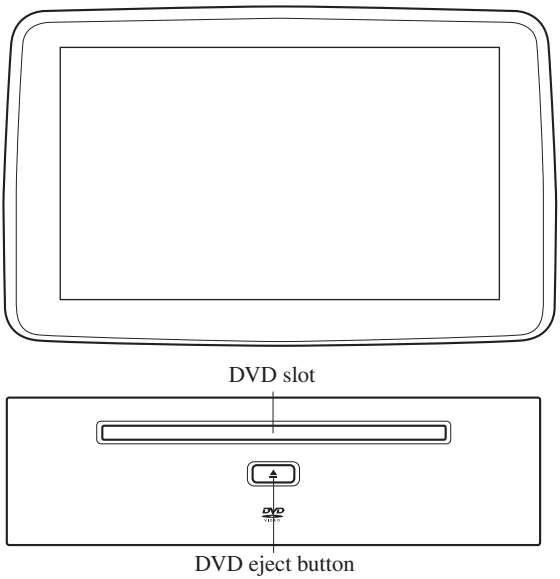
2. When the folder is selected, folders/file lists in the folder are displayed.
3. Select the desired song.

NOTE

- Select to move to a folder one level higher.
- The appearance of the repeat and shuffle icons changes depending on the type of operation in which the function is used.

MEMO

▼Operating the Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) Player (Type B)*



Type	Playable data
DVD VIDEO/DVD-VR player	DVD VIDEO/DVD-VR file

Inserting the DVD

Insert the DVD into the slot, label-side up. The DVD is inserted automatically and the top menu screen of the DVD disc and controller are displayed.

NOTE
There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the DVD.

Ejecting the DVD

Press the DVD eject button (⏏) to eject the DVD.

*Some models.

Playback

Select the icon on the home screen with a DVD inserted and display the Entertainment screen. When DVD is selected, the DVD top menu screen and the controller are displayed. When starting the playback by operating the controller, the following icons are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Returns to the DVD menu screen.
	Returns to the beginning of the previous chapter if the icon is selected within a few seconds after the playback of the current chapter has started. Returns to the beginning of the current chapter if the icon is selected a few seconds after the playback of the current chapter has started. Long-press during playback to fast reverse. Long-press during pause to play in reverse in slow motion. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Plays the DVD. Select again to pause the playback.
	Advances to the beginning of the next chapter. Long-press during playback to fast forward. Long-press during pause to play in slow motion. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Changes camera angle each time the icon is selected (usable DVDs only).
	Changes display/non-display of the sub titles (usable DVDs only).
	Changes the parental lock setting. Parental lock level and PIN code setting changes are possible.
	Pauses the playback and displays the DVD setting screen. Select Audio Settings to adjust the sound quality. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50. Select Aspect Ratio to change the aspect ratio (horizontal to vertical ratio of the screen). 16:9 Widescreen, 4:3 Letterbox, and 4:3 Pan-scan are available.
	Adjusts the screen. Displays the video setting screen at the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

- For safety reasons, images are not displayed while the vehicle is being driven.
- Slide the ||||||| of the controller to move the controller.
- If the mode is switched to DVD mode once the DVD playback has stopped, the playback restarts without displaying the DVD menu screen.

Setting DVD functions

Sound quality and aspect ratio settings can be performed.

Setting sound quality

1. Select the ⚙ icon.
2. Select Audio Settings to adjust the sound quality.
   Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

Setting aspect ratio

1. Select the ⚙ icon.
2. Select Aspect Ratio.
3. Select a desired aspect ratio.

Setting image quality

Brightness, contrast, tint, colour density can be adjusted.
When the ⫶⫶⫶ icon is selected, the following tabs are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Tab	Function
Brightness	Screen brightness can be adjusted using the slider.
Contrast	Screen contrast can be adjusted using the slider.
Tint	Colour tone of the screen can be adjusted using the slider.
Colour	Screen colour can be adjusted using the slider.
Reset	Screen settings can be reset to initial values. Select Reset.

▼How to use Auxiliary jack/USB port

Audio can be heard from the vehicle's speakers by connecting a commercially-available portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.
Use a commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5ϕ) stereo mini plug lead.
In addition, audio can be played from the vehicle audio device by connecting a USB device to the USB port.
Refer to AUX/USB mode on page 5-71.

▼Settings

NOTE
Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.

Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
Switch the tab and select the setting item you want to change.
You can customize settings in the setup display as follows:

Tab	Item	Function
Display	Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.	
Safety	Blind Spot Monitoring Volume Other	Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
Sound	Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.	
Clock	Adjust Time	Displays the currently set time is displayed. Press + to advance the hour/minute, and select − to move the hour/minute back. AM/PM can only be selected with the 12-hour clock display.
	GPS Sync	Synchronizes with GPS when turned on. When turned off, the time can be changed from “Adjust Time”.
	Time Format	Changes the display between 12 and 24-hour clock time.
	Time Zone Select	When it's not synchronized with GPS, select the region you want to specify.
	Daylight Savings Time	Turns the daylight saving time setting on/off. When ON, the time advances 1 hour. When OFF, it returns to normal time.
Vehicle	Rain Sensing Wiper Door Lock Other	Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
Devices	Bluetooth®	Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-93.
	Network Management	Wi-Fi™ is used to obtain Navi POI/Real Time Traffic function (Such as gas prices, weather, nearest restaurant)

Tab	Item		Function
System	Tool Tips		Turns button explanations ON/OFF.
	Language		Changes the language.
	Temperature		Changes the setting between Fahrenheit and Celsius.
	Distance		Changes the setting between miles and kilometres.
	Music Database Update		Used to update Gracenote®. Gracenote is used with USB Audio, and provides: 1.Supplementary music information (Such as song name, artist name) 2.Voice recognition assistance for Play Artist and Play Album Gracenote can be downloaded from the Mazda Handsfree Website. Refer to Gracenote Database (Type B/Type C) on page 5-87.
	Factory Reset		Memory and settings are initialized to the factory settings. The initialization launches by selecting the Yes button.
	About	Agreements and Disclaimers	Verify the disclaimer and agree.
		Version Information	Can verify the current audio unit OS version and Gracenote Database version.

▼Applications

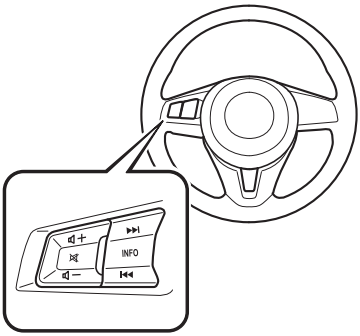
NOTE
Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Applications screen. The following information can be verified.

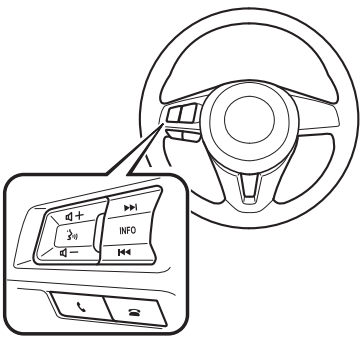
Top screen		Item	Function
Fuel Economy Monitor		Fuel Consumption Control Status Effectiveness Display Settings	Refer to Fuel Economy Monitor on page 4-93.
Vehicle Status Monitor	Maintenance	Scheduled Maintenance Tyre Rotation Oil Change	Refer to Maintenance Monitor on page 6-10.
	Warning Guidance	Warnings currently active can be verified.	Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-31.

Audio Control Switch Operation*

Without Bluetooth® Hands-Free



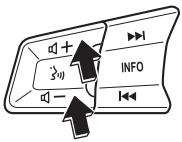
With Bluetooth® Hands-Free



*Some models.

▼Adjusting the Volume

To increase the volume, press up the volume switch (+).
To decrease the volume, press down the volume switch (−).

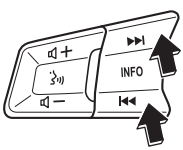


▼Seek Switch

AM/FM radio (Type B/Type C), MW/LW/FM radio (Type A)

Press the seek switch (⏮, ⏭). The radio switches to the next/previous stored station in the order that it was stored.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) to seek all usable stations at a higher or lower frequency whether programmed or not.

Radio stations which have been previously stored in the auto memory tuning (Type A)/favourite radio (Type B/Type C) can be called up by pressing the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) while any radio station stored in the auto memory tuning (Type A)/favourite radio (Type B/Type C) is being received. Radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored with each press of the switch (⏮, ⏭).



DAB radio (Type C)*

Press the Seek switch (⏮, ⏭) while listening to DAB radio to call up a station previously stored to the favourites list.
With each operation of the switch, radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏭) to go to the next station, (⏮) to return to the previous station.

USB Audio/Bluetooth® Audio (Type B/Type C)/CD

Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the seek switch (⏮) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the seek switch (⏮) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮, ⏭) to continuously switch the tracks up or down.

DVD (Type B)*

Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next chapter.
Press the seek switch (⏮) to return to the beginning of the previous chapter.

Aha™/Stitcher™ Radio (Type B/Type C)

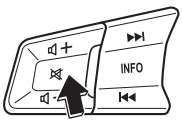
Press the seek switch (⏭) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏭) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Like”.
Press and hold the seek switch (⏮) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Dislike”.

*Some models.

▼Mute Switch*

Press the mute switch (🔇) once to mute audio, press it again to resume audio output.

NOTE
If the ignition is switched off with the audio muted, the mute will be cancelled. Therefore, when the engine is restarted, the audio is not muted. To mute the audio again, press the mute switch (🔇).

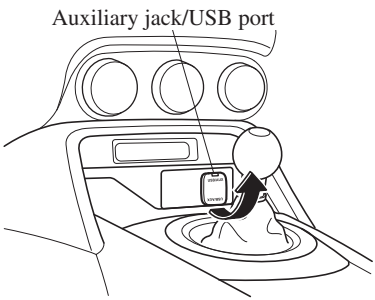


AUX/USB mode

Audio can be heard from the vehicle's speakers by connecting a commercially-available portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.
A commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5ϕ) stereo mini plug lead is required. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.
In addition, audio can be played from the vehicle audio device by connecting a USB device to the USB port.

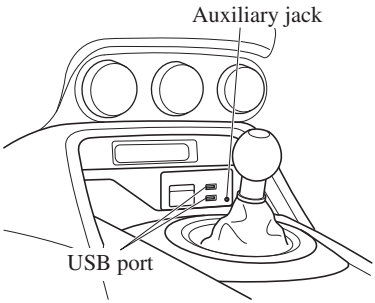
NOTE
(Type B/Type C) The SD card slot is for the navigation system. For vehicles with the navigation system, the SD card (Mazda genuine) with stored map data is inserted into the SD card slot and used.

Type A



*Some models.

Type B/Type C



① How to use AUX mode (Type A) ..... page 5-74
② How to use USB mode (Type A) ..... page 5-76
③ How to use iPod mode (Type A) ..... page 5-80
④ How to use AUX mode (Type B/Type C) ..... page 5-83
⑤ How to use USB mode (Type B/Type C) ..... page 5-84

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle:
Adjusting the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ CAUTION

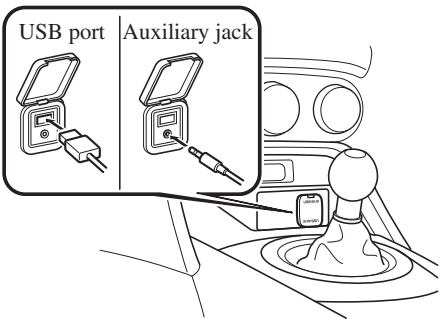
Depending on the portable audio device, noise may occur when the device is connected to the vehicle accessory socket. (If noise occurs, do not use the accessory socket.)

NOTE

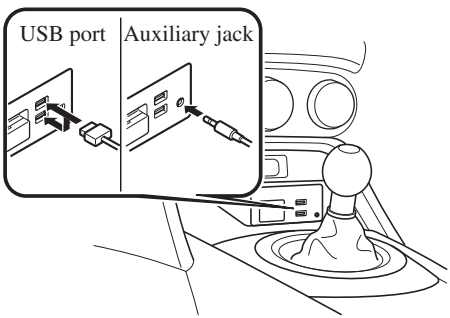
- This mode may not be usable depending on the portable audio device to be connected.
- Before using the auxiliary jack/USB port, refer to the instruction manual for the portable audio device.
- Use a commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5ϕ) stereo mini plug for connecting the portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack. Before using the auxiliary jack, read the manufacturer's instructions for connecting a portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.
- To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the auxiliary input for long periods with the engine off or idling.
- When connecting a device to the auxiliary jack or USB port, noise may occur depending on the connected device. If the device is connected to the vehicle's accessory socket, the noise can be reduced by unplugging it from the accessory socket.

▼How to connect USB port/ Auxiliary jack

Type A



Type B/Type C



Connecting a device

1. If there is a cover on the AUX jack or USB port, remove the cover.
2. Connect the connector on the device to the USB port.

Connecting with a connector lead

1. If there is a cover on the AUX jack or USB port, remove the cover.
2. Connect the device plug/connector lead to the auxiliary jack/USB port.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the parking brake or the shift lever (manual transmission)/ selector lever (automatic transmission):
Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the parking brake or the shift lever (manual transmission)/ selector lever (automatic transmission) is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place objects or apply force to the auxiliary jack/USB port with the plug connected.

NOTE

- Insert the plug into the auxiliary jack/ USB port securely.
- Insert or pull out the plug with the plug perpendicular to the auxiliary jack/USB port hole.
- Insert or remove the plug by holding its base.

▼How to use AUX mode (Type A)

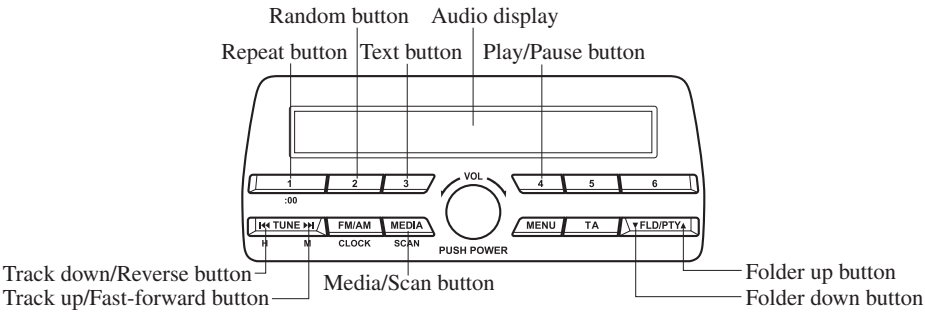
1. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the media button (**MEDIA**) of the audio unit to change to the AUX mode.

NOTE

- When the device is not connected to the auxiliary jack, the mode does not switch to the AUX mode.
- Adjust the audio volume using the portable audio device or audio unit.
- Audio adjustments other than audio volume can only be done using the portable audio device.
- If the connection plug is pulled out from the auxiliary jack while in AUX mode, noise may occur.

MEMO

▼How to use USB mode (Type A)



Type	Playable data
USB mode	MP3/WMA/AAC file

This unit does not support a USB 3.0 device. In addition, other devices may not be supported depending on the model or OS version.

Playback

1. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the media button (**MEDIA**) to switch to the USB mode and start playback.

NOTE

- Some devices such as smart phones may require a setting change to allow operation using a USB connection.
- When the USB device is not connected, the mode does not switch to USB mode.
- When there is no playable data in the USB device, “NO CONTENTS”is flashed.
- Playback of the USB device is in the order of the folder numbers. Folders which have no MP3/WMA/AAC files are skipped.
- Do not remove the USB device while in the USB mode. The data may be damaged.

Pause

To stop playback, press the play/pause button (4).
Press the button again to resume playback.

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (▶▶I) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (I◀◀) to reverse through a track at high speed.

Track search

Press the track up button (▶▶|) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (|◀◀) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the track down button (|◀◀) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Folder search

To change to the previous folder, press the folder down button (▼), or press the folder up button (▲) to advance to the next folder.

Music scan

This function scans the titles in a folder currently being played and plays ten seconds of each song to aid you in finding a song you want to listen to.
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

Track repeat

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “TRACK RPT” is displayed (♫ is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the repeat playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

Folder repeat

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the current folder repeatedly. “FOLDER RPT” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

Folder random

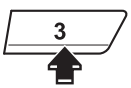
1. Press the random button (2) during playback to play the tracks in the folder randomly. “FOLDER RDM” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

All random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the USB device randomly. “ALL RDM” is displayed (⑦ is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

Switching the display

The information displayed on the audio display changes as follows each time the text button (3) is pressed during playback.

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	File number/Elapsed time
	Folder number/File number
	File name
	Folder name
	Album name
	Song name
	Artist name

NOTE

- The information (artist name, music name) is displayed only when the USB device information in the USB device has information which can be displayed on the screen.
- This unit cannot display some characters. Characters which cannot be displayed are indicated by an asterisk (*).

Display scroll

Only 13 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, press and hold the text button (3). The display scrolls the next 13 characters. Press and hold the text button (3) again after the last 13 characters have been displayed to return to the beginning of the title.

NOTE

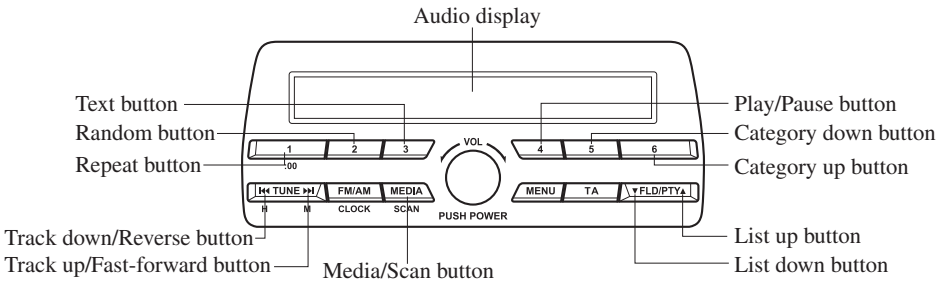
The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

Error Messages

When the message “CHECK USB” is displayed, it indicates that there is some error in the USB device. Verify that the content recorded in the USB device has MP3/WMA/AAC files and re-connect correctly. If the message reappears, have the unit checked by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

MEMO

▼How to use iPod mode (Type A)



An iPod may not be compatible depending on the model or OS version. In this case, an error message is displayed.

NOTE
The iPod functions on the iPod cannot be operated while it is connected to the unit because the unit controls the iPod functions.

Playback

1. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the media button (MEDIA) to switch to the iPod mode and start playback.

NOTE
• When an iPod is not connected, the mode does not switch to the iPod mode. • When there is no playable data in the iPod, “NO CONTENTS” is flashed. • Do not remove the iPod while in the iPod mode. Otherwise, the data could be damaged.

Pause

To stop playback, press the play/pause button (4).
Press the button again to resume playback.

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (▶▶I) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (I◀◀) to reverse through a track at high speed.

Track search

Press the track up button (▶▶I) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (I◀◀) within a few seconds (depends on iPod software version) after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.
Press the track down button (I◀◀) after a few seconds (depends on iPod software version) have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Category search

Press the category down button (5) to select the previous category and press the category up button (6) to select the next category.

NOTE
The types of categories include Playlist, Artist, Album, Song, Podcast, Genre, Composer, and Audio book.

List search

Press the list down button (▼) to select the previous list and press the list up button (▲) to select the next list.

NOTE
When the selected category is Song or Audio book, there is no list.

Music scan

This function scans the titles in a list currently being played and plays 10 seconds of each song to aid you in finding a song you want to listen to.
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press and hold the scan button (MEDIA) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

1. Press the repeat button (1) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “TRACK RPT” is displayed (♫ is displayed next to RPT at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

Song random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback to play the tracks in the list randomly. “SONG RDM” is displayed (🗀 is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

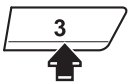
Album random

1. Press the random button (2) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the iPod randomly. “ALBUM RDM” is displayed (💿 is displayed next to RDM at the bottom of the display area).
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

NOTE
The track number being played randomly is in the order of the iPod shuffle table.

Switching the display

The information displayed on the audio display changes as follows each time the text button (3) is pressed during playback.

Button	Information displayed on audio display
	File number/Elapsed time
	File number
	Category name
	Artist name
	Album name
	Song name

NOTE

- The information (artist name, music name) is displayed only when the iPod has information which can be displayed.
- This unit cannot display some characters. Characters which cannot be displayed are indicated by an asterisk (✱).

Display scroll

13 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, press and hold the text button (3). The display scrolls the next 13 characters. Press and hold the text button (3) again after the last 13 characters have been displayed to return to the beginning of the title.

NOTE

The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

Error Messages

If the message “CHECK iPod” is displayed, it indicates that there is a malfunction in the iPod. Verify that the content recorded in the iPod has playable files and connect correctly. If the message reappears, have the unit checked by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Error Indications (Type A)

If you see an error indication on the display, find the cause in the chart. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CHECK USB	USB device malfunction	Verify that the content recorded in the USB device has MP3/WMA/AAC files and re-connect correctly. If the error indication continues to display, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
CHECK iPod	iPod malfunction	Verify that the content recorded in the iPod has playable files and re-connect correctly. If the error indication continues to display, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼How to use AUX mode (Type B/Type C)

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
2. Select AUX to switch to the AUX mode. The following icons are displayed in the lower part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

NOTE

- If a device is not connected to the auxiliary jack, the mode does not switch to the AUX mode.
- Adjust the audio volume using the portable audio device, commander switch, or audio control switch.
- Audio adjustments can also be made using the portable audio device's volume setting.
- If the connection plug is pulled out from the auxiliary jack while in AUX mode, noise may occur.

▼How to use USB mode (Type B/Type C)

Type	Playable data
USB mode	MP3/WMA/AAC/OGG file

This unit does not support a USB 3.0 device. In addition, other devices may not be supported depending on the model or OS version.
USB devices formatted to FAT32 are supported (USB devices formatted to other formats such as NTFS are not supported).

Playback

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
2. Select USB 1 or USB 2 to switch the USB mode. The following icons are displayed in the lower part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Category list is displayed.
	Current track list is displayed. Select a desired track to play it.
	Plays the current track repeatedly. Select it again to play the tracks in the current track list repeatedly. When selected again, the function is cancelled.
	Tracks in the current track list are played randomly. Select it again to cancel.
	Starts playing a track similar to the current track using Gracenote's More Like This™. Select the desired song from the category list to cancel More Like This™.
	If selected within a few seconds from the beginning of a song which has started to play, the previous song is selected. If more than a few seconds have elapsed, the song currently being played is replayed from the beginning. Long-press to fast reverse. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Track is played. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.

Icon	Function
	Advances to the beginning of the next song. Long-press to fast forward.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

NOTE

- If a file name in the USB memory is too long, it could cause operation problems such as not being able to playback the song.
  (Recommended: Within 80 characters)
- To move to the desired location on the track, move the slider indicating the playback time.
- The appearance of the repeat and shuffle icons changes depending on the type of operation in which the function is used.

Category list

Select the icon to display the following category list.
Select a desired category and item.

Category	Function
Playlist*1	Displays playlists on the device.
Artist	Displays the artist name list. All the tracks or tracks for each album of the selected artist can be played.
Album	Displays the album name list.
Song	All the tracks in the device are displayed.
Genre	Displays the genre list. All the tracks or tracks per album or artist in the selected genre can be played.
Audiobook*2	Displays the audiobook list. Chapters can be selected and played.
Podcast*2	Displays the podcast list. Episode can be selected and played.
Folder*3	Displays the folder/file list.

*1 Playlist folders of Apple devices are not supported.
*2 Apple device only
*3 USB-Sticks and USB-Android™ device only

Example of use (to play all tracks in USB device)

(Method 1)

1. Select ☰ to display the category list.
2. Select Song.
   All the tracks in the USB device are displayed.
3. Select a desired track.
   The selected track is played. All the tracks in the USB device can be played by continuing playback.

NOTE
Only the tracks in the desired category selected in Step 2 are played.

(Method 2)*1

1. Select ☰ to display the category list.
2. Select Folder.
   All the folders in the USB device are displayed.
3. Select All Songs.
   All the tracks in the USB device are displayed.
4. Select a desired track.
   The selected track is played. All the tracks in the USB device can be played by continuing playback.

*1 Can be operated using an Android™ device or USB flash memory.

NOTE
Only the tracks in the desired folder selected in Step 3 are played.

▼Gracenote Database (Type B/Type C)

When a USB device is connected to this unit and the audio is played, the album name, artist name, genre and title information are automatically displayed if there is a match in the vehicle's database compilation to the music being played. The information stored in this device uses database information in the Gracenote music recognition service.

⚠ CAUTION

For information related to the most recent Gracenote database which can be used and how to install it, go to the Mazda Hands Free Website:
http://www.mazdahandsfree.com

Introduction

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the “Powered by Gracenote” logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

gracenote®

Gracenote® End User License Agreement
This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.
You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.
The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.
The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you “AS IS.” Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.
GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.
© 2000 to present. Gracenote, Inc.

Updating the database

The Gracenote media database can be updated using USB device.

1. Connect a USB device containing the software for updating Gracenote.
2. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
3. Select the System tab and select Music Database Update.
4. Select Search. The list of the update package stored in the USB device and the version are displayed.
5. Select the package to use the update.
6. Select Install.

NOTE
Gracenote can be downloaded from the Mazda Hands-free Website.

Bluetooth®*

Bluetooth® Hands-Free outline

When a Bluetooth® device (mobile phone) is connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit via radio wave transmission, a call can be made or received by pressing the talk button, pick-up button, or hang-up button on the audio remote control switch, or by operating the centre display. For example, even if a device (mobile phone) is in your coat pocket, a call can be made without taking the device (mobile phone) out and operating it directly.

Bluetooth® audio outline

When a portable audio unit equipped with the Bluetooth® communication function is paired to the vehicle, you can listen to music stored on the paired portable audio device from the vehicle's speakers. It is not necessary to connect the portable audio device to the vehicle's external input terminal. After programming, operate the vehicle audio control panel to play/stop the audio.

NOTE

- For your safety, a device can be paired only when the vehicle is parked. If the vehicle starts to move, the pairing procedure will end. Park the vehicle in a safe place before pairing.
- The communication range of a Bluetooth® equipped device is about 10 meters (32 ft) or less.
- Basic audio operation is available using voice commands even if Bluetooth® is not connected.
- For safety reasons, operation of the centre display is disabled while the vehicle is being driven. However, items not displayed in grey can be operated using the commander switch while the vehicle is being driven.

 *Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

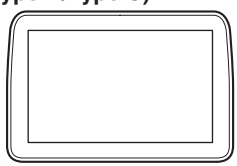
Some Bluetooth® mobile devices are not compatible with the vehicle. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer, Mazda's call centre or Web support centre for information regarding Bluetooth® mobile device compatibility:

Phone:
(Germany)
0800 4263 738 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Except Germany)
00800 4263 7383 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Worldwide)
+ 49 (0) 6838 907 287 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
Web:
http://www.mazdahandsfree.com

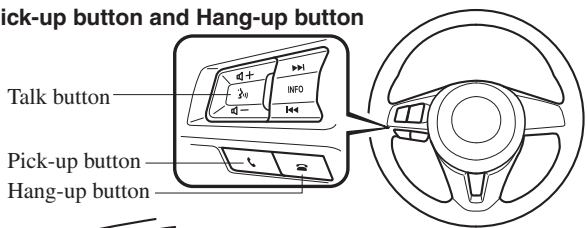
Applicable Bluetooth® specification (Recommended)
Ver. 1.1/1.2/2.0 + EDR/2.1 + EDR/3.0 (conformity)

▼Component Parts

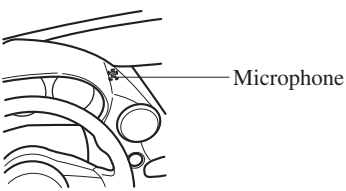
Audio unit (Type B/Type C)



Talk button, Pick-up button and Hang-up button



Microphone



Microphone (hands-free)

The microphone is used for speaking voice commands or when making a Hands-free call.

Talk button, Pick-Up button and Hang-Up button (hands-free)

The basic functions of Bluetooth® Hands-Free can be used for such things as making calls or hanging up using the talk, pick-up and hang-up buttons on the steering wheel.

Commander switch

The commander switch is used for volume adjustment and display operation. Tilt or turn the commander knob to move the cursor. Press the commander knob to select the icon.

Volume adjustment

The volume dial of the commander switch is used to adjust the volume. Turn the dial to the right to increase volume, to the left to decrease it.
The volume can also be adjusted using the volume button on the steering wheel.

NOTE
If the volume is lower compared to other audio modes, increase the volume from the device side.

Conversation volume and the volume of the voice guidance and ringtone can each be set in advance.

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Settings.
3. Adjust the Phone Volume and the VR and Ringtone using the slider.

▼Bluetooth® Preparation

Device pairing

To use Bluetooth® audio and Hands-Free, the device equipped with Bluetooth® has to be paired to the unit using the following procedure. A maximum of seven devices including Bluetooth® audio devices and hands-free mobile phones can be paired.

NOTE

- The Bluetooth® system may not operate for 1 or 2 minutes after the ignition is switched to ACC or ON. However, this does not indicate a problem. If the Bluetooth® system does not connect automatically after 1 or 2 minutes have elapsed, make sure that the Bluetooth® setting on the device is normal and attempt to reconnect the Bluetooth®-enabled device from the vehicle side.
- If Bluetooth®-enabled devices are used in the following locations or conditions, connection via Bluetooth® may not be possible.
  - The device is in a location hidden from the centre display such as behind or under a seat, or inside the glove compartment.
  - The device contacts or is covered by a metal object or body.
  - The device is set to power-saving mode.

Pairing Procedure

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the Devices tab.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select Add New Device to display the message and switch to the device operation.
6. Using your device, perform a search for the Bluetooth® device (Peripheral device).
7. Select “Mazda” from the device list searched by the device.
8. **(Device with Bluetooth® version 2.0)**
   Input the displayed 4-digit pairing code into the device.
   (Device with Bluetooth® version 2.1 or higher)
   Make sure the displayed 6-digit code on the audio is also displayed on the device, and touch the Yes.
   Connection permission and phonebook access permission for your mobile device may be required depending on the mobile device.
9. If pairing is successful, the functions of the device connected to Bluetooth® are displayed.
10. **(Devices compatible with Mazda Email / SMS function)**
    SMS (Short Message Service) messages, and E-mail for the device are downloaded automatically. A download permission operation for your device may be required depending on the device.

NOTE

When Call history and messages are downloaded automatically, each automatic download setting must be on. Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-107.

After a device is registered, the system automatically identifies the device. By activating Bluetooth® Hands-Free again, or by activating Bluetooth® Hands-Free first after switching the ignition from OFF to ACC, the device connection condition is indicated in the centre display.

IMPORTANT note about pairing and automatic reconnection:

- **If pairing is redone on the same mobile phone device, first clear "Mazda" displayed on the Bluetooth® setting screen of the mobile device.**
- When the OS of the device is updated, the pairing information may be deleted. If this happens, reprogramme the pairing information to the Bluetooth® unit.
- Before you pair your device, make sure that Bluetooth® is "ON", both on your phone and on the vehicle.

Device selection

If several devices have been paired, the Bluetooth® unit links the device last paired. If you would like to link a different paired device, it is necessary to change the link. The order of device priority after the link has been changed is maintained even when the ignition is switched off.

Connecting other devices

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the Devices tab.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select the name of the device you would like to connect.
6. Phone And Audio **selection**
   Connects both devices as hands-free and Bluetooth® audio.
   Phone Only **selection**
   Connects as a hands-free device.
   Audio Only **selection**
   Connects as Bluetooth® audio.

NOTE

The following functions can be used for the Hands-free or audio.

- Hands-free: Phone calls and E-mail/SMS
- Audio: Bluetooth® audio, Aha™, Stitcher™ radio

Disconnecting a device

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the Devices tab.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select the device name which is currently connected.
6. Select Disconnect.

Deleting a device

Selecting and deleting devices

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the Devices tab.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select the device name which you would like to delete.
6. Select Remove Paired Device.
7. Select Yes.

Deleting all devices

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the Devices tab.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Bluetooth Settings.
5. Select Remove All Paired Devices.
6. Select Yes.

Changing PIN code

PIN code (4 digits) can be changed.

1. Select the ⚙ icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the Devices tab.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Bluetooth Settings.
5. Select Change Paircode.
6. Input the new PIN code to be set.
7. Select ✔.

▼Available Language*

The language can be changed.
Refer to Settings on page 5-67.

NOTE
Depending on the language, it may only be available for the screen display, but not for the voice recognition.

▼Voice Recognition

In this section, the basic operation of the voice recognition is explained.

Activating Voice Recognition

Press the talk button.

Ending Voice Recognition

Use one of the following methods:

- Press the hang-up button.
- Say, “Cancel”.
- Operate the commander switch or the centre display (only when vehicle is stopped).

Skipping Voice Guidance (for faster operation)

Press and release the talk button.

*Some models.

Troubleshooting for Voice Recognition

If you do not understand an operation method while in the voice recognition mode, say “Tutorial” or “Help”.

Commands useable anytime during voice recognition

“Go Back” and “Cancel” are commands which can be used at anytime during voice recognition.

Returning to previous operation

To return to the previous operation, say, “Go Back” while in voice recognition mode.

Cancel

To put the Bluetooth® Hands-Free system in standby mode, say, “Cancel” while in voice recognition mode.

To prevent a deterioration in the voice recognition rate and voice quality, the following points should be observed:

- **The voice recognition cannot be performed while voice guidance or the beep sound is operating. Wait until the voice guidance or the beep sound is finished before saying your commands.**
- Phone related commands are available only when your phone is connected via Bluetooth®. Make sure your phone is connected via Bluetooth® before you operate phone related voice commands.
- Music play commands, such as Play Artist and Play Album can be used only in USB audio mode.
- Do not speak too slowly or loudly (no loud voice).
- Speak clearly, without pausing between words or numbers.
- Dialects or different wording other than hands-free prompts cannot be recognised by voice recognition. Speak in the wording specified by the voice commands.
- It is not necessary to face the microphone or approach it. Speak the voice commands while maintaining a safe driving position.
- Close the windows and/or the convertible top to reduce loud noises from outside the vehicle, or turn down the airflow of the air-conditioning system while Bluetooth® Hands-Free is being used.
- Make sure the vents are not directing air up towards the microphone.

NOTE

If the voice recognition performance is not satisfactory.
Refer to Troubleshooting on page 5-119.

▼Audio Operation Using Voice Recognition

Voice command

When the talk button is pressed and the following command is spoken, the audio or navigation can be operated. The commands in the () can be omitted. The specified name and number are put into the {}.

Standard command

Voice command	Function
cancel	Ends the voice recognition mode.
(go) back	Returns to the previous operation.
help	Usable commands can be verified.
tutorial	Basic voice commands and methods of use can be verified.
(go to) home (screen)/main menu	Moves to the home screen.
(go to) communication	Moves to the communication screen.
(go to) navigation	Moves to the navigation screen.
(go to) entertainment (menu)	Moves to the entertainment screen.
(go to) settings	Moves to the setting screen.
(go to) favourites	Moves to the favourites screen.

Communication (phone) related command

Voice command	Function
Call {name in phonebook} (mobile/ home/work/other) Example: “Call John Mobile”	Call to the contact in the downloaded phonebook. Refer to Making a Call on page 5-99.
Redial	Call to the last contact you called. Refer to Making a Call on page 5-99.
Callback	Call to the last contact who called you. Refer to Making a Call on page 5-99.

Entertainment (audio) related command

Voice command	Function	Corresponding audio source
(Go to/Play) AM (Radio)	Switches the audio source to AM radio.	All
(Go to/Play) FM (Radio)	Switches the audio source to FM radio.	All
(Go to/Play) DAB (Radio)	Switches the audio source to DAB radio.	All
(Go to/Play) Bluetooth (Audio)	Switches the audio source to BT audio.	All
(Go to/Play) Aha (Radio)	Switches the audio source to Aha™ Radio.	All
(Go to/Play) Stitcher	Switches the audio source to Stitcher™ Radio.	All
(Go to/Play) USB 1	Switches the audio source to USB 1.	All
(Go to/Play) USB 2	Switches the audio source to USB 2.	All
Play Playlist {Playlist name}	Plays the selected playlist.	USB
Play Artist {Artist name}	Plays the selected artist.	USB
Play Album {Album name}	Plays the selected album.	USB
Play Genre {Genre name}	Plays the selected genre.	USB
Play Folder {Folder name}	Plays the selected folder.	USB

Navigation related command*

For the navigation screen voice commands, refer to the separate navigation system manual.

NOTE

- Some commands cannot be used depending on the grade and specification.
- Some commands cannot be used depending on the device connection conditions and the use conditions.
- The commands are examples of the available commands.

*Some models.

Bluetooth® Hands-Free*

▼Making a Call

Phonebook Usage

Telephone calls can be made by saying the contact name in the downloaded phonebook or the name of a person whose phone number has been registered in the Bluetooth® Hands-Free. Refer to Import contact (Download Phonebook).

1. Press the talk button.
2. Wait for the beep sound.
3. **Say:** “Call XXXXX... (Ex. “John”) Mobile”.
4. Follow the voice guidance to place the call.

Screen operation

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Contacts to display the contact list.
3. Select the contact you would like to call to display the details for the contact.
4. Select the desired phone number to make the call.

Import contact (Download Phonebook)

Phonebook data from your device (Mobile phone) can be sent and registered to your Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook using Bluetooth®.

(Automatic downloading)

The “Auto Download Contacts” setting must be on. When hands-free is connected to the device, the phonebook is downloaded automatically.
Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-107.

(Manually downloading)

If the “Auto Download Contacts” setting is off, download the phonebook using the following procedure.

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Contacts to display the contact list.
3. Select Edit Contacts.
4. Select Import All Contacts or Import Selected Contact to switch to the device operation.
5. If Import All Contacts is selected, select Download.
6. Download will be started from the mobile phone.

NOTE

- If “Import All Contacts” is performed after saving the phonebook to the Bluetooth® unit, the phonebook will be overwritten.
- A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be registered to the phonebook.
- Phonebook, incoming/outgoing call record, and favourite memories are exclusive to each mobile phone to protect privacy.

*Some models.

Favourites Contacts

A maximum of 50 contacts can be registered. It will take less time to make a call after registering the telephone number. In addition, you do not have to look for the person you want to call in the phonebook.

Registering your favourites

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Favourites to display the favourites list.
3. Select Add/Edit Communication Favourites.
4. Select Add New Contact or Add New Contact Details.
5. Select from the displayed list.

NOTE

When “Add New Contact” is selected, information such as the selected person’s name is also registered. In addition, when “Add New Contact Details” is selected, only the telephone number of the selected person is registered.

Calling a favourite

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Favourites to display the favourites list.
3. **(If only one phone number is registered to contact)**
   Select the contact information you would like to call. Go to Step 5.
   (If multiple phone numbers are registered to contact)
   Select the contact you would like to call to display the screen indicating the details for the contact. Go to Step 4.
4. Select the phone number you would like to call.
5. Select Yes.

Deleting a favourite

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Favourites to display the favourites list.
3. Select Add/Edit Communication Favourites.
4. Select Delete.
5. Select the contact information which you would like to delete.
6. Select Delete.

Changing the display order of your favourites list

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Favourites to display the favourites list.
3. Select Add/Edit Communication Favourites.
4. Select Move.
5. The contact can be moved after it is selected.
6. Slide the contact or move it using the commander switch, then select OK.

Changing contact name of your favourites

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Favourites to display the favourites list.
3. Select Add/Edit Communication Favourites.
4. Select Rename.
5. Select the contact to display the keyboard screen.
6. If a new name is input and OK is selected, the contact name is stored.

NOTE
If the contact is long-pressed when the favourites list is displayed, the contact information can be edited (deleted, moved).

Telephone Number Input

NOTE
Practice this while parked until you are confident you can do it while driving in a non-taxing road situation. If you are not completely comfortable, make all calls from a safe parking position, and only start driving when you can devote your full attention to driving.

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. When Dial Phone is pressed, the dial pad is displayed.
3. Input the telephone number using the dial pad.
4. Select to make the call.

Numeral or symbol entry

Use the dial pad.
Long-press the 0 to input +.
Select to delete the currently input value.
Long-press to delete all input values.

Redial Function

Makes a call to the last person called (latest person on outgoing call record) from the mobile phone/vehicle.

1. Press the talk button.
2. Wait for the beep sound.
3. **Say:** “Redial”

Call back Function

Makes a call to the last person who called your (latest person on incoming call record) mobile phone/vehicle.

1. Press the talk button.
2. Wait for the beep sound.
3. **Say:** “Call back”

▼Receiving an Incoming Call

When an incoming call is received, the incoming call notification screen is displayed. The “Incoming Call Notifications” setting must be on.
Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-107.
To accept the call, press the pick-up button on the audio control switch or select Answer on the screen.
To reject the call, press the hang-up button on the audio control switch or select Ignore on the screen.
The following icons are displayed on the screen during a call. Icons which can be used differ depending on use conditions.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Communication menu.
	Ends the call.
	Transferring a call from hands-free to a mobile phone Communication between the Bluetooth® unit and a device (mobile phone) is cancelled, and an incoming call will be received by the device (mobile phone) like a standard call.
	Transferring a call from a device (mobile phone) to hands-free Communication between devices (mobile phone) can be switched to Bluetooth® Hands-Free.
	Mute The microphone can be muted during a call. When selected again, the mute is cancelled.
	To make a 3-way call, select the contacts from the following: Call History: Call History is displayed. Contacts: The phonebook is displayed. Dial: The dial pad is displayed. Input the phone number. The device may be unusable depending on the contractual content.
	The call on hold is made to make a 3-way call. The device may be unusable depending on the contractual content.
	Switches the call on hold.
	DTMF (Dual Tone Multi-Frequency Signal) Transmission This function is used when transmitting DTMF via the dial pad. The receiver of a DTMF transmission is generally a home telephone answering machine or a company's automated guidance call centre. Input the number using a dial pad.

NOTE

- If the ignition is switched off during a hands-free call, the line is transferred to the device (Mobile phone) automatically.
- If the DTMF code has two or more digits or symbols, each one must be transmitted individually.

▼Call Interrupt

A call can be interrupted to receive an incoming call from a third party.
When [Hold + Answer] is selected or the pick-up button on the steering wheel is pressed, the current call is held and the system switches to the new incoming call.
When [End + Answer] is selected, the current call is ended and the system switches to the new incoming call (GSM network only).
When [Ignore] is selected or the hang-up button on the steering wheel is pressed, an incoming call is refused.

NOTE

- The function may not be available depending on the contractual content of the mobile device.
- The function may not be operable depending on the type of the telephone network and the mobile device.

▼Receiving and Replying to Messages (available only with E-mail/SMS compatible phones)

SMS (Short Message Service) messages, and E-mail received by connected devices can be downloaded, displayed, and played (read by the system).
Additionally, replies can also be made to calls and messages in the received messages.

Downloading messages

Up to 20 new messages can be downloaded and displayed from a connected device.

NOTE

For E-mail, 20 messages for each account can be downloaded.

(Automatic downloading)

The “Auto Download Email” (E-mail) or “Auto Download SMS” (SMS) setting must be on. A message is downloaded automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-107.

(Manually downloading)

When the “Auto Download Email” (E-mail) or “Auto Download SMS” (SMS) setting is off, the message is downloaded using the following procedure.

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select [Email] or [SMS] to display the Inbox.
3. Select [Update Inbox].
4. Download will be started from the mobile phone.

NOTE

- Attached data is not downloaded.
- Messages up to 1 kilobyte (E-mail)/140-bytes (SMS) can be downloaded.
- A message list is created for each device.
- If the connected device does not correspond to MAP 1.0, the AT command is used to download. The downloaded message indicates that it is already read.
- Downloading using the AT command may not function depending on the connected device.

Receiving messages

(Method 1)

When a device receives a message, a message received notification is displayed.
The “Email Notifications” (E-mail) or “SMS Notifications” (SMS) setting must be on.
Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-107.
Select Read and display the message.

(Method 2)

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Notifications and display the new message list for E-mail and SMS.
3. Select the message you would like to display.

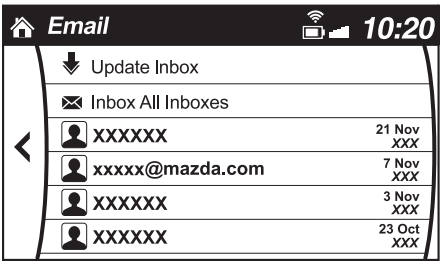
The following icons are displayed in the lower part of the details on the message. Icons which can be used differ depending on use conditions.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Communication menu.
	Displays the inbox.
	Plays back a message. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.
	Displays the previous message.
	Displays the next message.
	Only replies to the sender of the currently displayed message. Select the sentence on the displayed reply screen and select the sentence for sending from the preset message. Select Send.
	(Only E-mail) Replies to all members including CC. Select the sentence on the displayed reply screen and select the sentence for sending from the preset message. Select Send.
	Makes a call to a person who sent a message. For E-mail, this function may not work depending on the device.
	Deletes a message. The messages stored in a device is also deleted.

NOTE
Up to three preset messages can be selected.

Example of use (verify unread E-mail)

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Email to display the inbox.



3. Select the unread message displayed in bold.
4. The details of the message are displayed and replying to the message, making a call, or playback can be performed.

Changing account for displaying (E-mail only)

1. Select Inbox.
2. Select the account which you would like to display. Only the messages for the selected account are displayed in the inbox.

Editing preset messages

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Preset Messages.
4. Select the preset message which you would like to edit. The keyboard screen is displayed.
5. When the message is input and ✔ is selected, the message is stored as a preset message.

NOTE

- Select the icon to change the language.
- Select the icon to switch between capitalized and lower-case characters.
- Select the icon to return to the previous screen without storing the edit.

▼Communication Settings

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
Select Settings to change the setting.

Item	Setting	Function
Bluetooth®	—	Go to Bluetooth® setting menu. Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-93.
Incoming Call Notifications	On/Off	Notifies when an incoming call is received.
Auto Download SMS	On/Off	Downloads SMS automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
SMS Notifications	On/Off	Notifies when a new SMS is received.
Auto Download Email*1	On/Off	Downloads E-mail automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Email Notifications	On/Off	Notifies when a new Email is received.
Auto Download Call History	On/Off	Downloads Call History automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Auto Download Contacts*1	On/Off	Downloads the phonebook automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Ringtone	Fixed/In-band/ Off	Changes the ringtone setting.
Phone Volume	Adjusts using the slider.	Adjusts the conversation volume.
VR and Ringtone	Adjusts using the slider.	Adjusts the voice guidance and ringtone volume.
Contacts Sort Order	First Name, Last Name	Displays the contact information in alphabetical order of the first name.
	Last Name, First Name	Displays the contact information in alphabetical order of the last name.
Preset Messages	—	Edits the preset message. Refer to Receiving and Replying to Messages (available only with E-mail/SMS compatible phones) on page 5-103.
Reset	—	Initializes all Communication Settings.

*1 Depending on the device, it may be necessary to acquire download permission on the device side.

Bluetooth® Audio*

Applicable Bluetooth® specification (Recommended)
Ver. 1.1/1.2/2.0 + EDR/2.1 + EDR/3.0 (conformity)
Response profile

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0/1.2
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0/1.3/1.4

A2DP is a profile which transmits only audio to the Bluetooth® unit. If your Bluetooth® audio device corresponds only to A2DP, but not AVRCP, you cannot operate it using the control panel of the vehicle's audio system. In this case, only the operations on the mobile device are available the same as when a portable audio device for a non-compliant Bluetooth® device is connected to the AUX terminal.

Function	A2DP	AVRCP		
		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.3	Ver. 1.4
Playback	X	X	X	X
Pause	X	X	X	X
File (Track) up/down	—	X	X	X
Reverse	—	—	X	X
Fast-forward	—	—	X	X
Text display	—	—	X	X
Repeat	—	—	Depends on device	Depends on device
Shuffle	—	—	Depends on device	Depends on device
Scan	—	—	Depends on device	Depends on device
Folder up/down	—	—	—	Depends on device

X: Available
—: Not available

NOTE

- The battery consumption of Bluetooth® audio devices increases while Bluetooth® is connected.
- If a general mobile phone device is USB connected during music playback over the Bluetooth® connection, the Bluetooth® connection is disconnected. For this reason, you cannot have music playback over a Bluetooth® connection and music playback using a USB connection at the same time.
- The system may not operate normally depending on the Bluetooth® audio device.

 *Some models.

▼How to Use the Bluetooth® Audio System

Switching to Bluetooth® audio mode

To listen to music or voice audio recorded to a Bluetooth® audio device, switch to the Bluetooth® audio mode to operate the audio device using the audio system control panel.
Any Bluetooth® audio device must be paired to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit before it can be used.
Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-93.

1. Turn on the Bluetooth® audio device's power.
2. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
3. Select the ♫ icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
4. When Bluetooth is selected, switches to the Bluetooth® audio mode to begin playback.

NOTE

- If Bluetooth® audio is used after using Aha™ or Stitcher™ radio, the application on the mobile device has to be closed first.
- If the Bluetooth® audio device does not begin playback, select the ▶/II icon.
- If the mode is switched from Bluetooth® audio mode to another mode (radio mode), audio playback from the Bluetooth® audio device stops.

Playback

To listen to a Bluetooth® audio device over the vehicle's speaker system, switch the mode to Bluetooth® audio mode. (Refer to “Switching to Bluetooth® audio mode”)
After switching to the Bluetooth® audio mode, the following icons are displayed in the lower part of the display. Icons which can be used differ depending on the version of the Bluetooth® audio device which you are currently using.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	(AVRCP Ver. 1.4 only) Displays the top level folder/file list. Select the folder which you want to select. The files in the selected folder are displayed. Select the file you want to play.
	(AVRCP Ver. 1.3 or higher) Replays the song currently being played repeatedly. When selected again, the songs in the folder are played repeatedly. Select it again to cancel. Icons change when the song is repeated or the folder is repeated.
	(AVRCP Ver. 1.3 or higher) Plays songs in the folder in random order. When selected again, the songs on the device are played in random order. Select it again to cancel. Icons change during folder shuffle or device shuffle.
	Scans the titles in a folder and plays the beginning of each song to aid in finding a desired song. When selected again, the beginning of each song on the device is played. When selected again, the operation is cancelled and the song currently being played continues.
	Returns to the beginning of the previous song. Long-press to fast reverse. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Plays the Bluetooth® audio. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.
	Advances to the beginning of the next song. Long-press to fast forward. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

▼Bluetooth® Audio Device Information Display

If a Bluetooth® audio device is connected, the following information is displayed in the centre display.

	AVRCP Ver. lower than 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.4 or higher
Device name	X	X	X
Remaining battery charge of device	X	X	X
Song name	—	X	X
Artist name	—	X	X
Album name	—	X	X
Playback time	—	X	X
Genre name	—	X	X
Album art image	—	—	—

X: Available
—: Not available

NOTE

Some information may not display depending on the device, and if the information cannot be displayed, “Unknown - - -” is indicated.

▼How to Use Aha™

What is Aha™?

Aha*1 is an application which can be used to enjoy various Internet content such as Internet radio and podcasts.
Stay connected to your friends activities by getting updates from Facebook and Twitter.
Using the location-based service, nearby services and destinations can be searched or real-time local information can be obtained.
For details on Aha, refer to “http://www.aharadio.com/”.
*1 Aha, the Aha logo, and the Aha trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Harman International Industries, Inc., used with permission.

NOTE

- The service content provided by Aha varies depending on the country in which the user resides. In addition, the service is not available in some countries.
- To operate Aha from your Bluetooth® device, perform the following in advance:
  - Install the Aha application to your device.
  - Create an Aha account for your device.
  - Log onto Aha using your device.
  - Select the preset station on your device.

Playback

Select the icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When aha is selected, the following icons are displayed at the bottom of the centre display. The displayed icon differs depending on the selected station.
In addition, icons other than the following icons may be displayed.

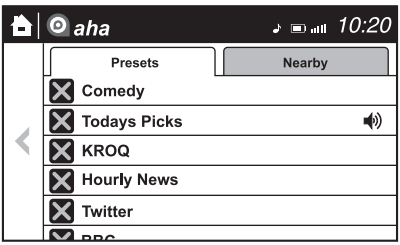
Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the main menu. Use to switch to other stations.
	Displays the content list. Use to switch to other desired content on the station.
	Shout Records voice. Records voice and posts it as playable audio to Facebook and other social stations.
	Like[*2] Evaluates the current content as “Like”.
	Dislike[*2] Evaluates the current content as “Dislike”.
:15	Reverses for 15 seconds.
	Map (vehicles with navigation system) Displays the destination searched by the location based services on the navigation system.
	Call A call can be made to the telephone number of a shop searched using the Location Based Services. Available when a device is connected as a Hands-Free.
	Returns to the previous content.
	Pauses playback of the content. When selected again, playback resumes.
	Goes to the next content.

Icon	Function
:30	Fast-forwards for 30 seconds.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

*2 Some stations may use alternate variations of Like and Dislike, based on station type or provider.

Main menu

Select the icon.



Switch the tab and select the station category.

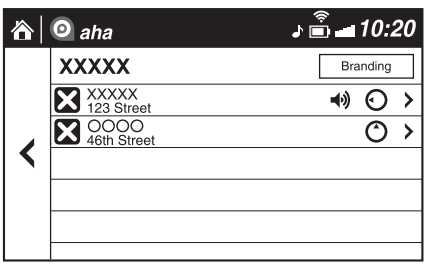
Tab	Function
Presets	Displays the preset station list set on the device. Select the preset station name to play the station content.
Nearby	Select the desired station. Guidance is provided to the searched destination near the vehicle's position. You can designate desired categories previously set using the filter setting on your device.

NOTE
The available Location Based Services may differ because the services depend on the content provided by Aha™.

Example of use (Location Based Services)

1. Select the desired station from the “Nearby” tab on the main menu.
   The destination name or address playback starts in the order of the destination name list.

2. When the icon is selected, the currently displayed destination is displayed on the navigation system (vehicles with navigation system).
3. When the icon is selected, a phone call is placed to the currently displayed destination.
4. Select the icon to display the content list.
   Selection of other destinations from the list can be made.



Shout

Some social stations, such as Facebook or Caraoke, support the ability to record and share voice messages using the “Shout” function.

1. Select the icon and start the countdown (3, 2, 1, 0). Recording starts when the countdown reaches zero.
2. Records voice.
3. Select Save and store/post the recording.

NOTE

- Recordable time varies depending on the station (Max. 30 seconds).
- Recording stops automatically when the recordable time has elapsed. You can then post or delete the recording.

▼How to Use Stitcher™ Radio

What is Stitcher™ Radio?

Stitcher™*1 radio is an application which can be used to listen to Internet radio or stream podcasts.
Recommended content is automatically selected by registering content which you put into your favourites, or by pressing the Like or Dislike button.
For details on Stitcher™ Radio, refer to “http://stitcher.com/”.

*1 Stitcher™, the Stitcher™ logo, and the Stitcher™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Stitcher, Inc., used with permission.

NOTE

To operate Stitcher™ Radio from your Bluetooth® device, perform the following in advance:

- Install the Stitcher™ Radio application to your device.
- Create a Stitcher™ Radio account for your device.
- Log onto Stitcher™ Radio using your device.

Playback

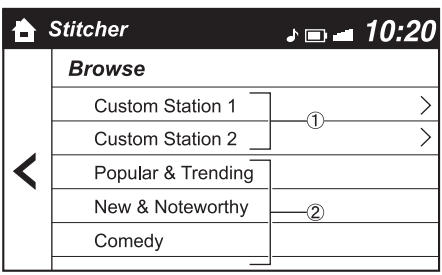
Select the ♫ icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When Stitcher is selected, the following icons are indicated in the bottom part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
♫	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
☰	Displays the station list. Use to switch to other stations.
👎	**Dislike** Evaluates the current programme as “Dislike”.
👍	**Like** Evaluates the current programme as “Like”.
★	Adds the current station to your favourites or deletes the current station from your favourites.

Icon	Function
:30	Reverses for 30 seconds.
▶/❚❚	Plays the station. Select it again to pause playback.
▶▶❚	Goes to the next station.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-50.

Station list

1. Select the icon to display the station list.
   ① Favourites station name: Select to display the programme registered to your favourites.
   ② Category name: A recommended category selected from your favourites by Stitcher™ is displayed.
   Select it to display the category programme.



2. Select the programme name to play it.

Add to your favourites

If the current programme has not been registered to your favourites, it can be registered to your favourites.

1. Select the ★ icon to display the favourites station which the registration can be added.
2. Select the station name which you want to register.
3. Select OK to add the programme to the selected favourites station.

NOTE

- Multiple favourites stations can be selected and registered.
- Favourites stations registered by oneself as well those set by default are displayed.

Delete from your favourites

If the current programme has already been registered to your favourites, the programme can be deleted from your favourites.

1. Select the ★ icon.
2. The programme is automatically deleted from the favourites station.

Troubleshooting

Mazda Bluetooth® Hands-Free Customer Service

If you have any problems with Bluetooth®, contact our toll-free customer service centre.
Phone:
(Germany)
0800 4263 738 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Except Germany)
00800 4263 7383 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
(Worldwide)
+ 49 (0) 6838 907 287 (8:00—18:00 Central European Time)
Web:
http://www.mazdahandsfree.com

Bluetooth® Device pairing, connection problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Unable to perform pairing	—	First make sure the device is compatible with the Bluetooth® unit, and then check whether the Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device are turned on. If pairing is still not possible after this, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or Mazda Bluetooth® Hands-Free Customer Service.
Pairing cannot be performed again	The pairing information paired to the Bluetooth® unit or device is not recognised correctly.	Perform pairing using the following procedure. •Clear “Mazda” stored in the device. •Perform pairing again.
Unable to perform pairing	The Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device may turn off automatically after a period of time has elapsed depending on the device.	Check whether the Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device are turned on and pairing or reconnect.
Does not connect automatically when starting the engine		
Automatically connects, but then disconnects suddenly		
Disconnects intermittently	The device is in a location in which radio wave interference can occur easily, such as in a bag or in a rear pocket of a pair of pants.	Move the device to a location in which radio wave interference is less likely to occur.
Does not connect automatically when starting the engine	The pairing information is updated when the device OS is updated.	Perform pairing again.

*1 Setting which detects the existence of a device external to the Bluetooth® unit

NOTE

- When the OS of the device is updated, the pairing information may be deleted. If this happens, reprogramme the pairing information to the Bluetooth® unit.
- If you pair your phone which has already been paired to your vehicle more than once in the past, you need to delete “Mazda” on your mobile device. Then, execute the Bluetooth® search on your mobile device once again, and pair to a newly detected “Mazda”.
- Before you pair your device, make sure that Bluetooth® is “ON”, both on your phone and on the vehicle.
- If Bluetooth®-enabled devices are used in the following locations or conditions, connection via Bluetooth® may not be possible.
  - The device is in a location hidden from the centre display such as behind or under a seat, or inside the glove compartment.
  - The device contacts or is covered by a metal object or body.
  - The device is set to power-saving mode.
- Different Bluetooth®-enabled devices can be used for Bluetooth® Hands-Free and Bluetooth® audio. For example, device A can be connected as a Bluetooth® Hands-Free device and device B can be connected as a Bluetooth® audio device. However, the following may occur when they are used at the same time.
  - The Bluetooth® connection of the device is disconnected.
  - Noise occurs in the Hands-Free audio.
  - Hands-Free operates slowly.

Voice recognition related problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Poor voice recognition	•Excessive, slow speech. •Excessive, forceful speech (shouting). •Speaking before the beep sound has ended. •Loud noise (speaking or noise from outside/inside vehicle). •Airflow from A/C is blowing against the microphone. •Speaking in off-standard expressions (dialect).	Regarding the causes indicated on the left, be careful with how you speak. In addition, when numbers are spoken in a sequence, recognition ability will improve if no stop is placed between the numbers.
False recognition of numbers		
Poor voice recognition	There is a malfunction in the microphone.	A poor connection or malfunction with the microphone may have occurred. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Phone-related voice recognition is disabled	There is a problem with the connection between the Bluetooth® unit and the device.	If there is any malfunction after checking the pairing situation, check for device pairing or connection problems.
Names in the phonebook are not easily recognised	The Bluetooth® system is under a condition in which recognition is difficult.	By carrying out the following measures, the rate of recognition will improve. •Clear memory from the phonebook which is not used very often. •Avoid shortened names, use full names. (Recognition improves the longer the name is. By not using names such as “Mum”, “Dad”, recognition will improve.)
When operating the audio, a song name is not recognised	Song names cannot be recognised by voice.	—
You want to skip guidance	—	Guidance can be skipped by quickly pressing and releasing the Talk button.

Regarding problems with calls

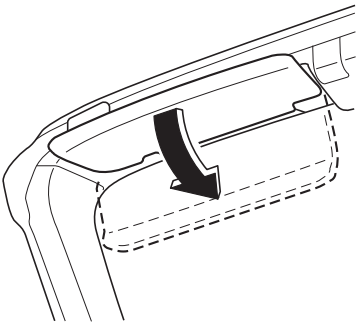
Symptom	Cause	Solution method
When starting a call, vehicle noise from the other party can be heard	For about three seconds after starting a call, the Bluetooth® unit's Noise Suppression function requires time to adapt to the call environment.	This does not indicate a problem with the device.
The other party cannot be heard or the speaker's voice is quiet	The volume is set at zero or low.	Increase the volume.

Other problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
The indication for the remaining battery is different between the vehicle and the device	The indication method is different between the vehicle and the device.	—
When a call is made from the vehicle, the telephone number is updated in the incoming/outgoing call record but the name does not appear	The number has not been registered into the phonebook.	If the number has been registered into the phonebook, the incoming/outgoing call record is updated by the name in the phonebook when the engine is restarted.
The cell phone does not synchronize with the vehicle regarding the incoming/outgoing call record	Some types of cell phones do not synchronize automatically.	Operate the cell phone for synchronization.
It takes a long time to complete the function for changing the language	A maximum of 60 seconds is required.	—

Sunvisors

When you need a sunvisor, lower it for use in front.



▼Vanity Mirrors

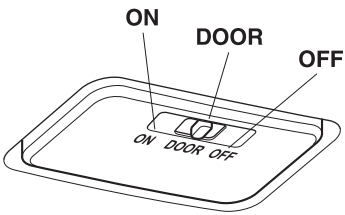
To use the vanity mirror, lower the sunvisor.

Interior Lights

NOTE
Do not leave the lights on for long periods while the engine is turned off. Otherwise the battery power could be depleted.

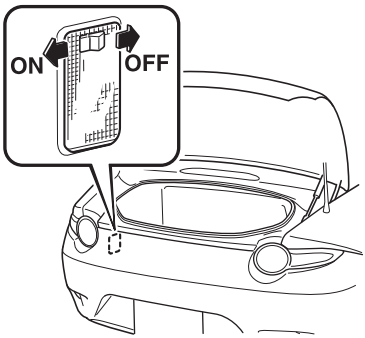
Overhead Light

Switch Position	Overhead Light
OFF	Light off
DOOR	•Light is on when any door is open •Light is on or off when the illuminated entry system is on
ON	Light on



Boot Light

The boot light is on when the lid is open and off when it's closed.



NOTE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the boot open for a long period when the engine is not running.

▼Illuminated Entry System

When the illuminated entry system operates, the overhead lights turn on in the following conditions:

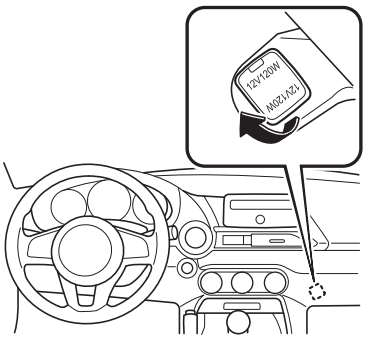
- The driver's door is unlocked after the ignition is switched OFF.
- The ignition is switched OFF with all doors closed.

NOTE

- The illuminated entry system operates when the overhead light switch is in the DOOR position.
- The illumination time differs depending on the operation.
- **Battery saver**
  If an interior light is left on with the ignition switched OFF, the light is turned off automatically after about 30 minutes to prevent battery depletion.
- The operation of the illuminated entry system can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

Accessory Socket

The accessory socket is located deep in the back of the footwell on the passenger side. Only use genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent requiring no greater than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).
The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON.



⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent accessory socket damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:
  - Do not use accessories that require more than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).
  - Do not use accessories that are not genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent.
  - Close the cover when the accessory socket is not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the accessory socket.
  - Correctly insert the plug into the accessory socket.
  - Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the accessory socket.
- Noise may occur on the audio playback depending on the device connected to the accessory socket.
- Depending on the device connected to the accessory socket, the vehicle's electrical system may be affected, which could cause the warning light to illuminate. Disconnect the connected device and make sure that the problem is resolved. If the problem is resolved, disconnect the device from the socket and switch the ignition off. If the problem is not resolved, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the socket for long periods with the engine off or idling.

Cup Holder

⚠ *WARNING*

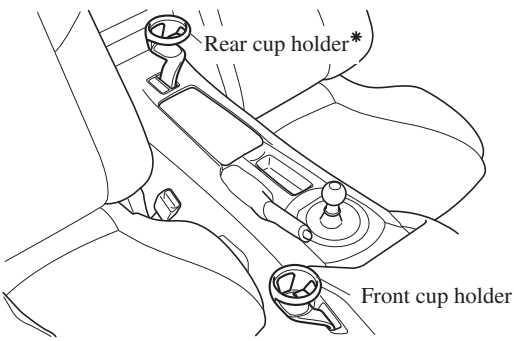
Never use a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving:
Using a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. If the contents spill, you could be scalded.

Do not put anything other than plastic bottles, cups or drink cans in cup holders:
Putting objects other than plastic bottles, cups or drink cans in a cup holder is dangerous. During sudden braking or manoeuvring, occupants could be hit and injured, or objects could be thrown around the vehicle, causing interference with the driver and the possibility of an accident. Only use a cup holder for plastic bottles, cups or drink cans.

⚠ CAUTION

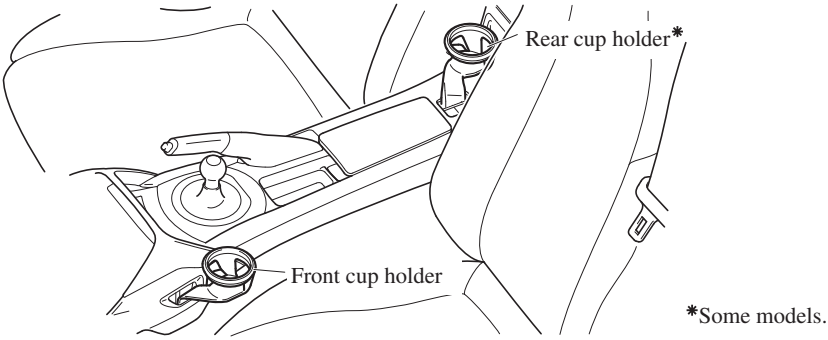
- Do not place plastic bottles without caps in the cup holders. Otherwise, the contents may spill while the vehicle is being driven.
- Do not place excessive weight on the cup holders such as by resting your hands or elbows on them. Otherwise, the cup holders could be damaged.
- If a passenger is present, install the front cup holder to the rear console. Otherwise, a knee might hit it and cause the contents to spill.

Left-hand drive model



*Some models.

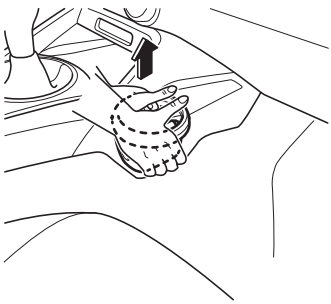
Right-hand drive model



Removing cup holders

Use both hands when removing the cup holder.

Left-hand drive model



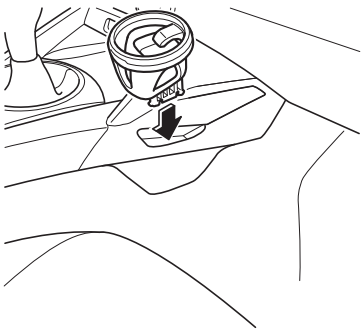
Right-hand drive model

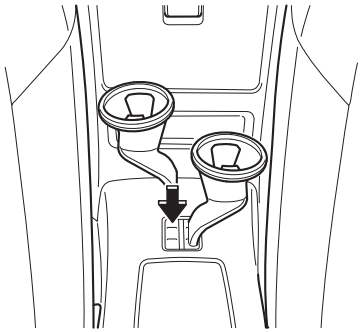
Installing cup holders

⚠ CAUTION

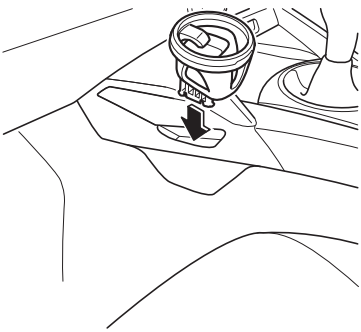
When installing a cup holder, insert it all the way into the installation hole and make sure that it is secured in place. Otherwise, the cup holder may fall off while the vehicle is being driven and cause the beverage to spill.

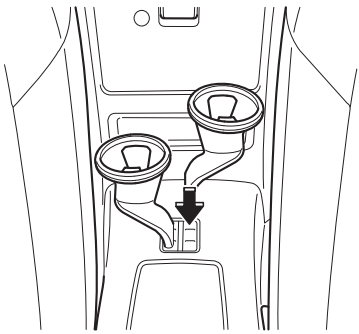
Left-hand drive model





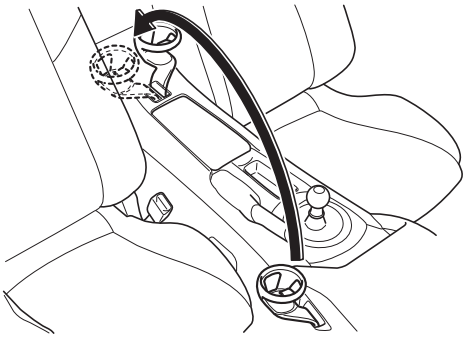
Right-hand drive model



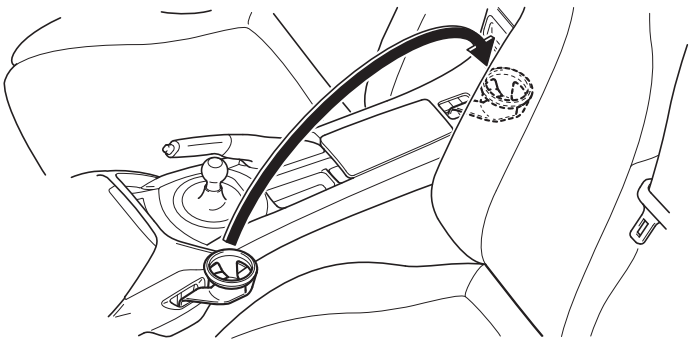


NOTE

- The front cup holder can be removed and installed to the rear console.
  Left-hand drive model

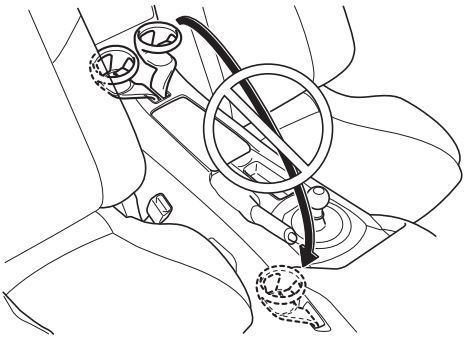


Right-hand drive model

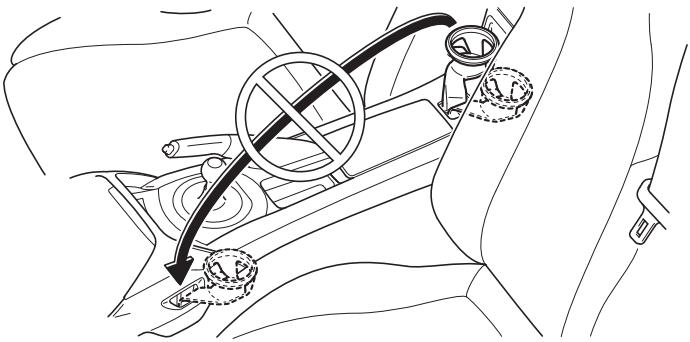


NOTE

- The rear cup holder is designed for use on the rear console and cannot be installed to the front side.
  Left-hand drive model



Right-hand drive model



Storage Compartments

⚠ *WARNING*

Keep storage boxes closed when driving:
Driving with the storage boxes open is dangerous. To reduce the possibility of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, keep the storage boxes closed when driving.

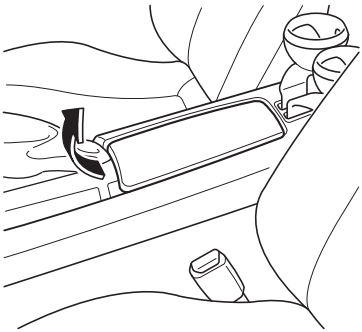
Do not put articles in storage spaces with no lid:
Putting articles in storage spaces with no lid is dangerous as they could be thrown around the cabin if the vehicle is suddenly accelerated and cause injury depending on how the article is stored.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave lighters or eyeglasses in the storage boxes while parked under the sun. A lighter could explode or the plastic material in eyeglasses could deform and crack from high temperature.

▼Console Box

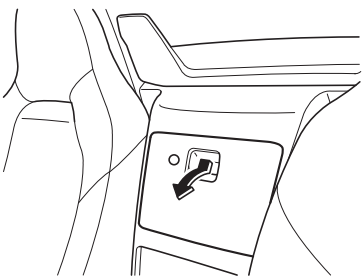
To use, open the lid.



▼Seat Side Box

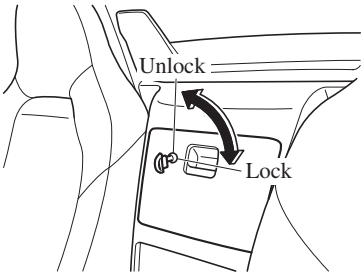
⚠ CAUTION

When using the rear console cup holders, remove any cups before opening the seat side box.
If the seat side box is opened with cups still in them, the lid will hit the cups and cause the contents to spill.



To open, press the latch down to open the seat side box.

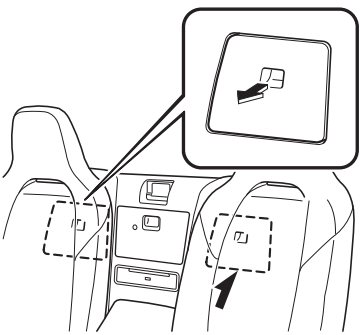
Insert the auxiliary key and turn it clockwise to lock, anticlockwise to unlock.



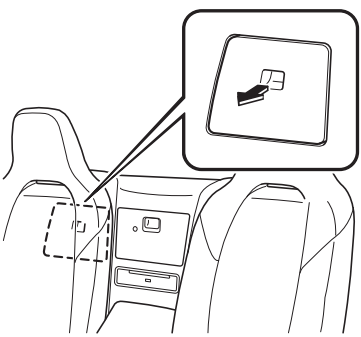
▼Back Trim Storage Box

Small items can be stored in the back trim storage box.

(Soft top model)



(Retractable fastback model)



To use the back trim storage box

1. Slide the seat all the way forward and fold the seatback forward.
   Refer to Seat Operation on page 2-5.
2. Remove the lids.

When finished, return the seat to its original position and secure it. After returning the seat to its original position, make sure the seat is secured by attempting to lightly move it forward and backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not forcefully push objects into the back trim storage box. Otherwise, the box could be damaged.

Removable Ashtray*

The removable ashtray can be fixed and used in either of the cup holders.

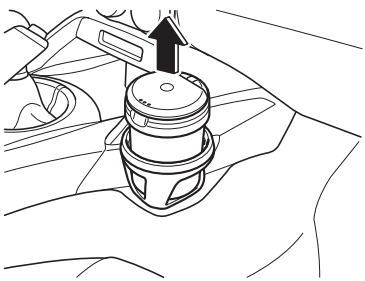
⚠ *WARNING*

Only use the removable ashtray in its fixed position, and make sure it is completely inserted:
Using an ashtray removed from its fixed position or not completely inserted is dangerous. Cigarettes could roll around or spill out of the ashtray into the vehicle and start a fire. Moreover, cigarette stubs will not extinguish themselves completely even if the ashtray lid is closed.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the ashtray for rubbish. You might start a fire.

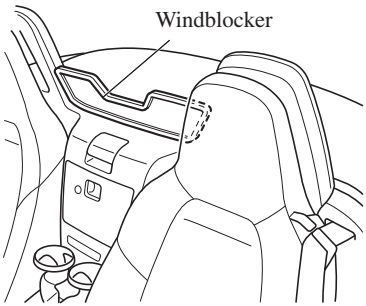
To use the ashtray, insert it straight into the cup holder.
To remove the ashtray, pull it upward.



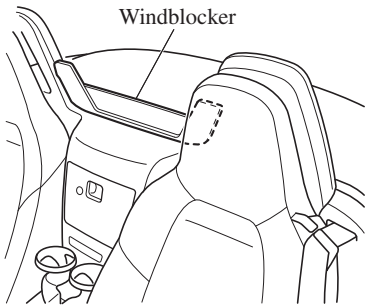
Windblocker

This windblocker reduces rear wind blast into the cabin when driving with the convertible top down.

(Soft top model)



(Retractable fastback model)



*Some models.

MEMO

6 Maintenance and Care

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

Essential Information 6-2
Introduction 6-2

Scheduled Maintenance 6-3
Scheduled Maintenance 6-3
Maintenance Monitor 6-10

Owner Maintenance 6-12
Owner Maintenance Precautions 6-12
Bonnet 6-14
Engine Compartment Overview 6-16
Engine Oil 6-17
Engine Coolant 6-20
Brake/Clutch Fluid 6-22
Window and Headlight Washer Fluid 6-23
Body Lubrication 6-24
Wiper Blades 6-24
Battery 6-28
Key Battery Replacement 6-31
Tyres 6-33
Light Bulbs 6-38
Fuses 6-47

Appearance Care 6-53
Exterior Care 6-53
Interior Care 6-64

Introduction

Be careful not to hurt yourself when inspecting your vehicle, replacing a tyre, or doing some kind of maintenance such as car washing.
In particular, wear thick work gloves such as cotton gloves when touching areas that are difficult to see while inspecting or working on your vehicle. Doing inspections or procedures with your bare hands could cause injury.

If you are unsure about any procedure it describes, we strongly urge you to have a reliable and qualified technician perform the work, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

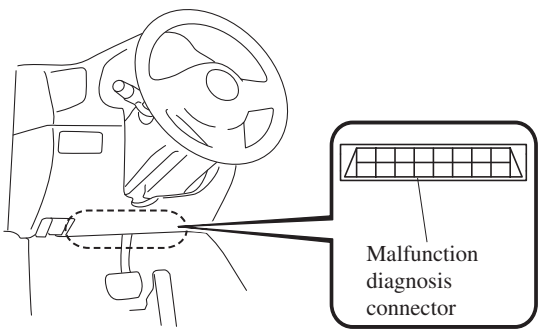
Authorised Mazda technicians and genuine Mazda parts are dedicated to your vehicle. Without this expertise and the parts that have been designed and made especially for your Mazda, inadequate, incomplete, and insufficient servicing may result in problems. This could lead to vehicle damage or an accident and injuries.

For expert advice and quality service, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

The owner should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed as prescribed.

A claim against a warranty will not qualify if it results from lack of maintenance and not from defective material or authorised workmanship.

The malfunction diagnosis connector is designed exclusively for connecting the specially designed device to perform on-board diagnosis.
Do not connect any devices other than the specially designed malfunction diagnosis devices for servicing. If any device other than the malfunction diagnosis device is connected, it may affect the vehicle's electrical devices or lead to damage such as battery depletion.



Scheduled Maintenance

NOTE
After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

Emission control and related systems
The ignition and fuel systems are highly important to the emission control system and to efficient engine operation. Do not tamper with them.
All inspections and adjustments must be made by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Europe

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.								
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108
	×1000 km	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180
	×1000 miles	12.5	25	37.5	50	62.5	75	87.5	100	112.5
Spark plugs*1		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles).								
Air filter*2				R			R			R
Evaporative system (if installed)				I			I			I
Drive belts*3				I			I			I
Engine oil & filter	Flexible*4	Replace when indicator is ON. (Max interval: 12 months/20,000 km (12,500 miles))								
	Other than flexible*5	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Cooling system			I		I		I		I	
Engine coolant*6		Replace at first 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years.								
Fuel lines and hoses			I		I		I		I	
Battery*7		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid*8			R		R		R		R	
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I	
Manual transmission oil						R				
Rear differential oil		*9								
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play			I		I		I		I	

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.								
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**	**108**
	×1000 km	**20**	**40**	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**	**180**
	×1000 miles	**12.5**	**25**	**37.5**	**50**	**62.5**	**75**	**87.5**	**100**	**112.5**
Driveshaft dust boots			I		I		I		I	
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 5 years.								
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body			T		T		T		T	
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)		Inspect annually.								
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*10*11		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if installed)*12		Inspect annually.								

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 In the countries below, inspect the spark plugs at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 12 months before replacing them at the said interval.
Albania, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Latvia, Macedonia, Moldova, Montenegro, Romania, Serbia, Ukraine

*2 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.

*3 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if installed.
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts at every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12 months.

a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*4 SKYACTIV-G 1.5 and SKYACTIV-G 2.0 vehicles can select flexible setting only some countries in Europe. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details. Flexible setting can be set if the vehicle is operated mainly where none of the following conditions apply.

a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation

Once the flexible maintenance is selected, the vehicle calculates the remaining oil life based on engine operating conditions and lets you know when an oil change is due by illuminating the wrench indicator light in the instrument cluster.
Replace the engine oil and filter when message/wrench indicator light is ON. And they must be changed at least once a year or within 20,000 km (12,500 miles) since last engine oil and filter change.
The system must be reset whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the message/wrench indicator light display.

*5 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or shorter.

a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*6 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.
*7 Inspect the battery electrolyte level, specific gravity and outer appearance. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.
*8 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.
*9 If this component has been submerged in water, the oil should be replaced.
*10 Tyre rotation is recommended every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).
*11 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).
*12 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

▼Except Europe

Israel

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first												
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**	**108**	**120**	**132**	**144**
	×1000 km	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**	**135**	**150**	**165**	**180**
Spark plugs	Replace every 120,000 km or 6 years.												
Fuel filter	Replace every 135,000 km.												
Evaporative system (if installed)					I				I				I
Fuel lines and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I
Drive belts*1	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine oil & oil filter*2	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Air filter*3	C	C	C	R	C	C	C	R	C	C	C	R
Cooling system		I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine coolant*4	Replace at first 195,000 km or 10 years; after that, every 90,000 km or 5 years.												
Battery*5	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid*6	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first												
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**	**108**	**120**	**132**	**144**
	×1000 km	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**	**135**	**150**	**165**	**180**
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I		I		I
Manual transmission oil							R						R
Rear differential oil		*7											
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft dust boots				I			I			I			I
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 75,000 km.											
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body		T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)		Inspect annually.											
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*8		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if installed)*9		Inspect annually.											

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if installed.
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts at every 10,000 km or shorter.

a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*2 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter at every 10,000 km or shorter.

a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*3 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.
*4 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.
*5 Inspect the battery electrolyte level, specific gravity and outer appearance. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.

*6 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.
*7 If this component has been submerged in water, the oil should be replaced.
*8 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).
*9 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

Except Israel

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.															
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
Fuel filter		Replace every 60,000 km (37,500 miles).															
Spark plugs*1		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles).															
Evaporative system (if installed)			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Drive belts*2		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine oil*3	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Georgia/ Armenia/ Cambodia	Replace every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months.															
Engine oil filter*3	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Georgia/ Armenia/ Cambodia	Replace every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year.															
Cooling system			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine coolant*4		Replace at first 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years.															
Air filter*5	Except below countries		C		C		R		C		C		R		C		C
	Georgia/ Armenia		C		R		C		R		C		R		C		R
Fuel lines and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Battery*6			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Brake lines, hoses and connections			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Brake fluid*7		I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.															
	Months	**6**	**12**	**18**	**24**	**30**	**36**	**42**	**48**	**54**	**60**	**66**	**72**	**78**	**84**	**90**	**96**
	×1000 km	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**	**90**	**100**	**110**	**120**	**130**	**140**	**150**	**160**
	×1000 miles	**6.25**	**12.5**	**18.75**	**25**	**31.25**	**37.5**	**43.75**	**50**	**56.25**	**62.5**	**68.75**	**75**	**81.25**	**87.5**	**93.75**	**100**
Disc brakes		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Manual transmission oil											R						
Rear differential oil		*8															
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Driveshaft dust boots					I				I				I				I
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 80,000 km (50,000 miles).															
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body			T		T		T		T		T		T		T		T
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)		Inspect annually.															
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*9		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre rotation*9		Rotate every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).															
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if installed)*10		Inspect annually.															

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
C: Clean
T: Tighten
D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 In the countries below, inspect the spark plugs at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 12 months before replacing them at the said interval.
Armenia, Angola, Bolivia, Burundi, B.Virgin, Cambodia, Cameroon, Chile, Costa Rica, Curacao, El Salvador, Gabon, Ghana, Georgia, Guatemala, Haiti, Honduras, Hong Kong, Iran, Jordan, Macau, Mongolia, Mozambique, Myanmar, Nigeria, Nicaragua, Papua New Guinea, Peru, Philippines, Seychelles, Syria, Tanzania, United Arab Emirates, Vietnam, Zaire, Zimbabwe

*2 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if installed.
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts more often than the recommended intervals.

a) Driving in dusty conditions
b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*3 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter more often than the recommended intervals.

a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
b) Driving in dusty conditions
c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*4 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.
*5 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.
*6 Inspect the battery electrolyte level, specific gravity and outer appearance. If the vehicle is operated in extremely hot and cold areas, inspect the battery electrolyte level, specific gravity and appearance every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.
*7 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.
*8 If this component has been submerged in water, the oil should be replaced.
*9 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).
*10 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

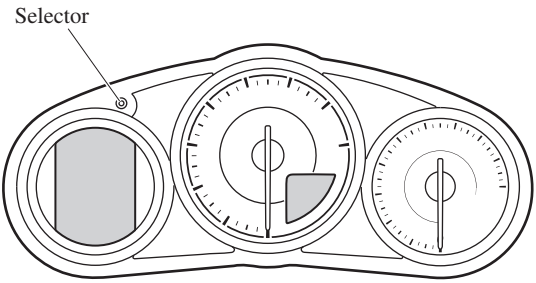
Maintenance Monitor

▼Maintenance Monitor (Type A audio)

“Oil Change” with flexible setting*1 is available. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details*2. When the engine oil flexible maintenance setting is selected, the wrench indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when remaining oil life becomes less than 1,000 km (600 mile), or remaining days are less than 15 (Whichever comes first).

Reset method

Press and hold the selector with the ignition switched off, then switch it on. Keep pressing the selector for more than 5 seconds. The master warning light will flash for a few seconds when the reset is completed.



*1 The engine oil flexible maintenance setting is available (only some models). Based on the engine operating conditions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining oil life.
*2 When the engine oil flexible maintenance setting is selected, the system must be reset whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the wrench indicator light display.

▼Maintenance Monitor (Type B/Type C audio)

1. Select the icon on the home screen to display the “Applications” screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select “Maintenance” to display the maintenance list screen.
4. Switch the tab and select the setting item you want to change.

You can customize settings in the setup display as follows:

Tab	Item	Explanation
Scheduled	Setting	Notification can be switched on/off.
	Time (months)	Displays the time or distance until maintenance is due. Select this item to set the maintenance period. The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when the remaining distance is less than 1,000 km or 600 mile, or the remaining number of days is less than 15 (whichever comes first).
	Distance (mile or km)	
	Reset	Resets the time and distance to the initial values. Once the system turns on, it needs to be reset whenever carrying out maintenance.
Tyre Rotation	Setting	Notification can be switched on/off.
	Distance (mile or km)	Displays the distance until tyre rotation is due. Select this item to set the tyre rotation distance. The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when the remaining distance is less than 1,000 km or 600 mile.
	Reset	Resets the remaining distance to the initial value. Once the system turns on, it needs to be reset whenever rotating the tyres.
Oil Change	Setting*1	Notification can be switched on/off.
	Distance (mile or km)	Displays the distance until the oil replacement is due. Select this item to set the oil replacement distance. The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when the remaining distance is less than 1,000 km or 600 mile.
	Reset	Resets the remaining distance to the initial value. Once the system turns on, it needs to be reset whenever replacing the engine oil.

*1 The engine oil flexible maintenance setting is available (only some models). Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.
When the engine oil flexible maintenance setting is selected, you will see the following items in the display. The vehicle calculates the remaining oil life based on the engine operating conditions and lets you know when an oil change is due by illuminating the wrench indicator light in the instrument cluster.

Tab	Item	Explanation
Oil Change	Oil life (%)	Displays the engine oil life until the oil replacement is due. The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when remaining oil life distance is less than 1,000 km (600 mile), or remaining days are less than 15 (whichever comes first).
	Reset	Resets the remaining oil life to 100 %. The system must be reset whenever replacing the engine oil.

Owner Maintenance Precautions

Routine Service

We highly recommend that these items be inspected daily, or at least every week.

- Engine Oil Level (page 6-20)
- Engine Coolant Level (page 6-20)
- Brake and clutch Fluid Level (page 6-22)
- Washer Fluid Level (page 6-23)
- Battery Maintenance (page 6-30)
- Tyre Inflation Pressure (page 6-34)

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for items that are easy to perform.

As explained in the Introduction (page 6-2), several procedures can be done only by a qualified service technician with special tools.

Improper do-it yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Mazda Warranty statement provided with the vehicle. If you are unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

There are strict environmental laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and fluids. Please dispose of your waste properly and with due regard to the environment.

We recommend that you entrust the oil and fluid changes of your vehicle to an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not perform maintenance work if you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work. Have maintenance work done by a qualified technician:
Performing maintenance work on a vehicle is dangerous if not done properly. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures.

If you must run the engine while working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewellery (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fan which may turn on unexpectedly:
Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewellery or loose clothing.
Either can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.

Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:
Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not leave items in the engine compartment:
After you have finished checking or doing servicing in the engine compartment, do not forget and leave items such as tools or rags in the engine compartment.
Tools or other items left in the engine compartment could cause engine damage or a fire leading to an unexpected accident.

Bonnet

⚠ *WARNING*

Always check that the bonnet is closed and securely locked:
A bonnet that is not closed and securely locked is dangerous as it could fly open while the vehicle is moving and block the driver's vision which could result in a serious accident.

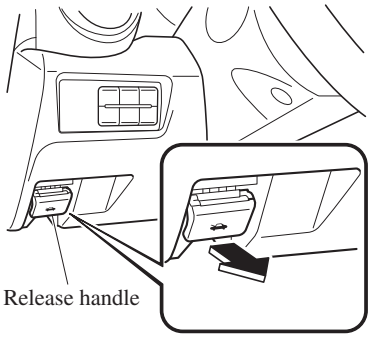
▼Opening the Bonnet

⚠ *WARNING*

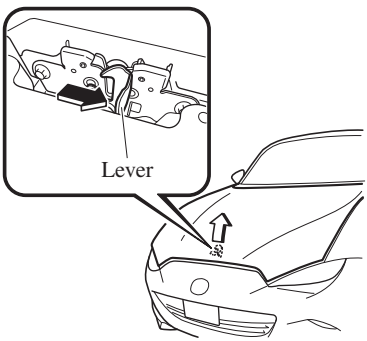
(With active bonnet)

Do not pull the bonnet's release handle after the active bonnet has activated:
Pulling the release handle while the active bonnet is operating is dangerous as it will raise the bonnet further and obstruct vision. In addition, the bonnet cannot be lowered manually, therefore do not attempt to forcefully push the bonnet back down. Otherwise, it could deform the bonnet or cause injury.
If the active bonnet has activated, always consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

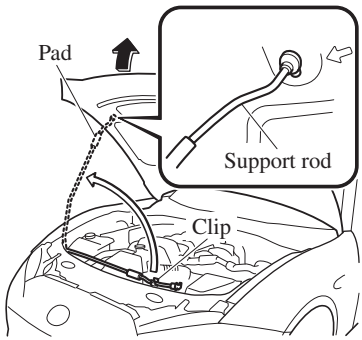
1. With the vehicle parked, pull the release handle to unlock the bonnet.



2. Insert your hand into the bonnet opening, slide the latch lever to the right, and lift up the bonnet.

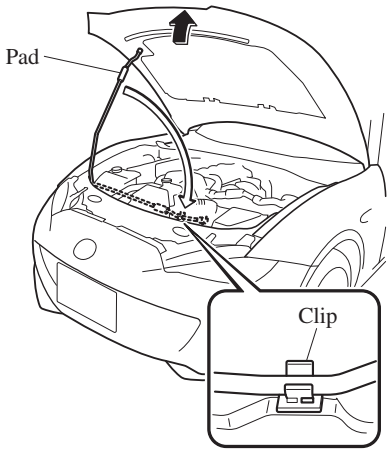


3. Grasp the support rod in the padded area and secure it in the support rod hole indicated by the arrow to hold the bonnet open.



▼Closing the Bonnet

1. Check under the bonnet area to make certain all filler caps are in place and all loose items (e.g. tools, oil containers, etc.) have been removed.
2. Lift the bonnet, grasp the padded area on the support rod, and secure the support rod in the clip. Verify that the support rod is secured in the clip before closing the bonnet.

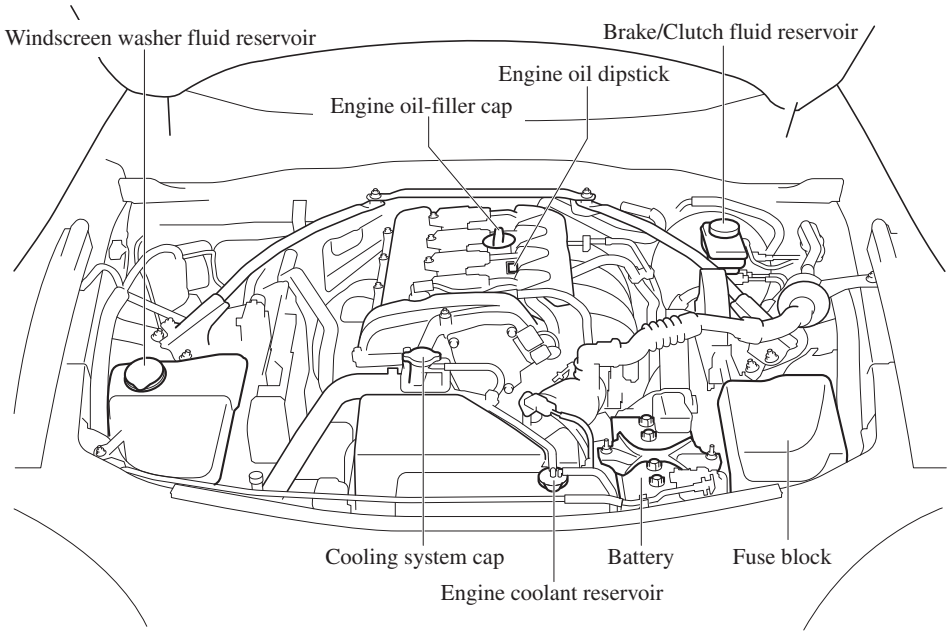


3. Lower the bonnet slowly to a height of about 20 cm (7.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.

⚠ CAUTION

When closing the bonnet, do not push it excessively such as by applying your weight. Otherwise, the bonnet could be deformed.

Engine Compartment Overview



Engine Oil

NOTE
Changing the engine oil should be done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Recommended Oil

In order to keep the maintenance interval (page 6-3) and to protect the engine from damage caused by poor lubrication, it is vitally important to make use of engine oil with the correct specification. Do not use oils which do not meet the following specifications or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

Europe

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers		
Grade		°C –40 –30 –20 –10 0 10 20 30 40 °F –40 –20 0 20 40 60 80 100
Recommended oils		
Mazda Original Oil Supra 0W-20		0W-20
Mazda Original Oil Ultra 5W-30		5W-30
Alternative Oil Quality		
API SL/SM/SN or ACEA A3/A5	**0W-20**	0W-20
	5W-30	5W-30

Except Europe

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers	
Grade	°C –40 –30 –20 –10 0 10 20 30 40 °F –40 –20 0 20 40 60 80 100
API SG/SH/SJ/SL/SM/SN or ILSAC GF-II/GF-III/GF-IV/GF-V	10W-30 10W-40 10W-50 5W-40 5W-20 5W-30 0W-20 0W-30

Engine oil viscosity, or thickness, has an effect on fuel economy and cold-weather operation (starting and oil flow).
Low-viscosity engine oils can provide improved fuel economy and cold-weather performance.

When choosing an oil, consider the temperature range your vehicle will operate in before the next oil change.
Then select the recommended viscosity from the chart.

⚠ CAUTION

Using oils of viscosity besides those recommended for specific temperature ranges could result in engine damage.

NOTE

It is normal for all engines to consume engine oil under normal driving conditions. Engine oil consumption may be as high as 0.8 L/1,000 km (1 L/800 miles). This may be as a result of evaporation, internal ventilation or burning of the lubricating oil in the working engine. Oil consumption may be higher when the engine is new due to the running-in process. Oil consumption is also dependant on engine speed and engine load. Under extreme driving conditions, oil consumption may be higher.

▼Vehicle Engine Control Unit Reset Procedure

NOTE

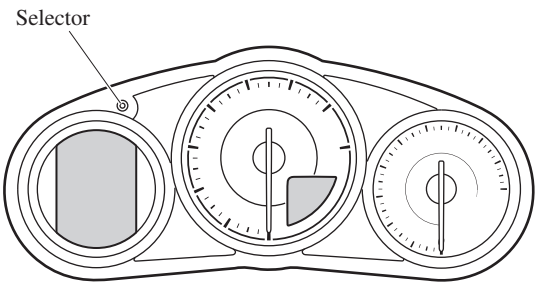
This procedure is intended for vehicles with the engine oil flexible maintenance setting selected.

After replacing the engine oil, have a repair shop such as an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform the initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value. If the value recorded by the computer is not initialized, the wrench indicator light may not turn off or it may turn on earlier than normal.

NOTE

The initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value can be performed using the following procedure:

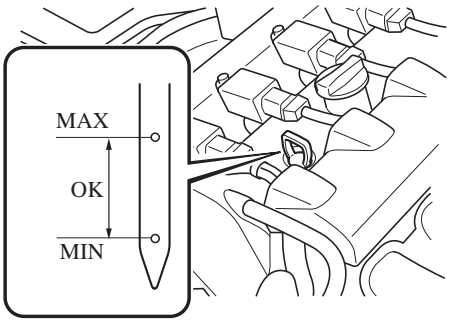
1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Switch the ignition ON with the selector pressed, and press and hold the selector for about 5 seconds until the master warning light ⚠ flashes.



3. After the master warning light ⚠ flashes for several seconds, the initialization is completed.

▼Inspecting Engine Oil Level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on a level surface.
2. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature.
3. Turn it off and wait at least 5 minutes for the oil to return to the sump.
4. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.



5. Pull it out again and examine the level. The level is normal if it is between the MIN and MAX marks.
   If it is near or below MIN, add enough oil to bring the level to MAX.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not overfill the engine oil. This may cause engine damage.

6. Make sure the O-ring on the dipstick is positioned properly before reinserting the dipstick.
7. Reinsert the dipstick fully.

Engine Coolant

▼Inspecting Coolant Level

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not use a match or live flame in the engine compartment. DO NOT ADD COOLANT WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT:
A hot engine is dangerous. If the engine has been running, parts of the engine compartment can become very hot. You could be burned. Carefully inspect the engine coolant in the coolant reservoir, but do not open it.

Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:
Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:
When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

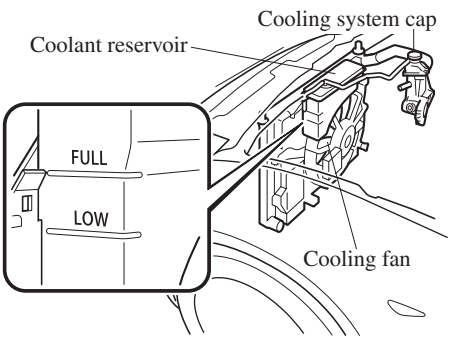
NOTE

Changing the coolant should be done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Inspect the antifreeze protection and coolant level in the coolant reservoir at least once a year—at the beginning of the winter season—and before travelling where temperatures may drop below freezing.

Inspect the condition and connections of all cooling system and heater hoses. Replace any that are swollen or deteriorated.

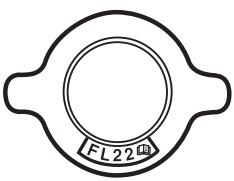
The coolant should be at full in the radiator and between the FULL and LOW marks on the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.



If it is at or near LOW, add enough coolant to the coolant reservoir to provide freezing and corrosion protection and to bring the level to FULL.
Securely tighten the coolant reservoir tank cap after adding coolant.

⚠ CAUTION

- Radiator coolant will damage paint. Rinse it off quickly if spilled.
- Use only soft (demineralised) water in the coolant mixture. Water that contains minerals will cut down on the coolant's effectiveness.
- Do not add only water. Always add a proper coolant mixture.
- The engine has aluminium parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE coolants Containing Alcohol, methanol, Borate or Silicate.
  These coolants could damage the cooling system.
- DO NOT MIX alcohol or methanol with the coolant. This could damage the cooling system.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze.
  This would reduce effectiveness.
- If the “FL22” mark is shown on or near the cooling system cap, use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.



If the coolant reservoir is empty or new coolant is required frequently, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Brake/Clutch Fluid

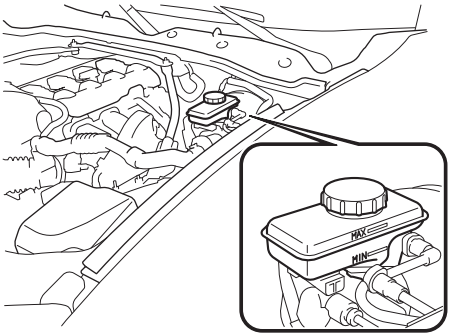
▼Inspecting Brake/Clutch Fluid Level

⚠ *WARNING*

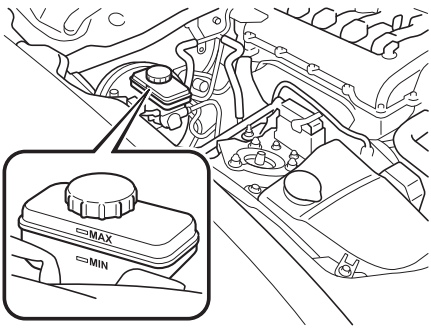
If the brake/clutch fluid level is low, have the brakes inspected:
A low brake/clutch fluid level is dangerous.
A low level could indicate brake lining wear or a brake system leak which could cause the brakes to fail and lead to an accident.

The brakes and clutch draw fluid from the same reservoir.
Inspect the fluid level in the reservoir regularly. It should be kept between the MAX and MIN lines.
The level normally drops with accumulated distance, a condition associated with wear of brake and clutch linings. If it is excessively low, have the brake/clutch system inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Left-hand drive model



Right-hand drive model



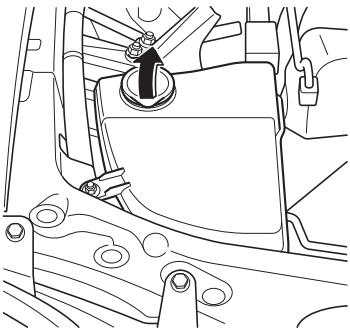
Window and Headlight Washer Fluid

▼Inspecting Washer Fluid Level

⚠ *WARNING*

Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:
Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

Inspect fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir; add fluid if necessary.



Use plain water if washer fluid is unavailable.
But use only washer fluid in cold weather to prevent it from freezing.

Body Lubrication

All moving points of the body, such as door and bonnet hinges and locks, should be lubricated each time the engine oil is changed. Use a nonfreezing lubricant on locks during cold weather.

Make sure the bonnet's secondary latch keeps the bonnet from opening when the primary latch is released.

Wiper Blades

⚠ CAUTION

- Hot waxes applied by automatic car washers have been known to affect the wiper's ability to clean windows.
- To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, paraffin, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:
  - If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched.
  - If the windscreen above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.
  - If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object.
  - If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.

  Be careful not to pinch hands or fingers as it may cause injury, or damage the wipers. When washing or servicing the vehicle, make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the blades with foreign matter can reduce wiper effectiveness. Common sources are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes.

If the blades are not wiping properly, clean the window and blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent; then rinse thoroughly with clean water. Repeat if necessary.

▼Replacing Windscreen Wiper Blades

When the wipers no longer clean well, the blades are probably worn or cracked. Replace them.

⚠ CAUTION

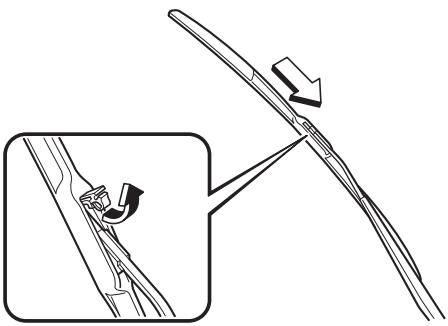
To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not try to sweep the wiper arm by hand.

NOTE

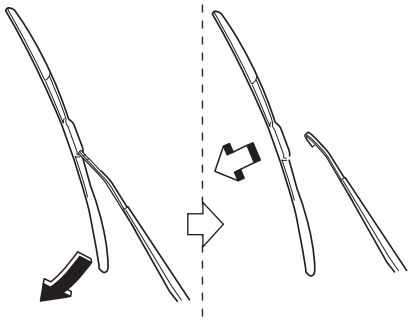
When raising both windscreen wiper arms, raise the driver's side wiper arm first. When lowering the wiper arms, slowly lower the wiper arm from the passenger's side first while supporting it with your hand. Forcefully lowering the wiper arms could damage the wiper arm and blade, and may scratch or crack the windscreen.

(Type A)

1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Open the clip and slide the blade assembly in the direction of the arrow.



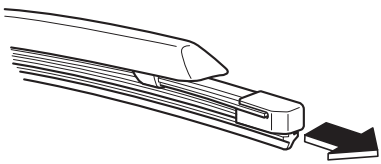
3. Tilt the blade assembly and remove it from the arm.



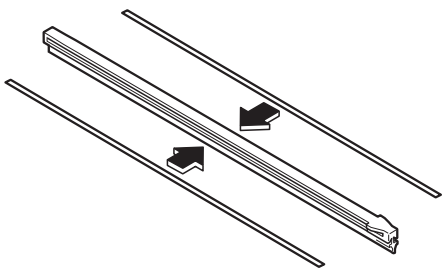
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the windscreen let the wiper arm down easily, do not let it slap down on the windscreen.

4. Pull down the blade rubber and slide it out of blade holder.



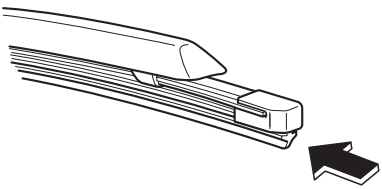
5. Remove the metal stiffeners from each blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



⚠ CAUTION

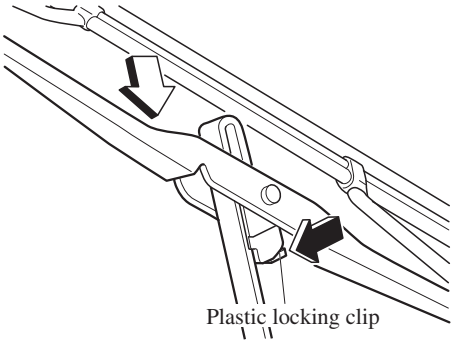
- Do not bend or discard the stiffeners. You need to use them again.
- If the metal stiffeners are switched, the blade's wiping efficiency could be reduced.
  So do not use the driver's side metal stiffeners on the passenger's side, or vice versa.
- Be sure to reinstall the metal stiffeners in the new blade rubber so that the curve is the same as it was in the old blade rubber.

6. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



(Type B)

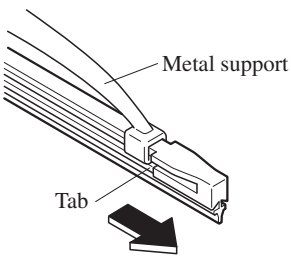
1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.
   Compress the clip and slide the assembly downward; then lift it off the arm.



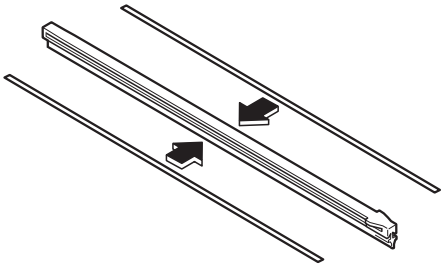
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the windscreen let the wiper arm down easily, do not let it slap down on the windscreen.

2. Hold the end of the rubber and pull until the tabs are free of the metal support.



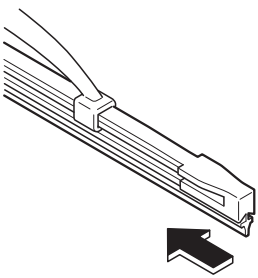
3. Remove the metal stiffeners from each blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



⚠ CAUTION

- Do not bend or discard the stiffeners. You need to use them again.
- If the metal stiffeners are switched, the blade's wiping efficiency could be reduced.
  So do not use the driver's side metal stiffeners on the passenger's side, or vice versa.
- Be sure to reinstall the metal stiffeners in the new blade rubber so that the curve is the same as it was in the old blade rubber.

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



NOTE

Install the blade so that the tabs are toward the bottom of the wiper arm.

Battery

⚠ *WARNING*

Read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting to ensure safe and correct handling:

Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:
Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.

Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:
Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.
Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, or on the skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.

Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:
Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.

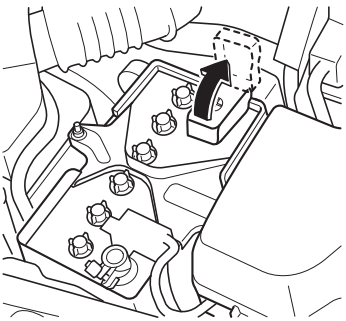
Keep flames and sparks away from open battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (−) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.

⚠ *WARNING*

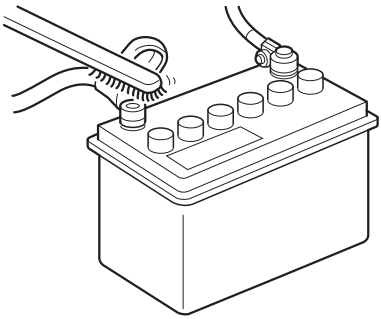
Keep all flames, including cigarettes, and sparks away from open battery cells:
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries.

NOTE

Before performing battery maintenance, remove the battery cover.



▼Battery Maintenance

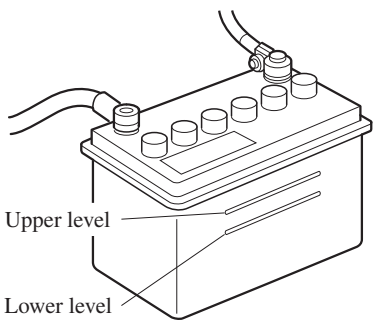


To get the best service from a battery:

- Keep it securely mounted.
- Keep the top clean and dry.
- Keep terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse off spilled electrolyte immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle will not be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery leads and charge the battery every six weeks.

▼Inspecting Electrolyte Level

A low level of electrolyte fluid will cause the battery to discharge quickly.



Inspect the electrolyte level at least once a week. If it is low, remove the caps and add enough distilled water to bring the level between the upper and lower level (illustration).

Do not overfill.
Examine the specific gravity of the electrolyte with a hydrometer, especially during cold weather. If it is low, recharge the battery.

▼Battery Recharging

NOTE

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- To disconnect the battery, remove the negative lead first. Install it last when connecting the battery.
- Be sure to remove the caps before recharging the battery.
- **(With i-stop system)**
  Do not quick-charge the battery.

- If the battery quickly discharges because, for example, the lights were left on too long with the engine off, slow-charge it as required by battery size and charger capacity.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it as required by battery size and charger capacity.

▼Battery Replacement

Contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer for a battery replacement purchase.

Key Battery Replacement

If the buttons on the transmitter are inoperable and the operation indicator light does not flash, the battery may be dead.
Replace with a new battery before the transmitter becomes unusable.

⚠ CAUTION

- Make sure the battery is installed correctly. Battery leakage could occur if it is not installed correctly.
- When replacing the battery, be careful not to touch any of the internal circuitry and electrical terminals, bend the electrical terminals, or get dirt in the transmitter as the transmitter could be damaged.
- There is the danger of explosion if the battery is not correctly replaced.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the following instructions.
  - Insulate the plus and minus terminals of the battery using cellophane or equivalent tape.
  - Never disassemble.
  - Never throw the battery into fire or water.
  - Never deform or crush.
- Replace only with the same type battery (CR2025 or equivalent).

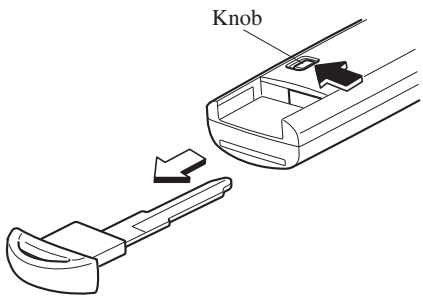
The following conditions indicate that the battery power is low:

- The KEY indicator light (green) flashes in the instrument cluster for about 30 seconds after the engine is turned off.
- The system does not operate and the operation indicator light on the transmitter does not flash when the buttons are pressed.
- The system's operational range is reduced.

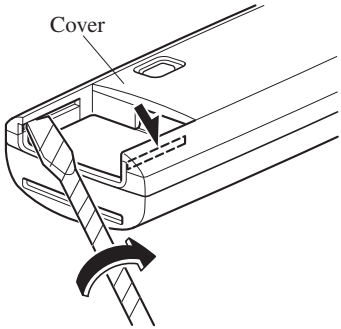
Replacing the battery at an Authorised Mazda Repairer is recommended to prevent damage to the key. If replacing the battery by yourself, follow the instruction.

Replacing the key battery

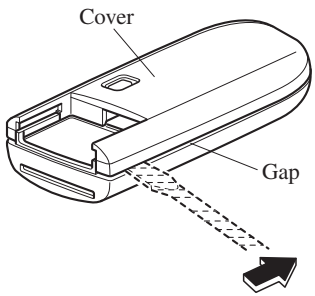
1. Press the knob and pull out the auxiliary key.



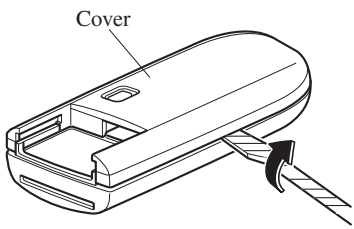
2. Twist a tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver in the direction of the arrow and open the cover slightly.



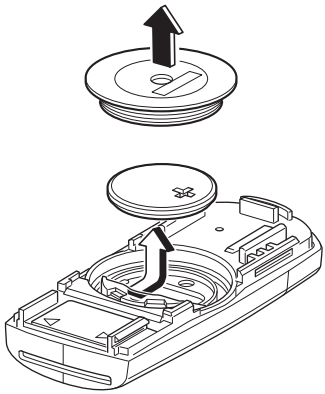
3. Insert the tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver into the gap and slide it in the direction of the arrow.



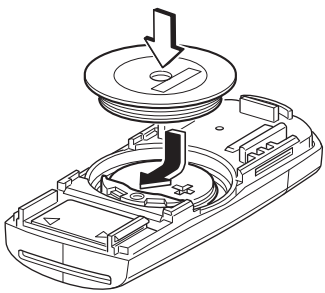
4. Twist the flathead screwdriver in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.



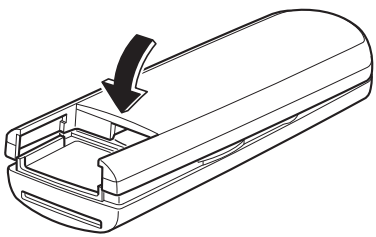
5. Remove the battery cap, then remove the battery.



6. Insert a new battery with the positive pole facing up, and then cover the battery with the battery cap.



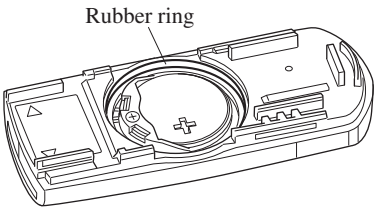
7. Close the cover.



8. Reinsert the auxiliary key.

⚠ CAUTION

- Be careful not to allow the rubber ring shown in the figure to be scratched or damaged.
- If the rubber ring detaches, reattach it before inserting a new battery.



Tyres

For reasons of proper performance, safety, and better fuel economy, always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the recommended load limits and weight distribution.

⚠ *WARNING*

<u>Using Different Tyre Types:</u>
Driving your vehicle with different types of tyres is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking; leading to loss of control.
Except for the limited use of the temporary spare tyre, use only the same type tyres (radial, bias-belted, bias-type) on all four wheels.

<u>Using Wrong-Sized Tyres:</u>
Using any other tyre size than what is specified for the vehicle (page 9-8) is dangerous. It could seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, tyre clearance, and speedometer calibration. This could cause you to have an accident. Use only tyres that are the correct size specified for the vehicle.

▼Tyre Inflation Pressure

⚠ *WARNING*

Always inflate the tyres to the correct pressure:
Overinflation or underinflation of tyres is dangerous. Adverse handling or unexpected tyre failure could result in a serious accident.
Refer to Tyres on page 9-8.

Use only a Mazda-genuine tyre valve cap:
Use of a non-genuine part is dangerous as the correct tyre air pressure cannot be maintained if the tyre valve becomes damaged. If the vehicle is driven under this condition, the tyre air pressure will decrease which could result in a serious accident. Do not use any part for the tyre valve cap that is not a Mazda-genuine part.

Inspect all tyre pressures monthly when the tyres are cold. Maintain recommended pressures for the best ride, handling, and minimum tyre wear.
Refer to the specification charts (page 9-8).
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-143.

NOTE

- Always check tyre pressure when tyres are cold.
- Warm tyres normally exceed recommended pressures. Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure.
- Underinflation can cause reduced fuel economy, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and poor sealing of the tyre bead, which will deform the wheel and cause separation of tyre from rim.
- Overinflation can produce a harsh ride, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.
  Keep your tyre pressure at the correct levels. If one frequently needs inflating, have it inspected.

▼Tyre Rotation

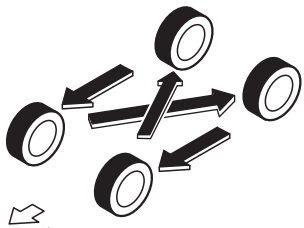
⚠ *WARNING*

Rotate tyres periodically:
Irregular tyre wear is dangerous. To equalize tread wear for maintaining good performance in handling and braking, rotate the tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles), or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, inspect them for correct balance.

NOTE

Because your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tyre, you cannot do a tyre rotation safely with the jack that comes with your vehicle. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform tyre rotation.



Do not include (TEMPORARY USE ONLY) spare tyre in rotation.

Also, inspect them for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by one or a combination of the following:

- Incorrect tyre pressure
- Improper wheel alignment
- Out-of-balance wheel
- Severe braking

After rotation, inflate all tyre pressures to specification (page 9-8) and inspect the wheel nuts for tightness.
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-143.

⚠ CAUTION

Rotate unidirectional tyres and radial tyres that have an asymmetrical tread pattern or studs only from front to rear, not from side to side. Tyre performance will be reduced if rotated from side to side.
(With limited-slip differential)
Do not use the following:

- Tyres not of the designated size
- Tyres of different sizes or types at the same time
- Tyres not sufficiently inflated

If these instructions are not followed, the rotation of the left and right wheels will be different and will thus apply a constant load on the limited-slip differential.
This will cause a malfunction.

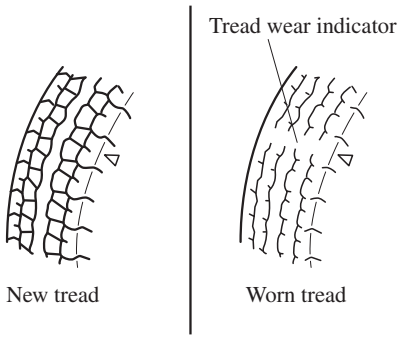
▼Replacing a Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Always use tyres that are in good condition:
Driving with worn tyres is dangerous. Reduced braking, steering, and traction could result in an accident.

Replace all four tyres at the same time:
Replacing just one tyre is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking resulting in loss of vehicle control. Mazda strongly recommends that you replace all four tyres at the same time.

If a tyre wears evenly, a wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread.
Replace the tyre when this happens.



You should replace the tyre before the band crosses the entire tread.
(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-143.

▼Replacing a Wheel

⚠ *WARNING*

Always use wheels of the correct size on your vehicle:
Using a wrong-sized wheel is dangerous. Braking and handling could be affected, leading to loss of control and an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

A wrong-sized wheel may adversely affect:

- Tyre fit
- Wheel and bearing life
- Ground clearance
- Snow-chain clearance
- Speedometer calibration
- Headlight aim
- Bumper height
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System*

NOTE

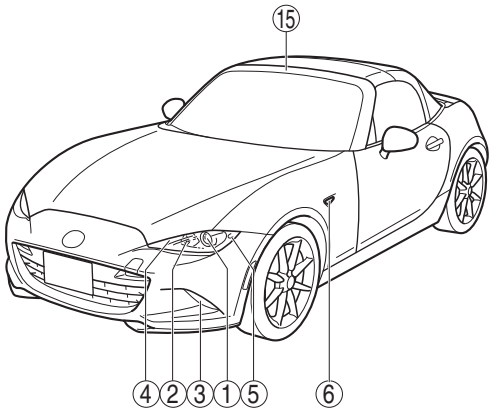
- When replacing a wheel, make sure the new one is the same as the original factory wheel in diameter, rim width, and offset (inset/outset).
- For details, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

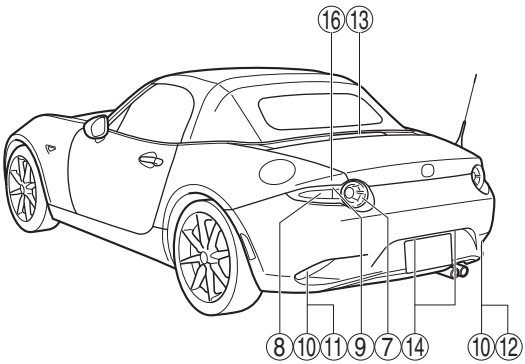
Proper tyre balancing provides the best riding comfort and helps reduce tread wear. Out-of-balance tyres can cause vibration and uneven wear, such as cupping and flat spots.

*Some models.

MEMO

Light Bulbs





① Headlights (Low beam)
② Headlights (High beam)
③ Running lights
④ Position lights
⑤ Front direction indicator lights
⑥ Side direction indicator lights
⑦ Brake lights
⑧ Rear direction indicator lights
⑨ Tail lights
⑩ Reverse lights
⑪ Rear fog light (Left-hand drive model)*
⑫ Rear fog light (Right-hand drive model)*
⑬ High-mount brake light
⑭ Number plate lights
⑮ Overhead light
⑯ Boot light

*Some models.

⚠ CAUTION

When removing the lens or lamp unit using a flathead screwdriver, make sure that the flathead screwdriver does not contact the interior terminal. If the flathead screwdriver contacts the terminal, a short circuit may occur.

NOTE

- To replace the bulb, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.

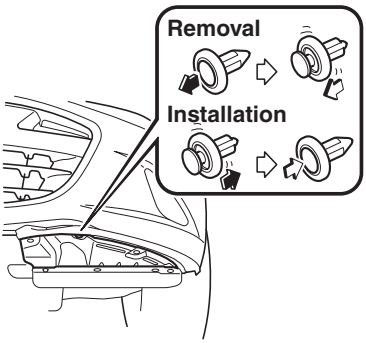
▼Replacing Exterior Light Bulbs

Headlights, Running lights (LED type), Position lights, High-mount brake light, Brake lights, Tail lights

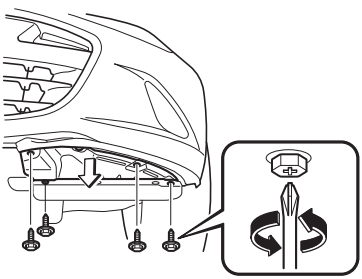
The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. We recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer when the replacement is necessary.

Running lights (Bulb type)

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers.

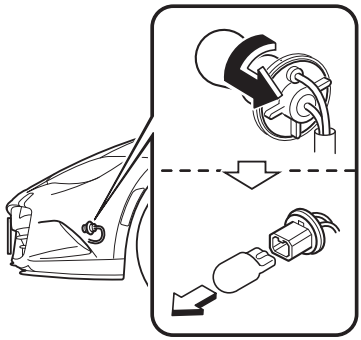


3. Turn the screw anticlockwise and remove it, and then partially peel back the mudguard.



4. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.

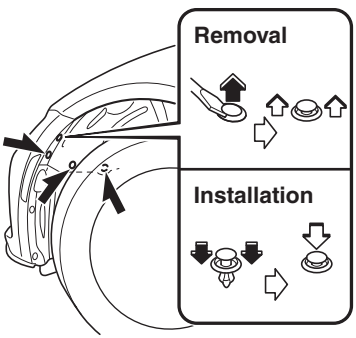
5. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



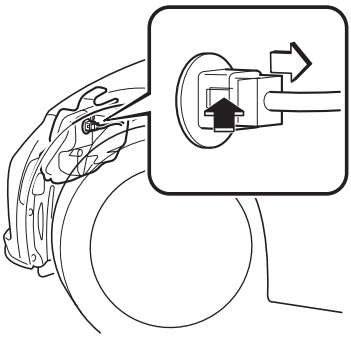
6. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Front direction indicator lights

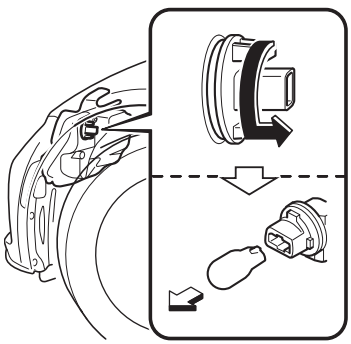
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. If you are changing the right bulb, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and turn off engine. If you are changing the left bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left.
3. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers, and then partially peel back the mudguard.



4. Disconnect the connector from the unit by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector rearward.



5. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
6. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

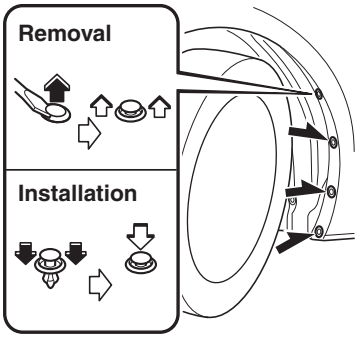


7. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

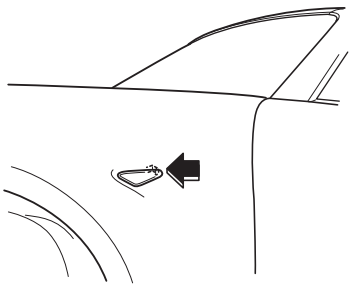
Side direction indicator lights

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. If you are changing the right bulb, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and turn off engine. If you are changing the left bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left.

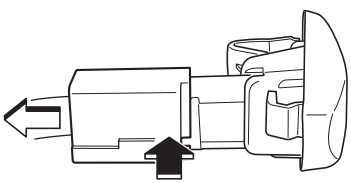
3. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers, and then partially peel back the mudguard.



4. Remove the unit by pressing the tab on the unit with your finger and pulling the unit forward.



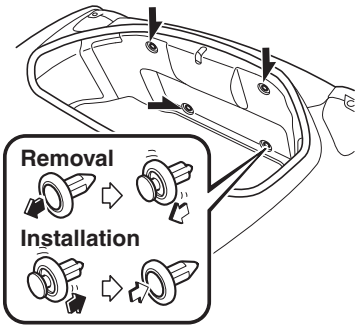
5. Detach the electrical connector from the unit by pulling it to the rear.



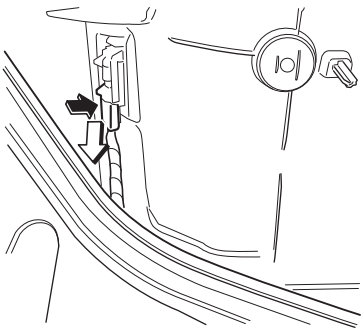
6. Install the new side direction indicator unit in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Rear direction indicator lights

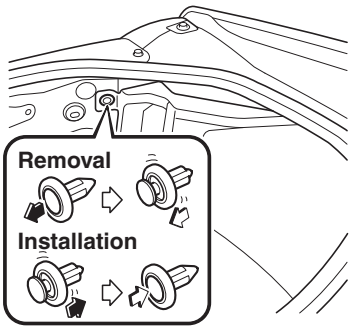
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers and the boot end trim.



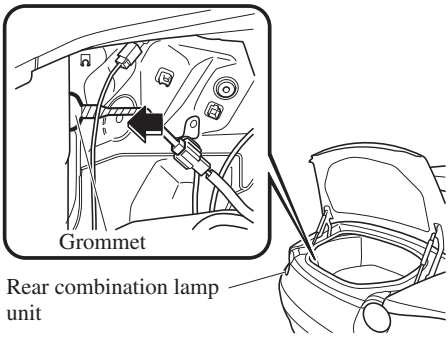
3. Disconnect the connector from the unit by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector downward.

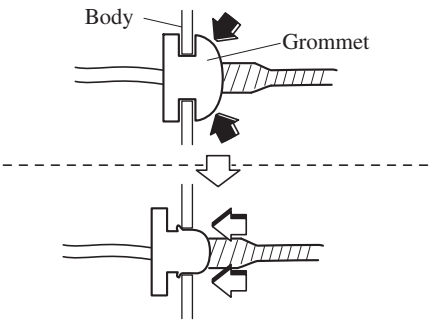


4. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers, and then partially peel back the boot side trim.

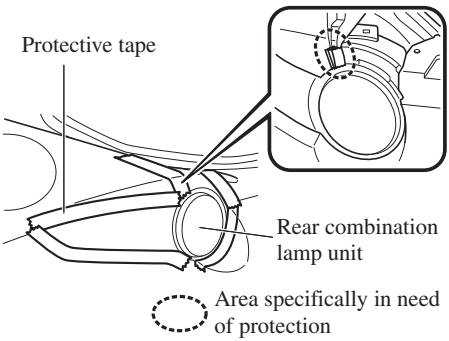


5. To provide a hole for inserting a finger to remove the rear combination lamp unit later in the procedure, pinch the top and bottom of the grommet shown in the figure and press it out of the hole in the direction of the rear combination lamp unit.





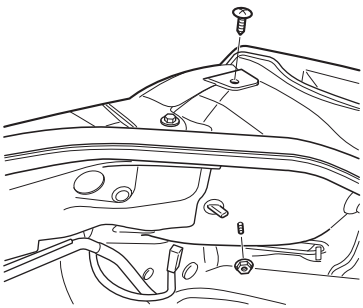
6. Apply protective tape as shown in the figure. Otherwise, the rear combination lamp unit will contact the body and may scratch or damage it.
   Always apply three layers of protective tape to the area indicated in the figure.



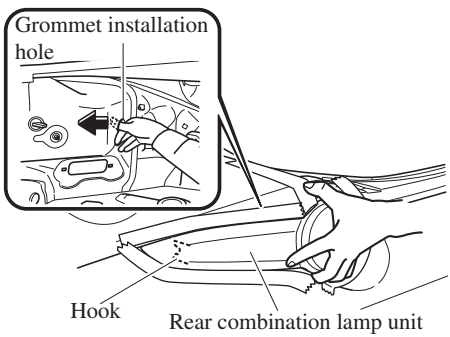
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use tape with strong adhesive strength. Otherwise, the vehicle paint may peel off.
- Always apply three layers of protective tape to the area indicated in the figure. Otherwise, the body may become scratched or damaged when pulling out the rear combination lamp unit.

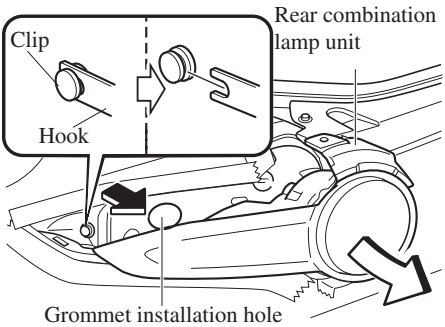
7. Remove the screw and nut.



8. To remove the rear combination lamp unit, insert your finger from inside the boot and into the hole from which the grommet was removed in Step 5, and while holding the lamp lens (round part) of the rear combination lamp with your hand, press the rear combination lamp unit until the hook detaches from the clip.



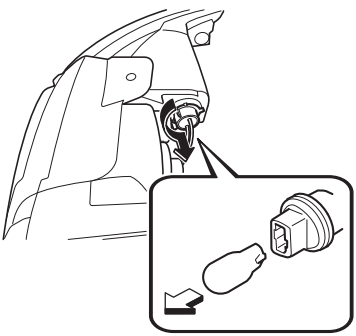
9. After the hook is detached, pull out the rear combination lamp unit in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



⚠ CAUTION

Carefully pull out the rear combination lamp unit when removing it from the body.
The wiring may become damaged if the rear combination lamp unit is forcefully pulled out.

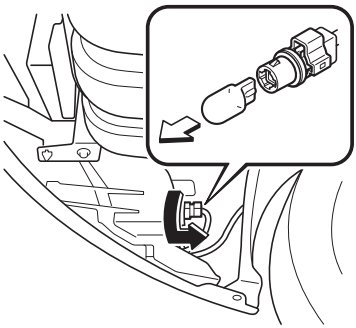
10. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
11. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



12. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Reverse lights, Rear fog light*

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

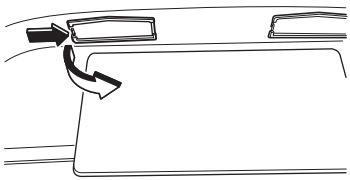


4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

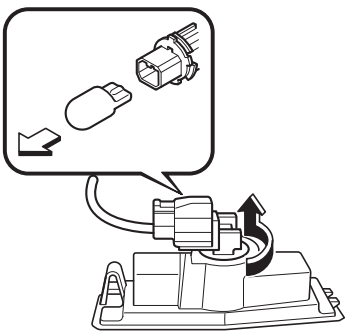
*Some models.

Number plate lights

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Remove the unit by pressing the tab on the unit with your finger and pulling the unit downward.



3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

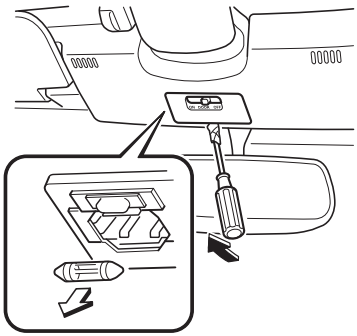


5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

▼Replacing Interior Light Bulbs

Overhead light

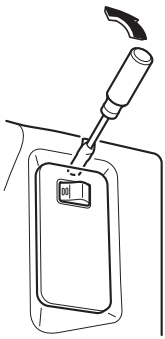
1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with the flathead screwdriver.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



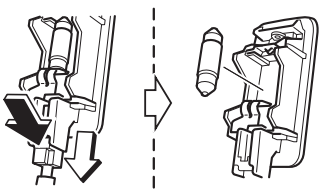
3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Boot light

1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with the flathead screwdriver.



2. Disconnect the connector from the unit.
3. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Fuses

Your vehicle's electrical system is protected by fuses.

If any lights, accessories, or controls do not work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector. If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted.

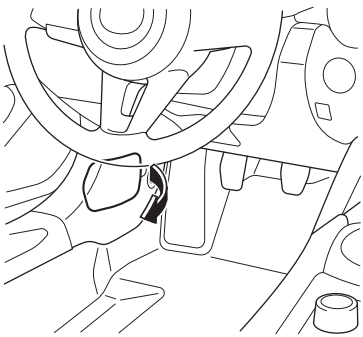
If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

▼Fuse Replacement

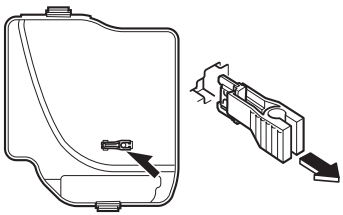
Replacing the fuses on the vehicle's left side

If the electrical system does not work, first inspect the fuses on the vehicle's left side.

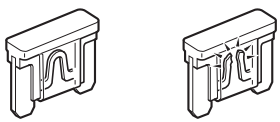
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.



3. Pull the fuse straight out with the fuse puller provided on the fuse block located in the engine compartment.



4. Inspect the fuse and replace it if it is blown.



Normal Blown

5. Insert a new fuse of the same amperage rating, and make sure it fits tightly. If it does not fit tightly, have an expert install it. We recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
   If you have no spare fuses, borrow one of the same rating from a circuit not essential to vehicle operation, such as the AUDIO or OUTLET circuit.

⚠ CAUTION

Always replace a fuse with a genuine Mazda fuse or equivalent of the same rating. Otherwise you may damage the electric system.

6. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

Replacing the fuses under the bonnet

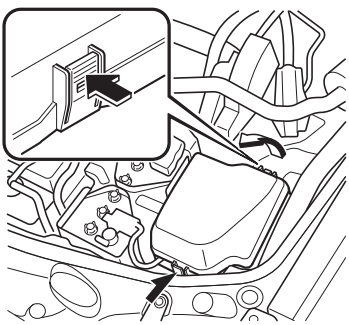
If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses in the cabin are normal, inspect the fuse block under the bonnet. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced. Follow these steps:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Remove the fuse block cover.

NOTE

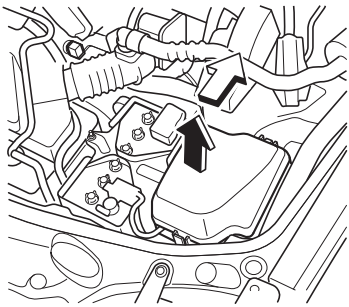
If the lock is forcefully opened, the fuse block cover may come in contact with the frame when it is removed and become scratched.
When removing the cover, remove it slowly according to the following procedure.

1. Disengage the rear lock by pressing down on the front tab with your fingers.
2. Remove the front tab while slightly lifting the front of the cover.

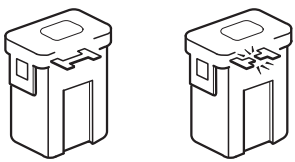


NOTE

3. Remove the cover while lifting it and sliding it to the rear.



3. If any fuse but the MAIN fuse is blown, replace it with a new one **of the same amperage rating**.



Normal Blown

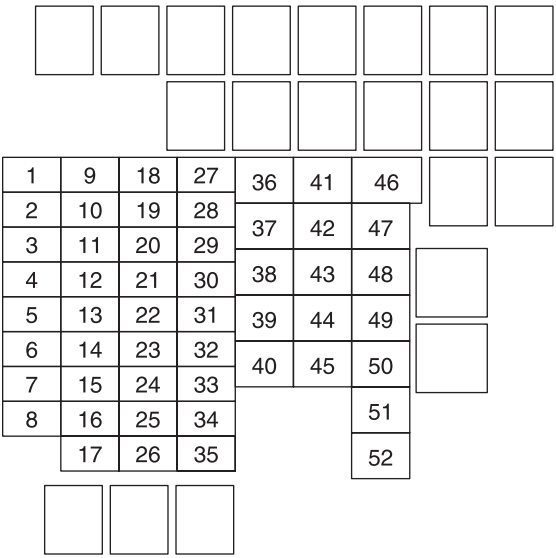
⚠ *WARNING*

Do not replace the main fuse and multiplex slow blow fuse by yourself. Have an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform the replacement:
Replacing these fuses by yourself is dangerous because they are high current fuses. Incorrect replacement could cause an electrical shock or a short circuit resulting in a fire.

4. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

▼Fuse Panel Description

Fuse block (Engine compartment)

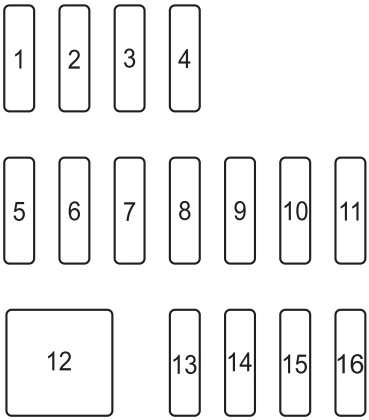


DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	ENG IG3	5 A	—
2	ENG IG2	5 A	—
3	HORN2	7.5 A	Horn
4	C/U IG1	15 A	For protection of various circuits
5	ENG IG1	7.5 A	Engine control system
6	—	—	—
7	INTERIOR	15 A	Overhead light
8	ENG+B	7.5 A	Engine control system
9	AUDIO2	15 A	Audio system
10	METER1	10 A	Instrument cluster
11	SRS1	7.5 A	Air bag
12	—	—	—
13	RADIO	7.5 A	Audio system
14	ENGINE3	20 A	Engine control system
15	ENGINE1	10 A	Engine control system
16	ENGINE2	15 A	Engine control system
17	AUDIO1	25 A	Audio system

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
18	A/C MAG	7.5 A	Air conditioner
19	AT PUMP H/L HI	20 A	Transmission control system*
20	AT	15 A	Transmission control system*
21	D LOCK	25 A	Power door locks
22	H/L RH	20 A	Headlight (RH)
23	ENG+B2	7.5 A	Engine control system
24	TAIL	20 A	Tail lights, Number plate lights, Position lights
25	DRL	15 A	—
26	ROOM	25 A	Overhead light
27	FOG	15 A	—
28	H/CLEAN	20 A	Headlight washer*
29	STOP	10 A	Brake lights, Rear fog light*
30	HORN	15 A	Horn
31	H/L LH	20 A	Headlight (LH)
32	ABS/DSC S	30 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
33	HAZARD	15 A	Hazard warning flashers, Direction indicator lights
34	FUEL PUMP	15 A	Fuel system
35	ENG+B3	5 A	—
36	WIPER	20 A	Windscreen wipers
37	CABIN+B	50 A	For protection of various circuits
38	—	—	—
39	—	—	—
40	ABS/DSC M	50 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
41	EVVT A/R PUMP	20 A	Engine control system
42	EVPS	30 A	Brake control system
43	FAN1	30 A	Cooling fan
44	FAN2	40 A	—
45	ENG.MAIN	40 A	Engine control system
46	EPS	60 A	Power steering system
47	DEFOG	30 A	Rear window defogger
48	IG2	30 A	For protection of various circuits
49	INJECTOR	30 A	Engine control system
50	HEATER	40 A	Air conditioner
51	—	—	—
52	—	—	—

*Some models.

Fuse block (Left side)



DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	RHT R	30 A	Retractable fastback (RH)*
2	RHT L	30 A	Retractable fastback (LH)*
3	—	—	—
4	—	—	—
5	F.OUTLET	15 A	Accessory sockets
6	—	—	—
7	AT IND	7.5 A	AT shift indicator*
8	MIRROR	7.5 A	Power control mirror
9	R_DECK R	30 A	Retractable fastback (RH)*
10	R_DECK L	30 A	Retractable fastback (LH)*
11	F.WASHER	15 A	Windscreen washer
12	P.WINDOW	30 A	Power windows
13	—	—	—
14	SRS2/ESCL	15 A	Electronic steering lock
15	SEAT WARM	20 A	Seat warmer*
16	M.DEF	7.5 A	Mirror defogger*

*Some models.

Exterior Care

The paintwork on your Mazda represents the latest technical developments in composition and methods of application.

Environmental hazards, however, can harm the paint's protective properties, if proper care is not taken.

Here are some examples of possible damage, with tips on how to prevent them.

Etching Caused by Acid Rain or Industrial Fallout

Occurrence

Industrial pollutants and vehicle emissions drift into the air and mix with rain or dew to form acids. These acids can settle on a vehicle's finish. As the water evaporates, the acid becomes concentrated and can damage the finish.
And the longer the acid remains on the surface, the greater the chance is for damage.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you suspect that acid rain has settled on your vehicle's finish.

Damage Caused by Bird Dropping, Insects, or Tree Sap

Occurrence

Bird droppings contain acids. If these are not removed they can eat away the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork.

When insects stick to the paint surface and decompose, corrosive compounds form. These can erode the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork if they are not removed.

Tree sap will harden and adhere permanently to the paint finish. If you scratch the sap off while it is hard, some vehicle paint could come off with it.

Prevention

It is necessary to have your Mazda washed and waxed to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. This should be done as soon as possible.

Bird droppings can be removed with a soft sponge and water. If you are travelling and these are not available, a moistened tissue may also take care of the problem. The cleaned area should be waxed according to the instructions in this section.
Insects and tree sap are best removed with a soft sponge and water or a commercially available chemical cleaner.

Another method is to cover the affected area with dampened newspaper for one to two hours. After removing the newspaper, rinse off the loosened debris with water.

Water Marks

Occurrence

Rain, fog, dew, and even tap water can contain harmful minerals such as salt and lime. If moisture containing these minerals settles on the vehicle and evaporates, the minerals will concentrate and harden to form white rings. The rings can damage your vehicle's finish.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you find water marks on your vehicle's finish.

Paint Chipping

Occurrence

Paint chipping occurs when gravel thrown in the air by another vehicle's tyres hits your vehicle.

How to avoid paint chipping

Keeping a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead reduces the chances of having your paint chipped by flying gravel.

NOTE

- The paint chipping zone varies with the speed of the vehicle. For example, when travelling at 90 km/h (56 mph), the paint chipping zone is 50 m (164 ft).
- In low temperatures a vehicle's finish hardens. This increases the chance of paint chipping.
- Chipped paint can lead to rust forming on your Mazda. Before this happens, repair the damage by using Mazda touch-up paint according to the instructions in this section. Failure to repair the affected area could lead to serious rusting and expensive repairs.

Follow **all** label and container directions when using a chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warnings and cautions.

▼Maintaining the Finish

Washing

⚠ CAUTION

- When the wiper lever is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:
  - If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.
  - If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object from either outside or inside the vehicle.

  Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically.
  If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely (when it is most likely that the engine is left running) this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow.
- Do not spray water in the engine compartment. Otherwise, it could result in engine-starting problems or damage to electrical parts.
- When washing and waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply excessive force to any single area of the vehicle bonnet. Otherwise, you could dent the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use automatic car washing machines and car washing devices using high water pressure.
- Make sure that the fuel flap is closed and lock the doors. Otherwise, the fuel flap may be forcefully opened by water pressure causing damage to the vehicle or fuel flap.

To help protect the finish from rust and deterioration, wash your Mazda thoroughly and frequently, at least once a month, with lukewarm or cold water.

If the vehicle is washed improperly, the paint surface could be scratched. Here are some examples of how scratching could occur.

Scratches occur on the paint surface when:

- The vehicle is washed without first rinsing off dirt and other foreign matter.
- The vehicle is washed with a rough, dry, or dirty cloth.
- The vehicle is washed at a car wash that uses brushes that are dirty or too stiff.
- Cleansers or wax containing abrasives are used.

NOTE

- Mazda is not responsible for scratches caused by automatic car washes or improper washing.
- Scratches are more noticeable on vehicles with darker paint finishes.

Appearance Care

To minimize scratches on the vehicle's paint finish:

- Rinse off any dirt or other foreign matter using lukewarm or cold water before washing.
- Use plenty of lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth when washing the vehicle. Do not use a nylon cloth.
- Rub gently when washing or drying the vehicle.
- Take your vehicle only to a car wash that keeps its brushes well maintained.
- Do not use abrasive cleansers or wax that contain abrasives.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may damage the protective coating; also, cleaners and detergents may discolour or deteriorate the paint.

Pay special attention to removing salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign material from the underside of the wings, and make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial fallout, and similar deposits can damage the finish if not removed immediately. When prompt washing with plain water is ineffective, use a mild soap made for use on vehicles.

Thoroughly rinse off all soap with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, dry it with a clean chamois to prevent water spots from forming.

⚠ WARNING

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:
Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

Waxing

Your vehicle needs to be waxed when water no longer beads on the finish. Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing it. In addition to the vehicle body, wax the metal trim to maintain its lustre.

1. Use wax which contains no abrasives. Waxes containing abrasive will remove paint and could damage bright metal parts.
2. Use a good grade of natural wax for metallic, mica, and solid colours.
3. When waxing, coat evenly with the sponge supplied or a soft cloth.
4. Wipe off the wax with a soft cloth.

NOTE

A spot remover to remove oil, tar, and similar materials will usually also take off the wax. Rewax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not need it.

▼Paint Damage Touch-up

Repair damage to the finish caused by stone chipping, damage during parking etc., by using Mazda touch-up paint before rust begins to form. First, remove the dirt and grease with a clean soft cloth.

If rust has already begun to form:

1. Remove rust completely with sandpaper.
2. Wipe with a clean soft cloth.
3. Apply rust preventive primer to the area.
4. After drying it completely, apply a suitable top coat material to the area.

Of course there will be no problem if you assign the work to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Cavity Protection

Cavities are treated for protection at the factory, but additional protective treatment after the vehicle has been put into use will extend the life of the body.
We recommend that you consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer concerning this additional precaution.

▼Bright-Metal Maintenance

- Use tar remover to remove road tar and insects. Never do this with a knife or similar tool.
- To prevent corrosion on bright-metal surfaces, apply wax or chrome preservative and rub it to a high lustre.
- During cold weather or in coastal areas, cover bright-metal parts with a coating of wax or preservative heavier than usual. It would also help to coat them with noncorrosive petroleum jelly or some other protective compound.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.

▼Undercoating

This special coating is applied to the critical parts of the underside to protect vehicles from damage caused by chemicals or stones. This coating is liable to be damaged with time. Check this coating periodically.

Should repairs be necessary, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. They are well informed on how repairs should be made.

▼Aluminium Wheel Maintenance

A protective coating is provided over the aluminium wheels. Special care is needed to protect this coating.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use any detergent other than mild detergent. Before using any detergent, verify the ingredients. Otherwise, the product could discolour or stain the aluminium wheels.

NOTE

- Do not use a wire brush or any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, or solvent on aluminium wheels. They may damage the coating.
- Always use a sponge or soft cloth to clean the wheels.
  Rinse the wheels thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on dusty or salted roads to help prevent corrosion.

▼Convertible Top (Soft Top) Maintenance

The convertible top is made of a special high-grade material, but if it's not taken good care of, hardening, staining, and loss of lustre will result. Maintain it under these guidelines.

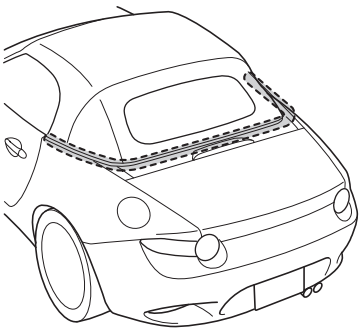
Washing

Do not wait until the convertible top gets really dirty before cleaning it. Dirt that's there too long will cause deterioration.

1. Before washing, remove dust and coarse particulate with a soft brush.
2. Gently clean the convertible top with a synthetic neutral detergent, lots of water, and a soft brush.
3. Rinse it thoroughly with clean water to remove all the soap.
4. Wipe it as dry as you can before the water dries on it.
5. Then allow it to dry completely before lowering it.

⚠ CAUTION

- Automatic and high-pressure car washes are harmful to a convertible top. Avoid them.
- Do not spray water directly on the area where the window glass and the convertible top meet. This would probably cause water to enter the cabin.
- Do not spray water directly on the seam area of the body and the convertible top as it could result in water penetrating the cabin and boot.

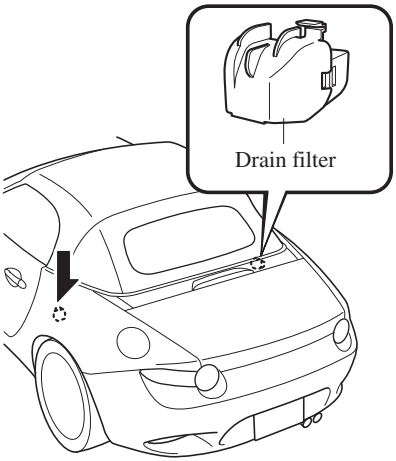


- Some leather treatment products can ruin the convertible top's gloss. Be careful of the one you choose.
- Test on an inconspicuous, small corner of the convertible top if you are not sure.
- Do not wipe the convertible top using alcohol, chlorine bleach, or organic solvents such as thinner, benzene, or petrol. Otherwise, they may cause discolouration or stains.
- Do not get any car wax on the convertible top.
  If you do, remove it with a good leather cleaner or mild detergent (about 5% solution).

⚠ CAUTION

- Too much treatment on the convertible top can be as damaging as too little. Follow the manufacturer's directions.
  Do not overdo it!
- Let the convertible top dry completely before lowering after applying treatment or dressing.

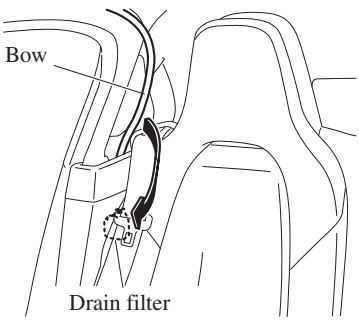
Drain filter cleaning procedure



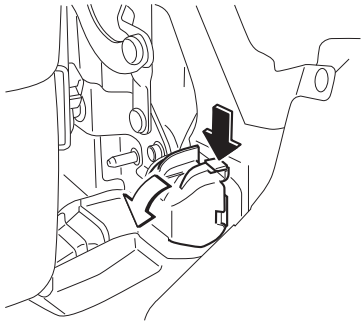
NOTE

If leaves or other matter block the drain filter, water may enter the vehicle. Clean the drain filter at least once a year.

1. Check the position of the drain filter with your hand from behind the bow.



2. Remove the drain filter while pressing the tab.



3. Remove leaves and other matter accumulated in the drain filter.
4. Reinstall the drain filter in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

⚠ CAUTION

When installing the drain filter, make sure that the drain filter is securely attached to its designated position by pushing it until the tab locks. Water may enter the vehicle if the drain filter is not secured to its designated position.

▼Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback) Maintenance

Washing

To help protect the retractable fastback's finish, use a soft cloth or sponge to wash it.
Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial fallout, and similar deposits can damage the finish if they are not removed immediately. When prompt washing with plain water is ineffective use a mild soap made for use on vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray water directly on the area where the window glass and the retractable fastback meet. This would probably cause water to enter the cabin.
- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents, or hot water, and do not wash the retractable fastback in direct sunlight or when the surface is warm.

Thoroughly rinse with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

Waxing

Wax the retractable fastback when water no longer beads on the paint. Always wash and dry it before waxing.

⚠ CAUTION

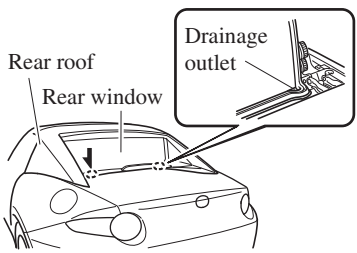
- Wiping off dust or dirt with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use abrasive wax. This may damage the protective coating and discolour or deteriorate the paint.

NOTE

A spot remover to remove oil, tar, and similar materials will usually also take off the wax. Rewax these areas.

Drainage outlet cleaning procedure

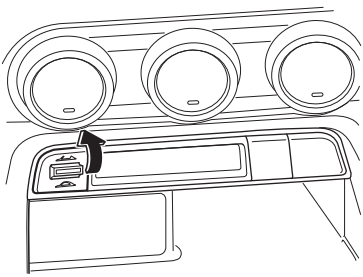
There are drainage outlets on the left and right of the lower side of the rear window.



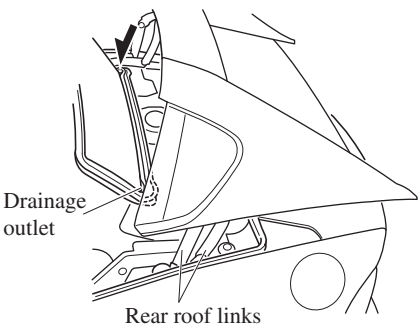
NOTE

If leaves or other foreign matter block the drainage outlets, water may enter the cabin. Clean the drainage outlets at least once a year.

1. Continue pressing the retractable fastback switch in the open direction until the rear roof is raised up from the fully closed position.
   Refer to Opening the Roof on page 3-51.



2. Remove your finger from the retractable fastback switch after the rear roof is raised up.
3. Make sure the drainage outlets are visible.



4. Switch the ignition OFF.

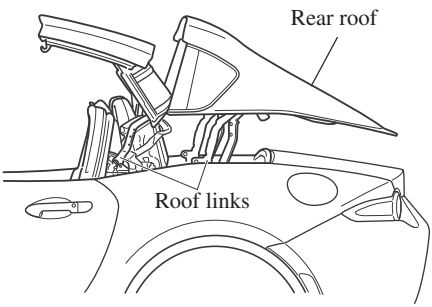
⚠ *WARNING*

Verify that the ignition is switched off:
Closing the roof with the ignition not switched off is dangerous as the motors could turn on suddenly and cause injury resulting from hands or fingers being pinched in the mechanism.

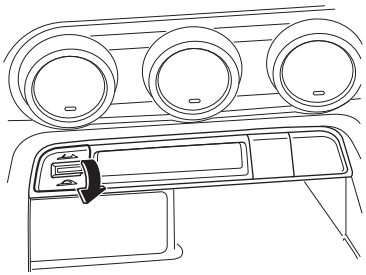
5. Remove leaves and other foreign matter accumulated in the drainage outlet.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the drainage outlets, be careful not to touch the roof links or the framework of the rear roof. Otherwise, you could get injured.



6. After cleaning is finished, continue pressing the retractable fastback switch in the close direction to close the rear roof.
   Refer to Closing the Roof on page 3-52.



▼Plastic Part Maintenance

- When cleaning the plastic lenses of the lights, do not use petrol, paraffin, rectified spirit, paint, thinner, highly acidic detergents, or strongly alkaline detergents. Otherwise, these chemical agents can discolour or damage the surfaces resulting in a significant loss in functionality. If plastic parts become inadvertently exposed to any of these chemical agents, flush with water immediately.
- If plastic parts such as the bumpers become inadvertently exposed to chemical agents or fluids such as petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid, it could cause discolouration, staining, or paint peeling. Wipe off any such chemical agents or fluids using a soft cloth immediately.
- High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of high pressure car washer device. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle or aimed at one area for an extended period of time, it could deform plastic parts or damage the paint.
- Do not use wax containing compounds (polish). Otherwise, it could result in paint damage.
- In addition, do not use an electrical or air tool to apply wax. Otherwise, the frictional heat generated could result in deformation of plastic parts or paint damage.

Interior Care

⚠ WARNING

Do not spray water into the vehicle cabin:
Spraying water into the vehicle cabin is dangerous as electrical devices such as the audio and switches could get wet resulting in a malfunction or vehicle fire.

NOTE

- Do not wipe the interior using alcohol, chlorine bleach, or organic solvents such as thinner, benzene, and petrol. Otherwise, it may cause discolouration or stains.
- Rubbing hard with a stiff brush or cloth may cause damage.

If the vehicle interior becomes soiled by any of the following, wipe it off immediately using a soft cloth.
Leaving it uncleaned could cause discolouration, stains, cracks, or peeling of the coating, and it will make it hard to wipe off later.

- Beverage or fragrance
- Grease or oil
- Soiling

▼Seat Belt Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
3. Before retracting seat belts which have been pulled out for cleaning, dry them off thoroughly and make sure there is no remaining moisture on them.

⚠ WARNING

If a seat belt appears frayed or has abrasions, have it replaced by an Authorised Mazda Repairer:
If a seat belts is used under such a condition, it cannot function at its full capacity which could result in serious injury or death.

Use a mild detergent to remove soiling from a seat belt:
If organic solvents are used for cleaning the seat belts or they become stained or bleached, there is the possibility of them becoming weakened and as a result, they may not function at their full capacity which could cause serious injury or death.

NOTE

Clean seat belts diligently if they get dirty. Leaving them uncleaned will make it difficult to clean them later, and it may affect the smooth retracting of the seat belt.

▼Vinyl Upholstery Maintenance

Remove dust and dirt from the vinyl upholstery using a brush or vacuum. Remove soiling from vinyl upholstery using a leather and vinyl upholstery cleaner.

▼Upholstery Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

NOTE

Rubbing the interior side of the soft top vigorously with a stiff brush or cloth may cause damage.

▼Leather Upholstery Maintenance*

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe off the soiled area with a soft cloth and a suitable, special cleaner or a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (about 5%) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
4. Remove moisture with a dry, soft cloth and allow the leather to further dry in a well-ventilated, shaded area. If the leather gets wet such as from rain, remove the moisture and dry it as soon as possible.

NOTE

- Because genuine leather is a natural material, its surface is not uniform and it may have natural scars, scratches, and wrinkles.
- To maintain the quality for as long as possible, periodical maintenance, about twice a year, is recommended.
- If the leather upholstery comes into contact with any of the following, clean it immediately.
  Leaving it uncleaned could cause premature wear, mold, or stains.
  - Sand or dirt
  - Grease or oil, such as hand cream
  - Alcohol, such as in cosmetic or hair dressing items
- If the leather upholstery gets wet, promptly remove moisture with a dry cloth. Remaining moisture on the surface may cause deterioration such as hardening and shrinkage.
- Exposure to direct sunlight for long periods may cause deterioration and shrinkage. When parking the car under direct sunlight for long periods, shade the interior using sunshades.
- Do not leave vinyl products on the leather upholstery for long periods. They may affect the leather quality and colouring. If the cabin temperature becomes hot, the vinyl may deteriorate and adhere to the genuine leather.

*Some models.

▼Plastic Part Maintenance

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use polishing agents.
Depending on the product ingredients, they could cause discolouration, stains, cracks or peeling of the coating.

▼Instrument Panel Top Maintenance

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

▼Panel Maintenance

If a panel becomes soiled, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in clean water and thoroughly wrung out.
If some areas require further cleaning, use the following procedure:

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5 %) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

NOTE

Be particularly careful when cleaning shiny surface panels and metallic parts such as plating as they can be scratched easily.

▼Cleaning the Window Interiors

If the windows become covered with an oily, greasy, or waxy film, clean them with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the container.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the window glass. It could damage the thermal filaments.
- When washing the inside of the window glass, use a soft cloth dampened in lukewarm water, gently wiping the thermal filaments.
  Use of glass cleaning products could damage the thermal filaments.

7 If Trouble Arises

Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

Parking in an Emergency 7-2
Parking in an Emergency 7-2
Roadside Emergency Triangle Retaining Strap* 7-2

Flat Tyre 7-3
Flat Tyre* 7-3
Tool Storage 7-5
Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit* 7-7
Changing a Tyre 7-14

Battery Runs Out 7-20
Jump-Starting 7-20

Emergency Starting 7-23
Starting a Flooded Engine 7-23
Push-Starting 7-23

Overheating 7-24
Overheating 7-24

When Fuel-Filler Flap Cannot be Opened 7-26
When Fuel-Filler Flap Cannot be Opened 7-26

Emergency Towing 7-27
Towing Description 7-27
Towing Hooks 7-28

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds 7-31
If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes 7-31
Message Indicated in Multi-information Display* 7-46
Message Indicated on Display* 7-47
Warning Sound is Activated 7-49

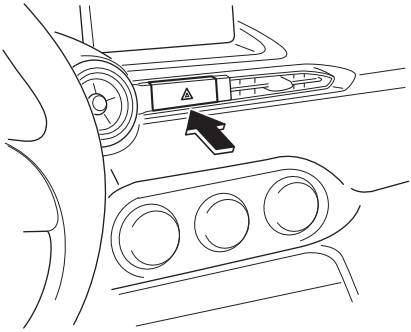
When Boot Lid Cannot be Opened 7-55
When Boot Lid Cannot be Opened 7-55

When the Roof Cannot be Closed.... 7-60
When the Roof Cannot be Closed 7-60

*Some models.

Parking in an Emergency

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.

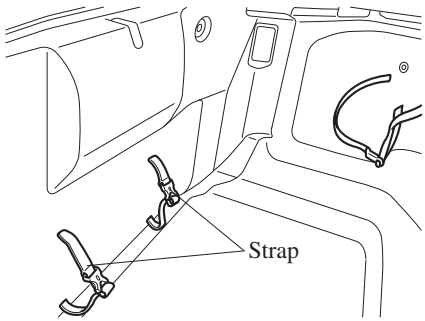
Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

NOTE

- The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.
- Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.

Roadside Emergency Triangle Retaining Strap*

Keep the roadside emergency triangle in the boot end trim and secure it with the strap.



*Some models.

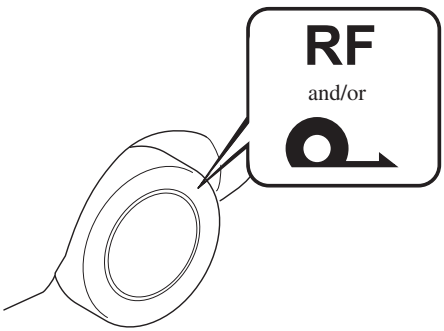
Flat Tyre*

Either run-flat tyres or conventional tyres are equipped on your Mazda depending on the specification, therefore the procedure for repairing a flat tyre differs depending on the type of tyre. Before driving, make sure which type of tyre is equipped on your Mazda. If you cannot identify your tyre type, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼How to Identify Your Tyre Type

Run-flat tyre

A run-flat tyre has a **RF** and/or indication on the side wall.



Conventional tyre

A conventional tyre does not have a **RF** and/or indication on the side wall.

▼Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres

⚠ *WARNING*

Have the tyres checked or perform the appropriate repair as soon as possible by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer:
When the flat tyre warning light illuminates or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.
When the flat tyre warning light illuminates or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking.

If a run-flat tyre is punctured, the FLAT TIRE warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster, and a beep sound is heard for about 30 seconds.

FLAT TIRE

NOTE

Until the flat tyre is changed, the beep sound is heard for about 30 seconds every time the ignition is switched ON.

*Some models.

Flat Tyre

Vehicles with run-flat tyres can be driven even with a punctured tyre under the following conditions.
Maximum vehicle speed with a punctured run-flat tyre: 80 km/h (49 mph)
Maximum driving distance with a punctured run-flat tyre: 80 km (49 miles)

⚠ CAUTION

The maximum driving distance may be shorter depending on the driving conditions.

If a run-flat tyre is punctured, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest Mazda Repairer and have the tyre changed.

NOTE

- A spare tyre or emergency flat tyre repair kit is not equipped on vehicles with run-flat tyres as standard.
- Replacing a punctured run-flat tyre with a new run-flat tyre is recommended.
- Do not use run-flat tyres and conventional tyres on the same vehicle.

▼Vehicle with Conventional Tyres

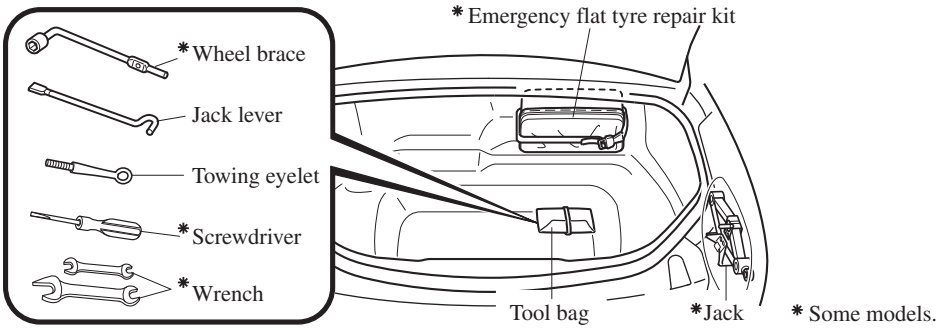
If the following occurs while driving, it could indicate a flat tyre.

- Steering becomes difficult.
- The vehicle begins to vibrate excessively.
- The vehicle pulls in one direction. If a conventional tyre is punctured, refer to “Tool Storage” (page 7-5) and “Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit” (page 7-7).

Tool Storage

NOTE
Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with a spare tyre, jack, and wheel brace. For details, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

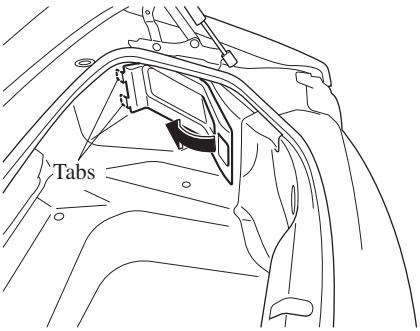
Tools are stored in the locations illustrated in the diagram.



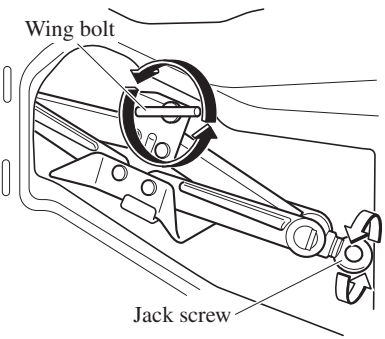
▼Jack*

To remove the jack

1. Remove the cover.

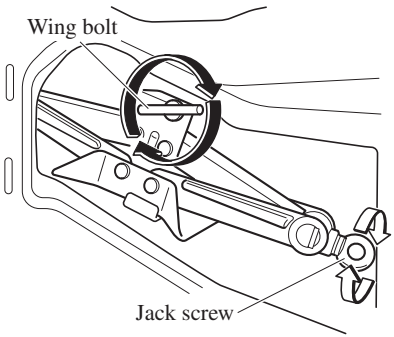


2. Turn the wing bolt and jack screw anticlockwise.



To secure the jack

1. Insert the wing bolt into the jack with the jack screw pointing back and turn the wing bolt clockwise to temporarily tighten it.
2. Turn the jack screw clockwise.



3. Turn the wing bolt completely to secure the jack.

NOTE
If the jack is not completely secured, it could rattle while driving. Make sure the jack screw is sufficiently tightened.

4. Insert the cover tabs and install the cover.

NOTE
Verify that the cover is securely installed.

Maintenance

- Always keep the jack clean.
- Make sure the moving parts are kept free from dirt or rust.
- Make sure the screw thread is adequately lubricated.

*Some models.

Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit*

The emergency flat tyre repair kit included with your Mazda is for a temporary repair of a slightly damaged flat tyre resulting from running over nails or similar sharp objects on the road surface.
Perform the emergency flat tyre repair without removing the nail or similar sharp object which punctured the tyre.

NOTE

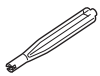
Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tyre. In the event of a flat tyre, use the emergency flat tyre repair kit to repair the tyre temporarily. When doing the repair, refer to the instructions included in the emergency flat tyre repair kit. If an emergency repair was performed on a flat tyre using the emergency flat tyre repair kit, have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer, repair or replace the tyre as soon as possible.

▼About the Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit

The emergency flat tyre repair kit includes the following items.

Tyre sealant

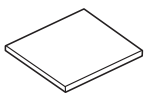
Compressor


Valve core tool

Injection hose

Spare valve core

Speed restriction sticker


Instructions

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not allow children to touch the tyre sealant:

- ***Ingestion of tyre sealant is dangerous. In the event tyre sealant is accidentally swallowed, drink large amounts of water immediately and seek medical assistance.***
- ***Tyre sealant that comes into contact with the eyes and skin is dangerous. If tyre sealant enters the eyes or contacts the skin, flush immediately with large amounts of water and seek medical assistance.***

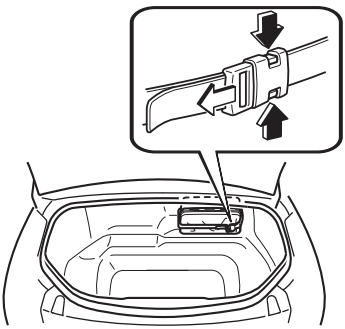
*Some models.

NOTE

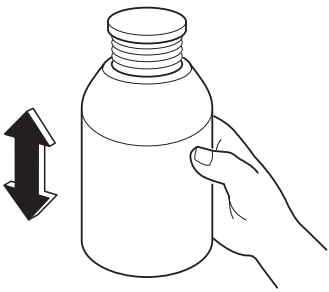
- The tyre sealant cannot be reused. Purchase new tyre sealant at an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- The emergency flat tyre repair kit cannot be used in the following cases.
  Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
  - The period of effective use for the tyre sealant has expired. (The period of effectiveness is indicated on the bottle label.)
  - The tear or puncture exceeds about 4 mm (0.16 in).
  - The damage has occurred to an area of the tyre other than the tread.
  - The vehicle has been driven with nearly no air remaining in the tyre.
  - The tyre has come off the wheel rim.
  - Damage to the wheel rim has occurred.
  - The tyre has two or more punctures.

▼Using the Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit

1. Move the vehicle off the right-of-way to a safe place on a level and hard surface where the vehicle does not obstruct traffic.
2. Shift the shift lever to the 1 or Reverse (R) position for a manual transmission, and shift the selector lever to the P position for an automatic transmission.
3. Apply the parking brake with the brake pedal depressed and turn off the engine.
4. If necessary, flash the hazard warning lights and set up the roadside emergency triangle.
5. Unload passengers and cargo and remove the emergency flat tyre repair kit.



6. Shake the tyre sealant well.



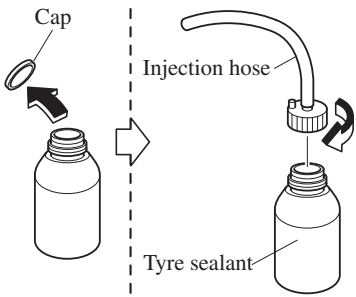
⚠ CAUTION

If the bottle is shaken after the injection hose is screwed on, tyre sealant could spray out from the injection hose. Tyre sealant contacting clothing or other objects may be impossible to remove. Shake the bottle before screwing on the injection hose.

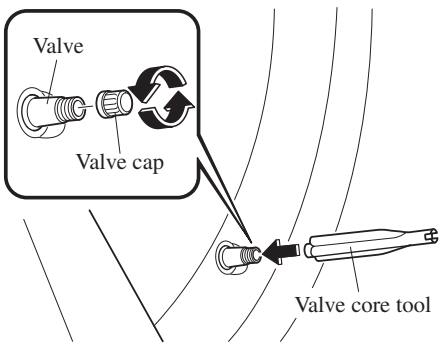
NOTE

The sealant hardens easily and injecting it will be difficult under cold weather conditions (0 °C (32 °F) or below). Warm the sealant inside the vehicle to facilitate injection.

7. Remove the cap from the bottle. Screw on the injection hose with the bottle's inner cap left on to break the inner cap.



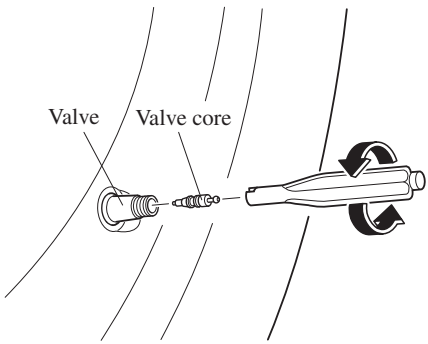
8. Remove the valve cap from the flat tyre. Press the back of a valve core tool to the core of the tyre valve and bleed all the remaining air.



⚠ CAUTION

If there is air remaining in the tyre when the valve core is removed, the valve core could fly out. Remove the valve core carefully.

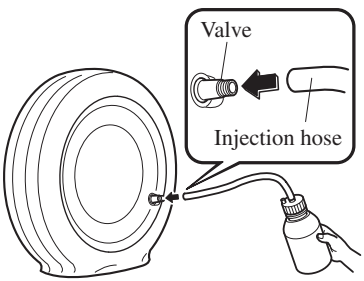
9. Turn the valve core anticlockwise with the valve core tool and remove the valve core.



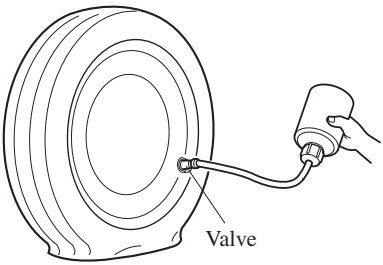
NOTE

Store the valve core in a place where it will not get dirty.

10. Insert the injection hose into the valve.



11. Hold the bottom of the bottle upright, squeeze the bottle with your hands, and inject the entire amount of tyre sealant into the tyre.

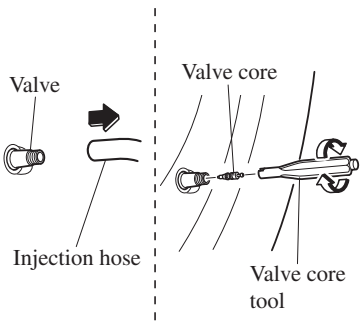


12. Pull out the injection hose from the valve.

NOTE

The tyre sealant cannot be reused. Purchase a new tyre sealant kit at an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

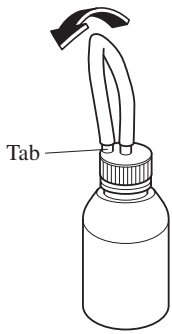
13. Reinsert the valve core into the valve and turn it clockwise to install it.



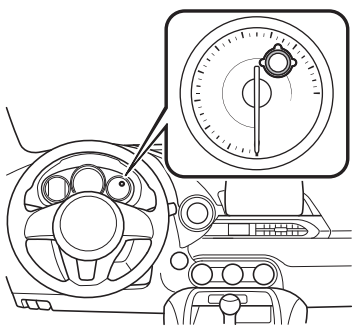
NOTE

Do not throw away the empty tyre sealant bottle after use. Return the empty tyre sealant bottle to an Authorised Mazda Repairer when replacing the tyre. The empty tyre sealant bottle will need to be used to extract and dispose of the used sealant from the tyre.

14. After that, install the injection hose to the tab of the bottle to prevent leakage of any remaining sealant.



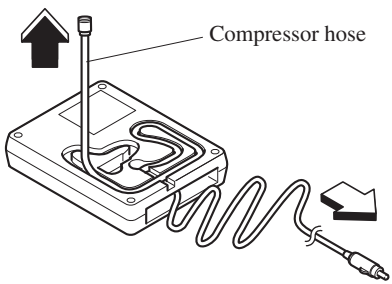
15. Adhere the speed restriction sticker to an area where it can be viewed easily by the driver.



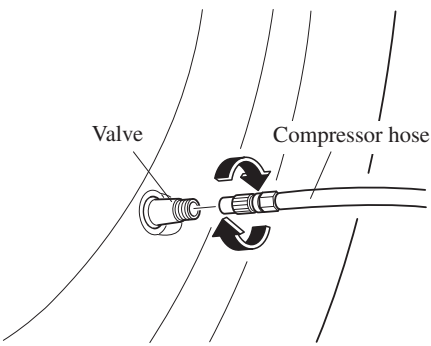
⚠ WARNING

Do not adhere the speed restriction sticker to the padded area on the steering wheel:
Adhering the speed restriction sticker to the padded area on the steering wheel is dangerous because the air bag may not operate (deploy) normally resulting in serious injury. In addition, do not adhere the sticker to areas where warning lights or the speedometer cannot be viewed.

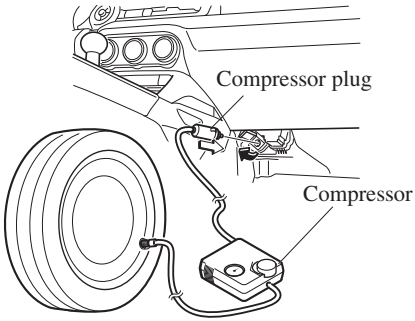
16. Pull out the air compressor hose and the air compressor plug from the air compressor.



17. Install the air compressor hose to the tyre valve.



18. Insert the air compressor plug into the accessory socket inside the vehicle and switch the ignition to ACC.
Refer to Accessory Sockets on page 5-125.



⚠ CAUTION

When inserting the air compressor plug into or removing it from the accessory socket, make sure that the air compressor switch is off. When turning the air compressor on/off, use the air compressor switch.

19. Turn the air compressor switch on and inflate the tyre carefully to the correct inflation pressure.

NOTE

- Check the tyre inflation pressure label driver's door frame for the correct tyre inflation pressure.
- Do not operate the air compressor for a continuous 10 minutes or longer because using it for long periods could cause a malfunction.
- If the tyre inflation pressure does not increase, repair of the tyre is not possible. If the tyre does not reach the specified tyre inflation pressure within 10 minutes, it may have received extensive damage. In this case, the repair using the emergency flat tyre repair kit was not successful. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- If the tyre has been over-inflated, loosen the screw cap on the air compressor and bleed some of the air out.

20. When the tyre inflates to the specified tyre inflation pressure, turn the air compressor switch off, turn the sleeve of the air compressor hose to the left, and pull it out of the tyre valve.
21. Install the tyre valve cap.
22. Put the emergency flat tyre repair kit into the boot.
23. Start driving immediately to spread the sealant in the tyre.

⚠ CAUTION

Carefully drive the vehicle at a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) or less. If the vehicle is driven at a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle may vibrate.

NOTE

(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
If the tyre is not properly inflated, the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light will illuminate.

24. After driving the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles), connect the air compressor to the tyre using Step 17 of the procedure, and check the tyre inflation pressure using the tyre pressure gauge on the air compressor. If the tyre inflation pressure is lower than the specified tyre inflation pressure, turn the air compressor on and wait until it reaches the specified tyre inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING

If the tyre inflation pressure has decreased below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 18.9 psi), stop driving and contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer:
The repair using the emergency flat tyre repair kit was not successful.

If you see a decrease in the tyre inflation pressure, even if Steps 17 to 24 of the procedure are performed repeatedly, stop driving:
Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

⚠ CAUTION

Before checking the tyre inflation pressure using the tyre pressure gauge, turn the air compressor switch off.

25. The emergency flat tyre repair is completed successfully if the tyre inflation pressure does not decrease. Carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately and have the flat tyre replaced. Replacement with a new tyre is recommended. If the tyre is to be repaired or reused, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

- If an emergency flat tyre repair has been performed using the emergency flat tyre repair kit, Mazda recommends that the tyre be replaced with a new one as soon as possible. If the tyre is to be repaired or reused, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- The wheel can be reused if the sealant adhering to it is removed. However, replace the valve with a new one.

▼Inspecting the Emergency Flat Tyre Repair Kit

Inspect the emergency flat tyre repair kit at regular intervals.

- Check the tyre sealant period of effective use.
- Check the operation of the tyre compressor.

NOTE

The tyre sealant has a period of effective use. Check the period of effective use indicated on the bottle label and do not use it if it has expired. Have the tyre sealant replaced at an Authorised Mazda Repairer before the period of effective use has expired.

Changing a Tyre

⚠ WARNING

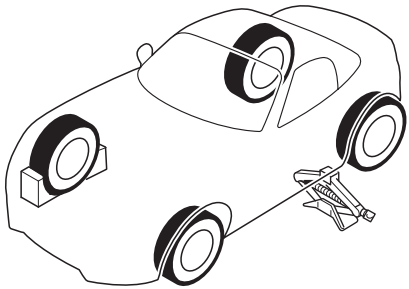
Be sure to follow the directions for changing a tyre:
Changing a tyre is dangerous if not done properly. The vehicle can slip off the jack and seriously injure someone. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Never allow anyone inside a vehicle supported by a jack:
Allowing someone to remain in a vehicle supported by a jack is dangerous. The occupant could cause the vehicle to fall resulting in serious injury.

NOTE

Make sure the jack is well lubricated before using it.

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transmission in Park (P), a manual transmission in Reverse (R) or 1, and turn off the engine.
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic.
5. Remove the jack and tool (page 7-5).
6. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the tyre to be changed. When blocking a wheel, place a tyre block both in front and behind the tyre.

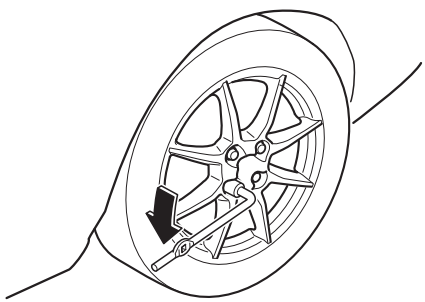


NOTE

When blocking a tyre, use rocks or wood blocks of sufficient size if possible to hold the tyre in place.

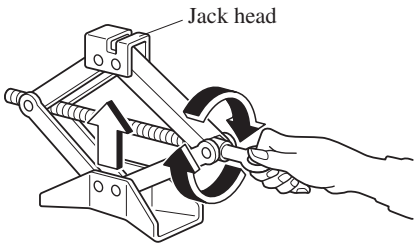
▼Removing a Tyre

1. Loosen the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise one turn each, but do not remove any wheel nuts until the tyre has been raised off the ground.

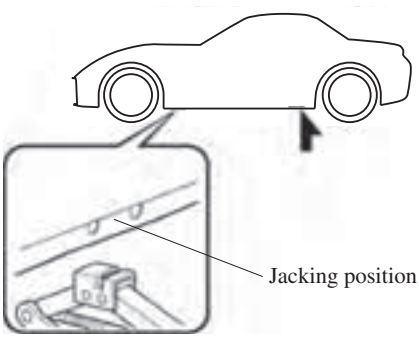


2. Place the jack on the ground.

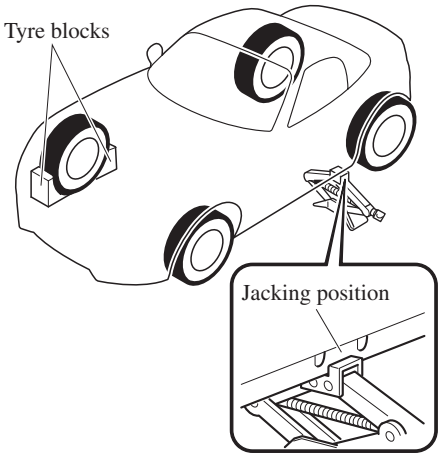
3. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure and adjust the jack head so that it is close to the jack-up position.



4. Place the jack under the jack-up position closest to the tyre being changed with the jack head squarely under the jack-up point.



5. Continue raising the jack head gradually by rotating the screw with your hand until the jack head is inserted into the jack-up position.



⚠ WARNING

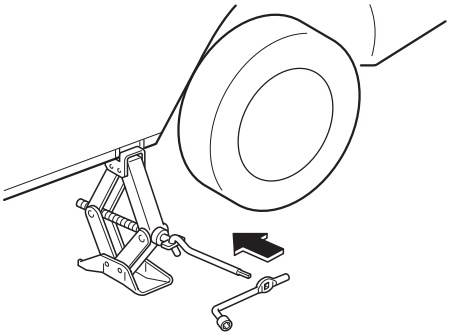
Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual:
Attempting to jack the vehicle in positions other than those recommended in this manual is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure or even kill someone. Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual.

Do not jack up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or place any objects on or under the jack:
Jacking up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or placing objects on or under the jack is dangerous as it could deform the vehicle body or the vehicle could fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

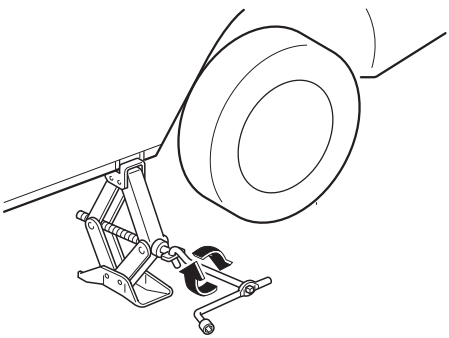
Use only the jack provided with your Mazda:
Using a jack that is not designed for your Mazda is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

Never place objects under the jack:
Jacking the vehicle with an object under the jack is dangerous. The jack could slip and someone could be seriously injured by the jack or the falling vehicle.

6. Insert the jack lever and attach the wheel brace to tyre jack.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise and raise the vehicle high enough so that the tyre is raised off the ground and can be removed. Before removing the wheel nuts, make sure your Mazda is firmly in position and that it cannot slip or move.



⚠ WARNING

Do not jack up the vehicle higher than is necessary:
Jacking up the vehicle higher than is necessary is dangerous as it could destabilize the vehicle resulting in an accident.

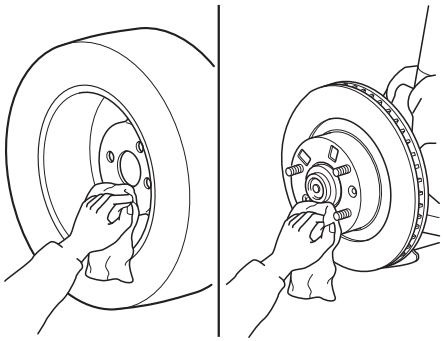
Do not start the engine or shake the vehicle while it is jacked up:
Starting the engine or shaking the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could cause the vehicle to fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

Never go under the vehicle while it is jacked up:
Going under the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could result in death or serious injury if the vehicle were to fall off the jack.

8. Remove the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise; then remove the wheel.

▼Mounting the Tyre

1. Remove dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub, including the hub bolts, with a cloth.

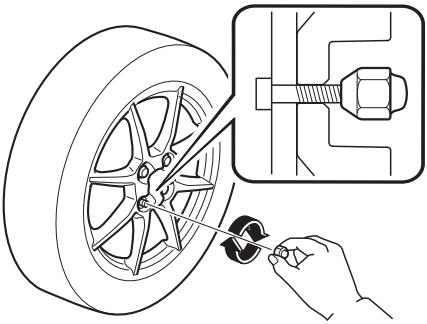


⚠ WARNING

Make sure the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and wheel nuts are clean before changing or replacing tyres:
When changing or replacing a tyre, not removing dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and hub bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident.

2. Mount the tyre.

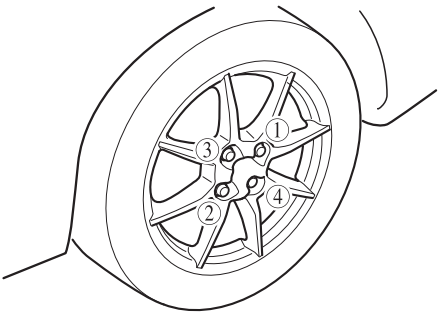
3. Install the wheel nuts with the bevelled edge inward; tighten them by hand.



⚠ WARNING

Do not apply oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts and do not tighten the wheel nuts beyond the recommended tightening torque:
Applying oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident. In addition, wheel nuts and bolts could be damaged if tightened more than necessary.

4. Turn the wheel brace anticlockwise and lower the vehicle. Use the wheel brace to tighten the nuts in the order shown.



If you are unsure of how tight the nuts should be, have them inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Nut tightening torque	
N·m (kgf·m, ft·lbf)	108—147 (12—14, 80—108)

⚠ *WARNING*

Always securely and correctly tighten the wheel nuts:
Improperly or loosely tightened wheel nuts are dangerous. The wheel could wobble or come off. This could result in loss of vehicle control and cause a serious accident.

Be sure to reinstall the same nuts you removed or replace them with metric nuts of the same configuration:
Because the wheel studs and wheel nuts on your Mazda have metric threads, using a non-metric nut is dangerous. On a metric stud, it would not secure the wheel and would damage the stud, which could cause the wheel to slip off and cause an accident.

5. Remove the tyre blocks and store the tools and jack.
6. Check the inflation pressure. Refer to Tyres on page 9-8.

NOTE

(With tyre pressure monitoring system)
Do not press the tyre pressure monitoring system set switch after installing the spare tyre. The switch is only to be pressed after installing the repaired flat tyre or installing a replacement tyre (page 4-42).

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not drive with any tyres that have incorrect air pressure:
Driving on tyres with incorrect air pressure is dangerous. Tyres with incorrect pressure could affect handling and result in an accident. When you check the regular tyres' air pressure, check the spare tyre, too.

NOTE

To prevent the jack and tool from rattling, store them properly.

Jump-Starting

Jump-starting is dangerous if done incorrectly. So follow the procedure carefully. If you feel unsure about jump-starting, we strongly recommend that you have a competent service technician do the work.

⚠ *WARNING*

Follow These Precautions Carefully:
To ensure safe and correct handling of the battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact any other metal object that could cause sparks:
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. When working near a battery, do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (−) terminal of the battery.

Keep all flames, including cigarettes, and sparks away from open battery cells:
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries.

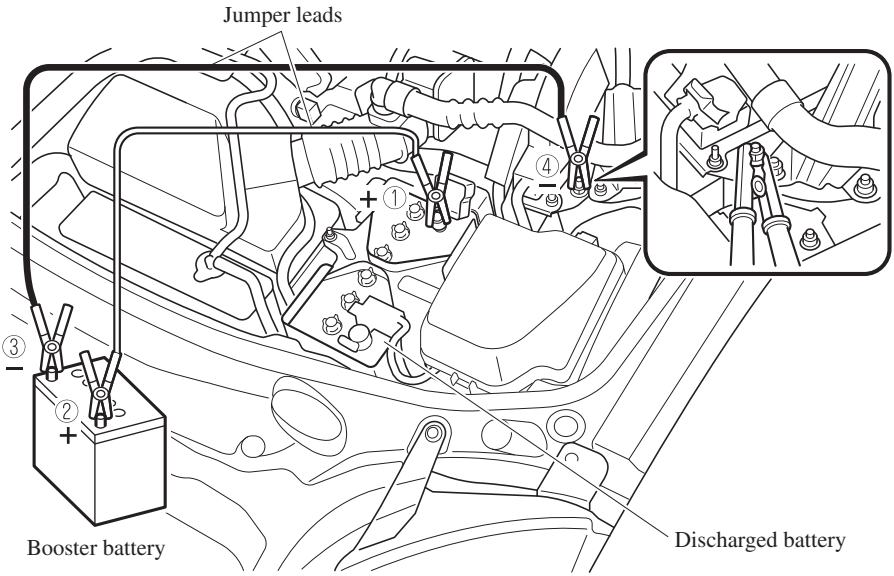
Do not jump-start a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level:
Jump-starting a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level is dangerous. It may rupture or explode, causing serious injury.

Connect the negative lead to a good ground point away from the battery:
Connecting the end of the second jumper lead to the negative (−) terminal of the discharged battery is dangerous.
A spark could cause the gas around the battery to explode and injure someone.

Route the jumper leads away from parts that will be moving:
Connecting a jumper lead near or to moving parts (cooling fans, belts) is dangerous. The lead could get caught when the engine starts and cause serious injury.

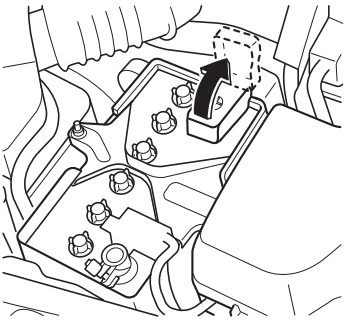
⚠ CAUTION

Use only a 12 V booster system. You can damage a 12 V starter, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair with a 24 V power supply (two 12 V batteries in series or a 24 V motor generator set).



Battery Runs Out

1. Remove the battery cover.



2. Make sure the booster battery is 12 V and that its negative terminal is grounded.
3. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow both vehicles to touch. Turn off the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and all unnecessary electrical loads in both vehicles.
4. Connect the jumper leads in the exact sequence as in the illustration.
   - Connect one end of a lead to the positive terminal on the discharged battery (1).
   - Attach the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2).
   - Connect one end of the other lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
   - Connect the other end to the ground point indicated in the illustration away from the discharged battery (4).
5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run it a few minutes. Then start the engine of the other vehicle.
6. When finished, carefully disconnect the leads in the reverse order described in the illustration.
7. If the battery cover has been removed, install it in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE
Verify that the covers are securely installed.

Starting a Flooded Engine

If the engine fails to start, it may be flooded (excessive fuel in the engine).

Follow this procedure:

1. If the engine does not start within five seconds on the first try, wait ten seconds and try again.
2. Make sure the parking brake is on.
3. Depress the accelerator all the way and hold it there.
4. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual transmission) or the brake pedal (Automatic transmission), then press the push button start. If the engine starts, release the accelerator immediately because the engine will suddenly rev up.
5. If the engine fails to start, crank it without depressing the accelerator.

If the engine still does not start using the previous procedure, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Push-Starting

Do not push-start your Mazda.

⚠ *WARNING*

<u>Never tow a vehicle to start it:</u>
Towing a vehicle to start it is dangerous. The vehicle being towed could surge forward when its engine starts, causing the two vehicles to collide. The occupants could be injured.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not push-start a vehicle that has a manual transmission. It can damage the emission control system.

NOTE

You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing it.

Overheating

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on, the vehicle loses power, or you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine is probably too hot.

⚠ WARNING

Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:
Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:
When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

Open the bonnet ONLY after steam is no longer escaping from the engine:
Steam from an overheated engine is dangerous. The escaping steam could seriously burn you.

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transmission in park (P), a manual transmission in neutral.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Turn off the air conditioner.
5. Check whether coolant or steam is escaping from the engine compartment.

If steam is coming from the engine compartment:

Do not go near the front of the vehicle.
Stop the engine.
Wait until the steam dissipates, then open the bonnet and start the engine.

If neither coolant nor steam is escaping:

Open the bonnet and idle the engine until it cools.

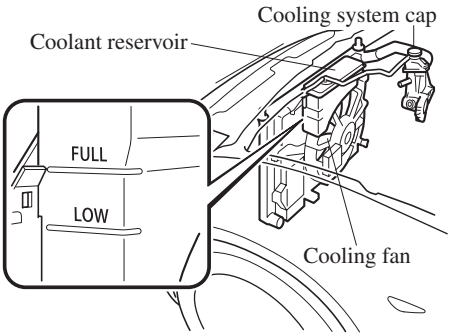
⚠ CAUTION

If the cooling fan does not operate while the engine is running, the engine temperature will increase. Stop the engine and call an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

6. Make sure the cooling fan is operating, then turn off the engine after the temperature has decreased.
7. When cool, check the coolant level. If it is low, look for coolant leaks from the radiator and hoses.

If you find a leak or other damage, or if coolant is still leaking:

Stop the engine and call an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



If you find no problems, the engine is cool, and no leaks are obvious:

Carefully add coolant as required (page 6-20).

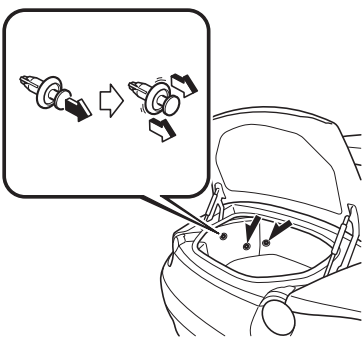
⚠ CAUTION

If the engine continues to overheat or frequently overheats, have the cooling system inspected. The engine could be seriously damaged unless repairs are made. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

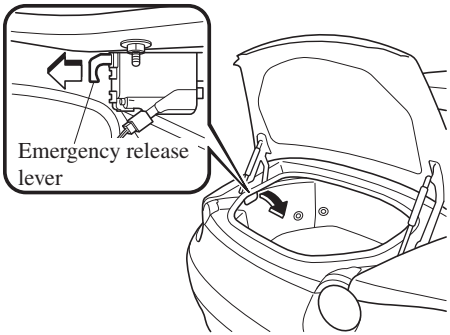
When Fuel-Filler Flap Cannot be Opened

If the battery is dead, the fuel-filler flap cannot be opened.
In this case, the fuel-filler flap can be opened by taking care of the dead battery situation.
Refer to Jump-Starting on page 7-20.
If the fuel-filler flap cannot be opened even if the dead battery situation has been resolved, the electrical system may have a malfunction.
In this case, the fuel-filler flap can be opened using the following procedure as an emergency measure.

1. Open the boot lid.
   Refer to Opening and Closing the Boot Lid on page 3-22.
2. Pull the centre section of the plastic fastener and remove the fasteners.



3. Partially peel back the cover inside the boot, then pull the emergency release lever.

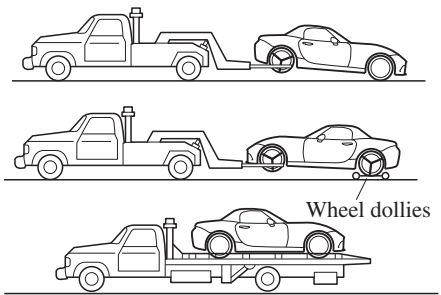


Towing Description

We recommend that towing be done only by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. Government and local laws must be followed.

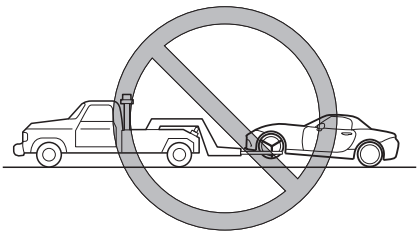
A towed vehicle usually should have its drive wheels (rear wheels) off the ground. If excessive damage or other conditions prevent this, use wheel dollies.



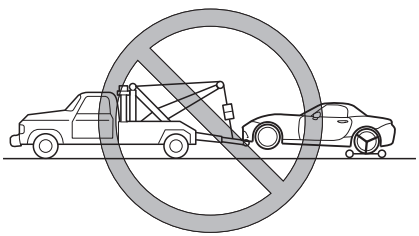
When towing with the rear wheels on the ground, release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not tow the vehicle pointed backward with driving wheels on the ground. This may cause internal damage to the transmission.



- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. This could damage your vehicle. Use wheel-lift or flatbed equipment.



If towing service is not available in an emergency, the vehicle may be towed with all four wheels on the ground using the towing hook at the front of the vehicle. Only tow the vehicle on paved surfaces for short distances at low speeds.

⚠ CAUTION

Follow these instructions when towing the vehicle with all wheels on the ground.

- Shift to neutral (Manual transmission), or the N position (Automatic transmission).
- Switch the ignition to ACC.
- Release the parking brake.

Remember that power assist for the brakes and steering will not be available when the engine is not running.

Towing Hooks

⚠ CAUTION

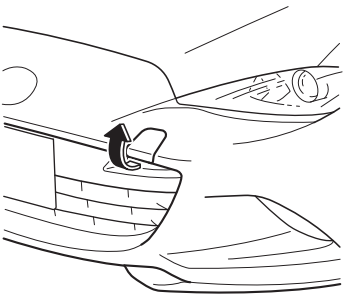
- The towing eyelet should be used in an emergency (to get the vehicle out of a ditch or a snow bank, for example).
- When using the towing eyelets, always pull the lead or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eyelet. Never apply a sideways force.

NOTE

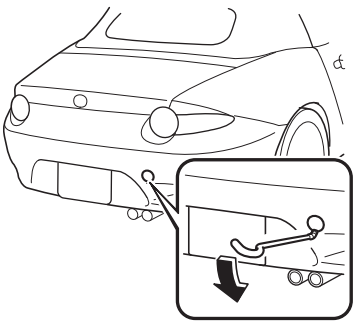
When towing with chain or lead, wrap the chain or lead with a soft cloth near the bumper to prevent damage to the bumper.

▼Towing Hooks

1. Remove the towing eyelet and the wheel brace from the luggage compartment (page 7-5).
2. Wrap a flathead screwdriver or similar tool with a soft cloth to prevent damage to a painted bumper, and open the cap located on the front or rear bumper.
   Front



Rear



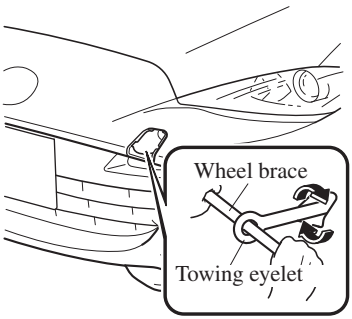
⚠ CAUTION

Do not use excessive force as it may damage the cap or scratch the painted bumper surface.

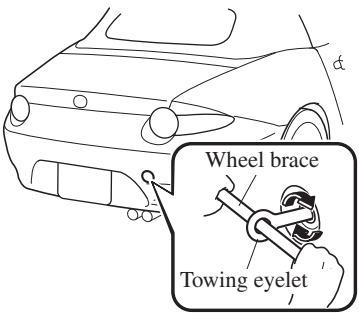
NOTE

Remove the cap completely and store it so as not to lose it.

3. Securely install the towing eyelet using the wheel brace or equivalent.
   Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
   Front



Rear



4. Hook the towing rope to the towing eyelet.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the towing eyelet is not securely tightened, it may loosen or disengage from the bumper when towing the vehicle. Make sure that the towing eyelet is securely tightened to the bumper.
- Be careful not to damage the towing eyelet and towing hook, vehicle body, or transmission system when towing under the following conditions:
  - Do not tow a vehicle heavier than yours.
  - Do not suddenly accelerate your vehicle as it will apply a severe shock to the towing eyelet and towing hook or rope.
  - Do not attach any rope other than to the towing eyelet and towing hook.

If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes

If any warning light turns on/flashes, take appropriate action for each light. There is no problem if the light turns off, however if the light does not turn off or turns on/flashes again, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

(Vehicles with type B/type C audio)

The warning contents can be verified on the centre display.

1. If the warning light is turned on, select icon on the home screen to display the application screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select “Warning Guidance” to display the current warnings.
4. Select the applicable warning to view the warning details.

▼Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

If any of the following warning lights turns on, the system may have a malfunction. Stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Signal	Warning
(Red) Brake System Warning Light	This warning has the following functions: **Parking brake warning/Warning light inspection** The light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched to START or ON. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released. **Low brake fluid level warning** If the brake warning light remains illuminated even though the parking brake is released, the brake fluid may be low or there could be a problem with the brake system. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. **⚠ *WARNING*** ***Do not drive with the brake system warning light illuminated. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:*** ***Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. It indicates that your brakes may not work at all or that they could completely fail at any time. If this light remains illuminated, after checking that the parking brake is fully released, have the brakes inspected immediately.*** **⚠ CAUTION** In addition, the effectiveness of the braking may diminish so you may need to depress the brake pedal more strongly than normal to stop the vehicle.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning	If the electronic brake force distribution control unit determines that some components are operating incorrectly, the control unit may illuminate the brake system warning light and the ABS warning light simultaneously. The problem is likely to be the electronic brake force distribution system. **⚠ *WARNING*** ***Do not drive with both the ABS warning light and brake warning light illuminated. Have the vehicle towed to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:*** ***Driving when the brake system warning light and ABS warning light are illuminated simultaneously is dangerous.*** ***When both lights are illuminated, the rear wheels could lock more quickly in an emergency stop than under normal circumstances.***
Charging System Warning Indication/ Warning Light	If the warning light illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction of the alternator or of the charging system. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. **⚠ CAUTION** Do not continue driving when the charging system warning light is illuminated because the engine could stop unexpectedly.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
Engine Oil Warning Light	This warning light indicates low engine oil pressure. **⚠ CAUTION** Do not run the engine if the oil pressure is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage. If the light illuminates or the warning indication is displayed while driving: 1.Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way on level ground. 2.Turn off the engine and wait 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump. 3.Inspect the engine oil level 6-20. If it's low, add the appropriate amount of engine oil while being careful not to overfill. **⚠ CAUTION** Do not run the engine if the oil level is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage. 4.Start the engine and check the warning light. If the light remains illuminated even though the oil level is normal or after adding oil, stop the engine immediately and have your vehicle towed to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
(Red) High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication/Warning Light	The light flashes when the engine coolant temperature is extremely high, and illuminates when the engine coolant temperature increases further. **Handling Procedure** **Flashing light** Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down. **Illuminated light** This indicates the possibility of overheating. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and stop the engine. Refer to Overheating 7-24. **⚠ CAUTION** Do not drive the vehicle with the high engine coolant temperature warning light illuminated. Otherwise, it could result in damage to the engine.

Signal	Warning
Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light	The light illuminates if the electric power steering has a malfunction. If the light illuminates, stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not operate the steering wheel. There is no problem if the light turns off after a while. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if the light illuminates continuously. **NOTE** •If the indicator light illuminates, the power steering will not operate normally. If this happens, the steering wheel can still be operated, however, the operation may feel heavy compared to normal, or the steering wheel could vibrate when turning. •Repeatedly jerking the steering wheel left and right while the vehicle is stopped or moving extremely slowly will cause the power steering system to go into protective mode which will make the steering feel heavy, but this does not indicate a problem. If this occurs, park the vehicle safely and wait several minutes for the system to return to normal.

▼Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected

If any of the following warning lights or the indicator light turns on/flashes, the system may have a malfunction. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have your vehicle inspected.

Signal	Warning
Master Warning Indication/Warning Light*	**Type A instrument cluster** **(Master warning indication)** Displays when notification of the system malfunctions is required. Check the message indicated in the display and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. **(Master warning light)** The master warning light displays when a warning message occurs. This indicates a malfunction with the vehicle system. Check the message indicated in the display and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. For details, refer to the explanations for the warning/indicator lights, in the warning/indicator lights section, which match the symbol in the upper part of the display. If a message is not indicated in the display, operate the INFO switch to display the “Warning” screen. Refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display and INFO switch on page 4-33. **Type B instrument cluster** The light illuminates continuously if any one of the following occurs. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. •There is a malfunction in the battery management system. •There is a malfunction in the brake switch.

 *Some models.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
(Amber) Electric Vacuum Pump Warning Light	The light turns on if the electric vacuum pump system has a problem. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
ABS Warning Light	If the ABS warning light stays on while you're driving, the ABS control unit has detected a system malfunction. If this occurs, your brakes will function normally as if the vehicle had no ABS. Should this happen, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. **NOTE** •When the engine is jump-started to charge the battery, uneven rpm occurs and the ABS warning light may illuminate. If this occurs, it is the result of the weak battery and does not indicate an ABS malfunction. Recharge the battery. •The brake assist system does not operate while the ABS warning light is illuminated.
Check Engine Light	If this light illuminates while driving, the vehicle may have a problem. It is important to note the driving conditions when the light illuminated and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The check engine light may illuminate in the following cases: •The engine's electrical system has a problem. •The emission control system has a problem. •The fuel tank level being very low or approaching empty. •The fuel-filler cap is missing or not tightened securely. If the check engine light remains on, or it flashes continuously , do not drive at high speeds and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
i-stop (Amber) i-stop Warning Light*	**When the light is turned on** A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. •The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. •The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running. **When the light is flashing** The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
i-ELOOP (Amber) i-ELOOP Indication/Warning Light*	The Warning indication/Warning light turns on if there is any malfunction in the i-ELOOP system. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

*Some models.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
AT Automatic Transmission Indication/Warning Light*	The indication/light illuminates when the transmission has a problem. **⚠ CAUTION** If the automatic transmission warning indication/light illuminates, the transmission has an electrical problem. Continuing to drive your Mazda in this condition could cause damage to your transmission. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
(Illuminate) TCS/DSC Indicator Light	If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light	A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly flashes, constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition is switched ON. If any of these occur, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. The system may not operate in an accident. ***⚠ WARNING*** ***Never tamper with the air bag/pretensioner systems and always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform all servicing and repairs:*** ***Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.***
Active Bonnet Warning Light*	The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later. A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. •The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. •Remains turned on/flashing. ***⚠ WARNING*** ***Do not drive the vehicle with the active bonnet warning light turned on or flashing:*** ***Driving the vehicle with the active bonnet warning light turned on or flashing is dangerous as the active bonnet mechanism may not activate normally and function as intended in the event the vehicle were to contact a pedestrian.***

*Some models.

Signal	Warning
(Flashing) Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light*	**Vehicle with conventional tyres** If the tyre pressure monitoring system has a malfunction, the tyre pressure warning light flashes for about 1 minute when the ignition is switched ON and then continues illuminating. Have your vehicle checked by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. **Vehicle with run-flat tyres** If the tyre pressure monitoring system has a malfunction, the tyre pressure warning light flashes. Have your vehicle checked by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. **⚠ *WARNING*** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking:*** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.*** ***To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or a tyre repair station.*** ***Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:*** ***Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.***
FLAT TIRE FLAT TIRE Warning Light*	If a run-flat tyre is punctured, the FLAT TIRE warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster, and a beep sound is heard for about 30 seconds. Carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest Mazda repair shop immediately and have the flat tyre replaced. Refer to Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres on page 7-3. **⚠ *WARNING*** ***Have the tyres checked or perform the appropriate repair as soon as possible by an expert repairer, we recommend an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer:*** ***When the flat tyre warning light illuminates or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.*** ***When the flat tyre warning light illuminates or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking.***

*Some models.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
(Red) KEY Warning Indication*	**“Keyless System malfunction” is displayed** This message is displayed if the advanced keyless entry & push button start system has a problem. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. **⚠ CAUTION** If the message is indicated, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, the engine may not start. If the engine cannot be started, try starting it using the emergency operation for starting the engine, and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. Refer to Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine on page 4-11.
(Amber) KEY Warning Indication*	**“Set Power to OFF” is displayed** This message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without switching the ignition off. **“Key not found” is displayed** This message is displayed when any of the following operations is performed with the key out of the operational range or placed in areas inside the cabin where it is difficult for the key to be detected. •The push button start is pressed with the ignition switched off •The ignition is switched on •All doors are closed without switching the ignition off
(Red) (Illuminate) KEY Warning Light*	If any malfunction occurs in the keyless entry system, it illuminates continuously. **⚠ CAUTION** If the key warning indicator light illuminates or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, the engine may not start. If the engine cannot be started, try starting it using the emergency operation for starting the engine, and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. Refer to Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine on page 4-11.

 *Some models.

Signal	Warning
(Illuminate) Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication/Warning Light*	•The warning indication/warning light illuminates if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. •The LDWS does not operate when the warning indication/warning light illuminates. **⚠ CAUTION** •A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. •When the warning indication/warning light illuminates while driving the vehicle. When the system is cancelled automatically, the warning indication/warning light illuminates. Normally, the system restores automatically and the warning indication/warning light turns off, however, if the warning indication/warning light illuminates, there may be a problem with the system. •The warning indication/warning light does not illuminate when the ignition is switched ON. •Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacture, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. If such improper tyres are used, the LDWS may not operate normally. •When an emergency spare tyre is used, the system may not operate normally. **NOTE** If the windscreen area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is fogged or obstructed, the light turns on temporarily. If the light remains turned on, there may be a problem with the system.
(Amber) High Beam Control System (HBC) Warning Indication/Warning Light*	The warning indication/warning light illuminates if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. **NOTE** If the windscreen area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is fogged or obstructed, the warning indication/warning light illuminates temporarily. If the warning indication/warning light illuminates, there may be a problem with the system.
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication*	The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. **NOTE** If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause. However, it does not indicate a malfunction.

*Some models.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light*	A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. •The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. •The light remains on even when the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system can be operated. •The light turns on while driving the vehicle. **NOTE** If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause (The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates). However, it does not indicate a malfunction.
Retractable Fastback Warning Indication*	The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
LED Headlight Warning Light	This light illuminates if there is a malfunction in the LED headlight. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

*Some models.

▼Taking Action

Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
PASS Seat Belt Warning Light	The seat belt warning light turns on if the driver or passenger's seat is occupied and the seat belt is not fastened with the ignition switched ON. If the driver or passenger's seat belt is unfastened (only when the passenger seat is occupied) and the vehicle is driven at a speed faster than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes. After a short time, the warning light stops flashing, but remains illuminated. If a seat belt remains unfastened, the warning light flashes again for a given period of time. **NOTE** •If the driver or passenger's seat belt is unfastened after the warning light turns on, and the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes again. •**(With passenger occupant classification system)** To allow the passenger occupant classification sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the passenger's seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference. •**(Without passenger occupant classification system)** •Placing heavy items on the passenger's seat may cause the passenger's seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item. •To allow the passenger's seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the passenger's seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference. •If a small child is seated on the passenger's seat, the warning light may not operate.	Fasten the seat belts.
Door-Ajar/Boot lid-Ajar Warning Indication/ Warning Light	The light turns on if any door/boot lid is not closed securely.	Close the door/boot lid securely.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
Low Fuel Warning Light	The light turns on when the remaining fuel is about 9.0 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal). **NOTE** The light illumination timing may vary because fuel inside the fuel tank moves around according to the driving conditions and the vehicle posture.	Add fuel.
120 km/h 120km/h Warning Light*	The 120 km/h warning light illuminates when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h.	Lower the vehicle speed.
Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Indication/ Warning Light*	This warning light indicates that little washer fluid remains.	Add washer fluid (page 6-23).

*Some models.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light (Illuminate)*

Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

Vehicle with conventional tyres

Warning	Action to be taken
When the warning light illuminates, and the warning beep sound is heard (about 3 seconds), tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres. **⚠ *WARNING*** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking:*** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.*** ***To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or a tyre repair station.*** ***Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:*** ***Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.***	Inspect the tyres and adjust to the specified inflation pressure (page 6-34). **NOTE** •Perform tyre pressure adjustment when the tyres are cold. Tyre pressure will vary according to the tyre temperature, therefore let the vehicle stand for 1 hour or only drive it 1.6 km (1 mile) or less before adjusting the tyre pressures. When pressure is adjusted on hot tyres to the cold inflation pressure, the TPMS warning light/beep may turn on after the tyres cool and pressure drops below specification. Also, an illuminated TPMS warning light, resulting from the tyre air pressure dropping due to cold ambient temperature will remain illuminated even if the ambient temperature rises. In this case, it will also be necessary to adjust the tyre air pressures. If the TPMS warning light illuminates due to a drop in tyre air pressure, make sure to check and adjust the tyre air pressures. •Tyres lose air naturally over time and the TPMS cannot tell if the tyres are getting too soft over time or you have a flat. However, when you find one low tyre in a set of four-that is an indication of trouble; you should have someone drive the vehicle slowly forward so you can inspect any low tyre for cuts and any metal objects sticking through tread or sidewall. Put a few drops of water in the valve stem to see if it bubbles indicating a bad valve. Leaks need to be addressed by more than simply reinflating the tyre as leaks are dangerous — take it to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

*Some models.

Vehicle with run-flat tyres

Warning	Action to be taken
When the warning light illuminates, and the warning beep sound is heard when tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres. **⚠ *WARNING*** ***<u>If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking:</u>*** ***If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.*** ***To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or a tyre repair station.*** ***<u>Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:</u>*** ***Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.***	Inspect the tyres and adjust to the specified inflation pressure (page 6-34). **⚠ CAUTION** When replacing/repairing the tyres or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorised Mazda Repairer, or the tyre pressure sensors may be damaged. **NOTE** •Perform tyre pressure adjustment when the tyres are cold. Tyre pressure will vary according to the tyre temperature, therefore let the vehicle stand for 1 hour or only drive it 1.6 km (1 mile) or less before adjusting the tyre pressures. When pressure is adjusted on hot tyres to the cold inflation pressure, the TPMS warning light/beep may turn on after the tyres cool and pressure drops below specification. Also, an illuminated TPMS warning light, resulting from the tyre air pressure dropping due to cold ambient temperature, may turn off if the ambient temperature rises. In this case, it will also be necessary to adjust the tyre air pressures. If the TPMS warning light illuminates due to a drop in tyre air pressure, make sure to check and adjust the tyre air pressures. •After adjusting the tyre air pressures, it may require some time for the TPMS warning light to turn off. If the TPMS warning light remains illuminated, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes, and then verify that it turns off. •Tyres lose air naturally over time and the TPMS cannot tell if the tyres are getting too soft over time or you have a flat. However, when you find one low tyre in a set of four-that is an indication of trouble; you should have someone drive the vehicle slowly forward so you can inspect any low tyre for cuts and any metal objects sticking through tread or sidewall. Put a few drops of water in the valve stem to see if it bubbles indicating a bad valve. Leaks need to be addressed by more than simply refilling the trouble tyre as leaks are dangerous — take it to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer which has all the equipment to fix tyres, TPMS systems and order the best replacement tyre for your vehicle. If the warning light illuminates again even after the tyre pressures are adjusted, there may be a tyre puncture. Refer to Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres on page 7-3.

KEY Indication (White)/KEY Warning Light (Red)*

Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

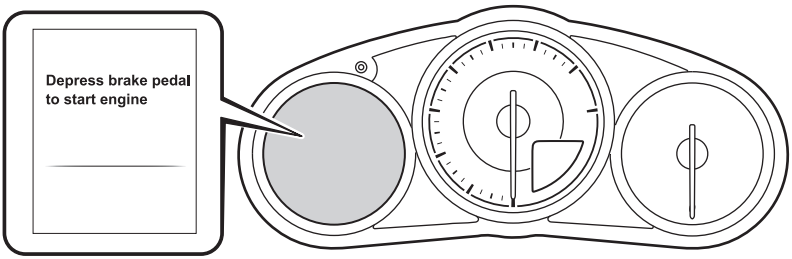
Signal	Cause	Action to be taken
(White) KEY Indication*	The advanced key battery is dead.	Replace the key battery (page 6-31).
(Red) (Flashing) KEY Warning Light*		
(Red) (Flashing) KEY Warning Light*	The advanced key is not within the operation range.	Bring the advanced key into the operation range (page 3-8).
	The advanced key is placed in areas inside the cabin where it is difficult for the key to be detected.	
	A key from another manufacturer similar to the advanced key is in the operation range.	Take the key from another manufacturer similar to the advanced key out of the operation range.
	Without the ignition switched off, the advanced key is taken out of the cabin, and then all the doors are closed.	Bring the advanced key back into the cabin.

*Some models.

Message Indicated in Multi-information Display*

If there is a notification from the vehicle, a message is displayed in the multi-information display. Check the information and take the necessary action.

(Display example)



If the warning light turns on/flashes simultaneously or a symbol is indicated in the display, check the information regarding the warning light or symbol. (page 4-42)

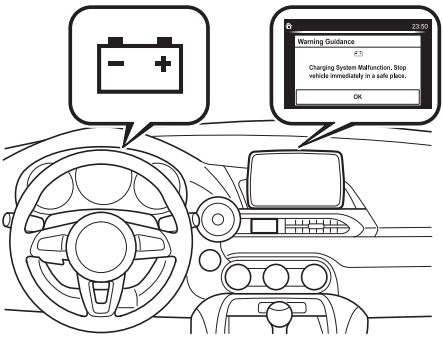
Display	Content	Action to be taken
Set Shift Lever to "P"	Indicated when the push button start is pressed while the shift lever is not in the P position.	Shift the shift lever to the P position.
Engine stalled	Indicated when a seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened while the i-stop function is operating.	Press the push button start again to start the engine. For automatic transmission vehicles, shift the shift lever to the P position before starting the engine.)
Depress brake pedal to start engine	Indicated when the push button start is pressed without depressing the brake pedal.	Depress the brake pedal and press the push button start.
Depress clutch pedal to start engine	Indicated when the push button start is pressed without depressing the clutch pedal.	Depress the clutch pedal and press the push button start.
Steering locked	Indicated while the steering wheel is locked.	Release the steering lock.

 *Some models.

Message Indicated on Display*

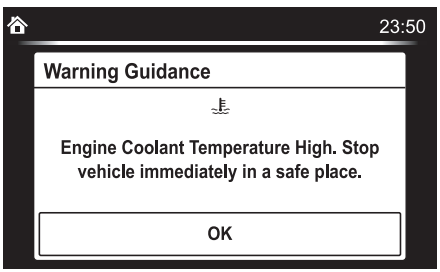
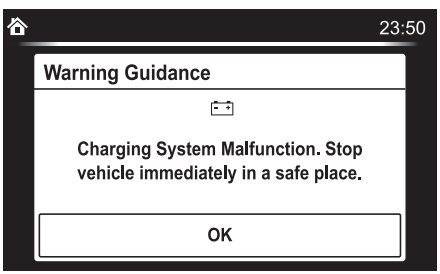
If a message is displayed in the centre display (Type B/type C audio), take appropriate action (in a calm manner) according to the displayed message.

(Display example)



▼Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

If the following messages are displayed in the centre display (Type B/type C audio), a vehicle system may be malfunctioning. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

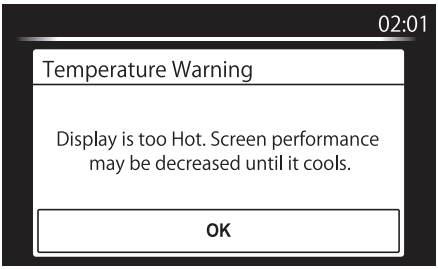
Display	Indicated Condition
	Displays if the engine coolant temperature has increased excessively.
	Displays if the charging system has a malfunction.

*Some models.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

▼Verify Display Content

Displays in the following cases:

Display	Indicated Condition/Action to be taken
	The following message is displayed when the temperature around the centre display is high. Lowering the temperature in the cabin or the temperature around the centre display by avoiding direct sunlight is recommended.

 *Some models.

Warning Sound is Activated

▼Lights-on Reminder

If lights are on and the ignition is switched to ACC or off, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

NOTE

- When the ignition is switched to ACC, the “Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep” (page 7-51) overrides the lights-on reminder.
- A personalised function is available to change the sound volume for the lights-on reminder.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

▼Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If there is a problem with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner systems and the warning light illumination, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The air bag and seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:
Driving the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼Active Bonnet Warning Beep*

If there is a problem with the active bonnet and the warning light illumination, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.
The active bonnet warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

⚠ *WARNING*

Do not drive the vehicle with the active bonnet warning beep sounding:
Driving the vehicle with the active bonnet warning beep sounding is dangerous as the active bonnet mechanism may not activate normally and function as intended in the event the vehicle were to contact a pedestrian. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼Seat Belt Warning Beep

If the vehicle speed exceeds about 20 km/h (12 mph) with the driver or front passenger's seat belt unfastened, a warning beep sounds continuously. If the seat belt remains unfastened, the beep sound stops once and then continues for about 90 seconds. The beep stops after the driver or front passenger's seat belt is fastened.

NOTE

- Placing heavy items on the front passenger seat may cause the front passenger seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.
- To allow the front passenger seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.
- When a small child sits on the front passenger seat, it is possible that the warning beep will not operate.

*Some models.

▼Retractable Fastback Warning Beep*

When operating the retractable fastback switch, the warning beep is activated when the retractable fastback operation begins and when it is completed.
If there is a problem with the retractable fastback, the warning beep is activated continuously while operating the switch. If the warning beep is activated continuously while operating the switch, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep

European models

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched to ACC, a beep will be heard 6 times in the cabin to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF (STOP). Under this condition, the keyless entry system will not operate, the vehicle cannot be locked, and the battery voltage will be depleted.

Except European models

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched to ACC, a beep will be heard continuously in the cabin to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF (STOP). Under this condition, the keyless entry system will not operate, the vehicle cannot be locked, and the battery voltage will be depleted.

▼Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep

Vehicles with advanced keyless function

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard 6 times, the beep which sounds inside the vehicle will be heard 6 times, and the KEY warning light (red) in the instrument cluster flashes continuously to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF.

Vehicles without advanced keyless function

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, a beep will be heard in the cabin 6 times and the KEY warning light (red) in the instrument cluster turns on continuously to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF.

NOTE

Because the key utilizes low-intensity radio waves, the Key Removed From Vehicle Warning may activate if the key is carried together with a metal object or it is placed in a poor signal reception area.

*Some models.

▼Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)

If the request switch is pressed with the door open or ajar, or the ignition is not switched OFF with a key being carried, a beep will be heard outside for about 2 seconds to notify the driver that the door or boot lid cannot be locked.

▼Key Left-in-boot Compartment Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)

If the key is left in the boot with all the doors locked and the boot lid closed, a beep will be heard outside for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the boot. In this case, take out the key by pressing the electric boot lid opener and opening the boot lid. The key taken out of the boot may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-8).

▼Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)

If all the doors and boot are locked using another key while the key is left in the cabin, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the cabin. In this case, take out the key by opening the door. A key taken out of the vehicle using this method may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-8).

▼Electronic Steering Lock Warning Beep

The warning beep operates if the steering wheel is not unlocked after the push button start is pressed. (page 4-4)

▼i-stop Warning Beep*

- If the driver's door is opened while engine idling is stopped, the warning sound operates to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped. It stops when the driver's door is closed.
- The warning sound operates if the following operations are performed while the engine idling is stopped. In such cases, the engine does not restart automatically to ensure safety. Start the engine using the normal method.
  - **(European model)**
    The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
  - **(Except European model)**
    - **(Manual transmission)**
      With the shift lever in a position other than neutral, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
    - **(Automatic transmission)**
      With the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position, the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

*Some models.

▼Vehicle Speed Alarm*

The vehicle speed alarm function is designed to alarm the driver via a single beep sound and a warning indication in the instrument cluster that the previously set vehicle speed has been exceeded.
You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

▼120 km/h Warning Beep*

If the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h, a chime sounds for 5 seconds.

▼Outside Temperature Warning Beep*

Warns the driver of the possibility of icy roads when the outside temperature is low.
If the outside temperature is lower than about 4 °C (39 °F) , a beep sound is heard once and the outside temperature display flashes for about ten seconds.
(Type A instrument cluster)
Refer to Outside Temperature Display on page 4-37.
(Type B instrument cluster)
Refer to Outside Temperature Display on page 4-29.

▼Power Steering Warning Buzzer

If the power steering system has a malfunction, the power steering malfunction light turns on or flashes and the buzzer operates at the same time.
Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-42.

▼Tyre Inflation Pressure Warning Beep*

Vehicle with conventional tyres

The warning beep sound will be heard for about 3 seconds when there is any abnormality in tyre inflation pressures.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Conventional Tyres) on page 4-140.

Vehicle with run-flat tyres

The warning beep sound will be heard for about 3 seconds if the tyre pressures decrease.
If the tyre pressure decreases extremely, a beep sound will be heard for approximately 30 seconds.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres) on page 4-144.

*Some models.

▼Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System Warning Beep*

Driving forward

The warning beep operates when the direction indicator lever is operated to the side where the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated.

NOTE

A personalised function is available to change the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep sound volume. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

Reversing

If a moving object such as a vehicle or two-wheeled vehicle approaches on the left or right from behind your vehicle, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning sound is activated.

▼Lane Departure Warning Sound*

While the system is operating, if the system determines that the vehicle may depart from the lane, it sounds a warning sound.

NOTE

- The volume of the LDWS warning sound can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.
- The type of the LDWS warning sound can be changed.
  Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-10.

▼Speed Limiter Warning Beep*

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more, a warning beep operates continuously. The warning beep operates until the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.

⚠ CAUTION

If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET − or RESUME/+ switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 3 km/h (2 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.

NOTE

When the system is temporarily cancelled by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the adjustable speed limiter display shows the cancel display. If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 km/h (2 mph) or more while the cancel display is displayed, the set speed display flashes but the warning sound is not operated.

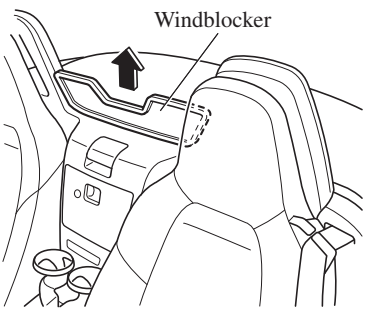
*Some models.

When Boot Lid Cannot be Opened

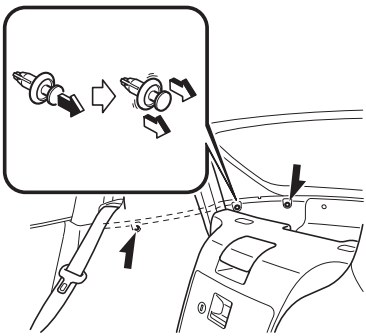
If the battery is dead, the boot cannot be unlocked and opened.
In this case, the boot can be unlocked by taking care of the dead battery situation.
Refer to Jump-Starting on page 7-20.
If the boot cannot be unlocked even if the dead battery situation has been resolved, the electrical system may have a malfunction.

Soft top model

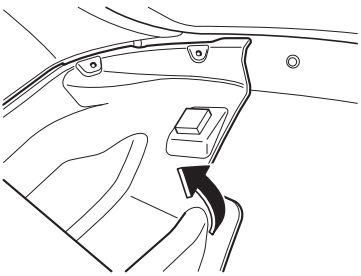
1. Close the convertible top.
   Refer to Raising the Convertible Top on page 3-41.
2. Remove the windblocker.



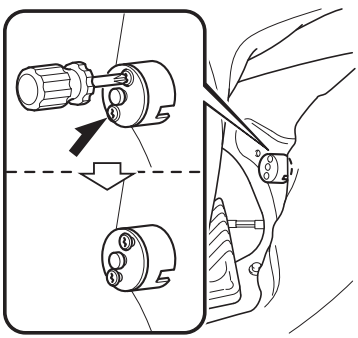
3. Remove the fasteners on the right side of the vehicle.



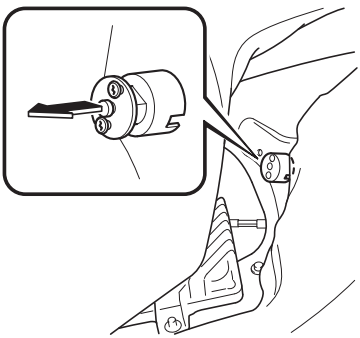
4. Partially peel back the cover on the right side of the vehicle.



5. Turn and loosen the cap screws until the screws start to spin free.



6. Pull out the cap and open the boot lid. After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.



⚠ CAUTION

Do not pull the screw when pulling the cap. Otherwise, the screw may fall off and become lost.

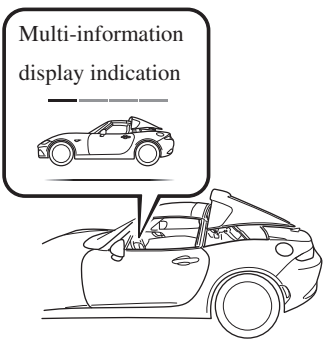
Retractable fastback model

⚠ CAUTION

Do not touch the linkage and gears. If sharp edges and gears are touched, it could cause injury.

Roof operates electrically

1. Remove the aerial if it is installed. Refer to Aerial on page 5-14.
2. Start the engine.
3. Continue pressing the retractable fastback switch in the open direction until the rear roof is completely open. Refer to Opening the Roof on page 3-51.

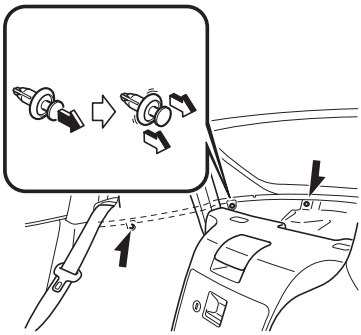


NOTE

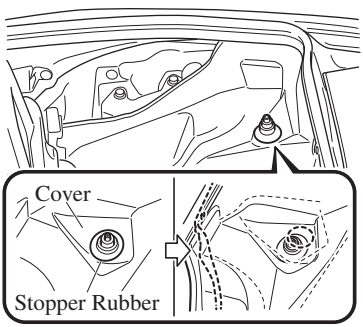
Stop operating the switch before the front roof opens. If the switch is continuously pressed, the front roof opens and the following procedures cannot be performed.

4. Switch the ignition OFF.

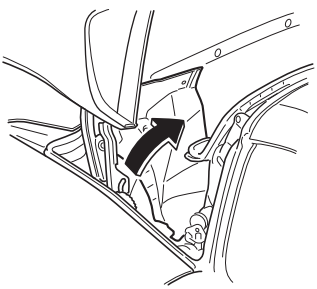
5. Remove the fasteners on the right side of the vehicle.



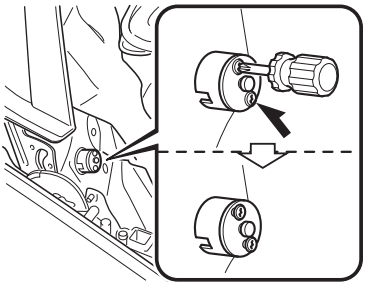
6. Push the stopper rubber through the cover on the right side of the vehicle while slightly lifting the cover up.



7. Lift up the cover from the outside of the vehicle.

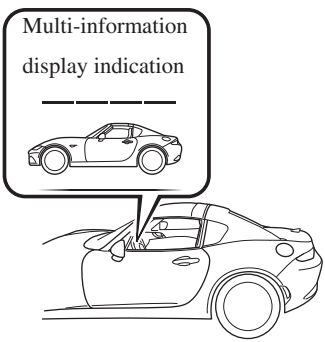


8. Insert your hand beneath the lifted cover and loosen the cap screws until they spin freely.



NOTE
At this point, do not pull out the cap. If the cap is pulled out, the boot lock will release but the rear roof will not operate electrically.

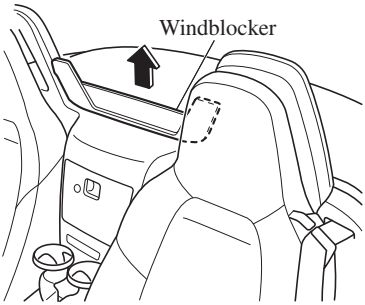
9. Start the engine.
10. Continue pressing the retractable fastback switch in the close direction until the rear roof is completely closed. Refer to Closing the Roof on page 3-52.



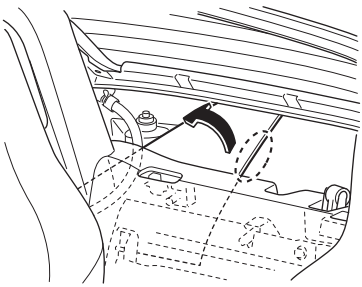
11. Switch the ignition OFF.

When Boot Lid Cannot be Opened

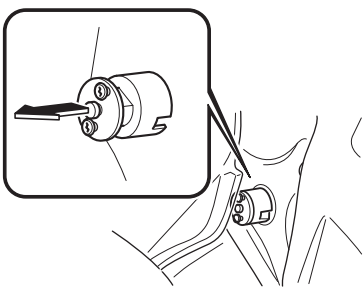
12. Remove the windblocker.



13. Partially peel back the cover on the right side from the middle of the vehicle.



14. Pull out the cap and release the boot lock.
    After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

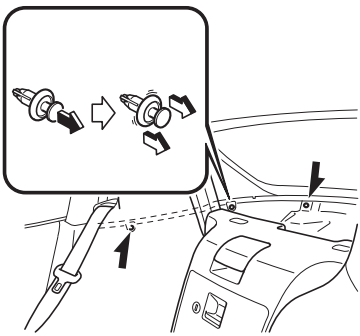


⚠ CAUTION

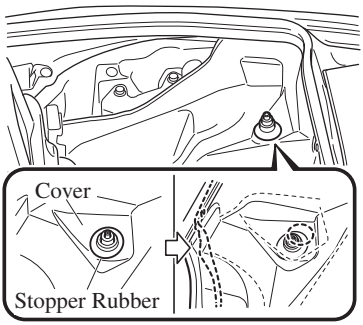
Do not pull the screw when pulling the cap. Otherwise, the screw may fall off and become lost.

Roof does not operate electrically

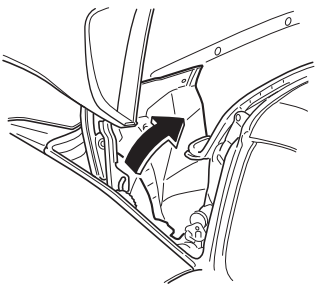
1. Remove the aerial if it is installed.
   Refer to Aerial on page 5-14.
2. Lift up the rear roof by hand.
   Refer to When the Roof Cannot be Closed on page 7-60.
3. Remove the fasteners on the right side of the vehicle.



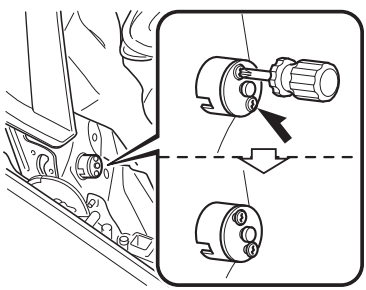
4. Push the stopper rubber through the cover on the right side of the vehicle while slightly lifting the cover up.



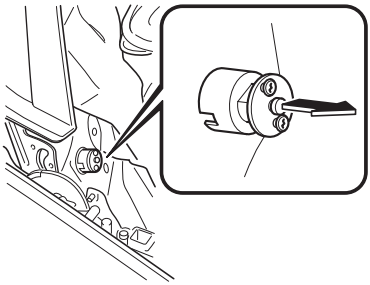
5. Lift up the cover from the outside of the vehicle.



6. Insert your hand beneath the lifted cover and loosen the cap screws until they spin freely.



7. Pull out the cap and release the boot lock.



⚠ CAUTION

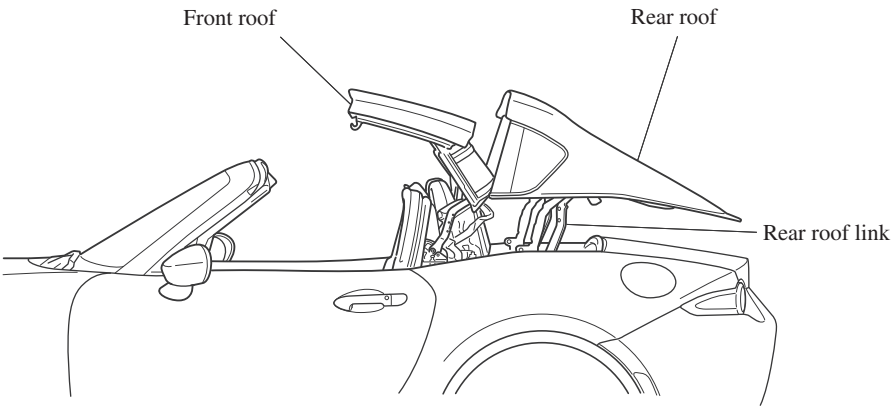
At this point, do not open the boot. If the boot is opened before the rear roof is completely closed, the boot may contact the rear roof and cause damage and become scratched.

8. Close the rear roof by hand.
   Refer to When the Roof Cannot be Closed on page 7-60.
9. Open the boot lid.
   After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

When the Roof Cannot be Closed

If the roof cannot be closed electrically by pressing the retractable fastback switch, verify the roof operation conditions first.
Refer to Operation Conditions on page 3-50.
If the roof cannot be closed even after the operation conditions are all met, have it checked at an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
If you are unable to have the roof checked at an Authorised Mazda Repairer, the roof can be closed manually as an emergency measure.
The procedure for manually closing the roof is as follows:

1. **Opening the rear roof**
   Release the locks of the rear roof and open it.
2. **Closing the front roof**
   Lift up the front roof and close it.
3. **Closing the rear roof**
   Tie the ropes to the rear roof links and close the rear roof.



⚠ CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle with the roof partially open. The vehicle operation may be affected by the wind and could result in an accident.
- Do not perform the procedure in a strong wind as it could cause an unexpected accident.
- Two adults are required to perform the procedure, especially when lifting up the front roof. Do not do it alone so as not to cause injury or vehicle damage.
- Some steps in the procedure require using multiple tools at the same time and a certain level of technical expertise. In addition, holding your body extended over the car can result in muscle strains so Mazda recommends having the roof checked at an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

- This procedure is for manually closing the roof as an emergency measure. After closing the roof manually, electric operation is not possible until the system is restored by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Using a flashlight will facilitate the procedure.

When the Roof Cannot be Closed

▼Manual closing

Before closing manually

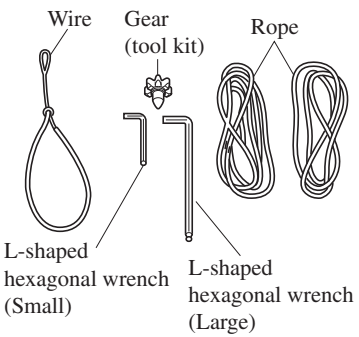
⚠ WARNING

Verify that the ignition is switched off before manually operating the roof:
Manually closing the roof with the ignition not switched off is dangerous as the motors could turn on suddenly and cause injury resulting from hands or fingers being pinched in the mechanism.

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatictransmission in Park (P), a manual transmission in Neutral.
3. Switch the ignition off while depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn on the hazard warning flasher if it is needed.

Tool preparation

Take out the five tools stored in the seat side box.
Refer to Seat Side Box on page 5-131.



Opening the rear roof

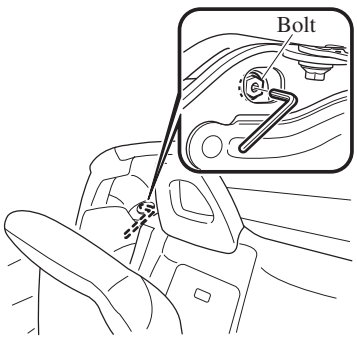
⚠ CAUTION

- When turning the bolt, cover the front roof using a cloth. The front roof may be damaged if the L-shaped hexagonal wrench contacts it.
- Because the clearance with the stored front roof is narrow, be careful not to let the L-shape hexagonal wrench contact the roof when turning the bolt.

NOTE

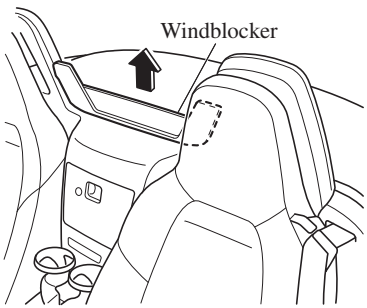
Moving the seats as far forward as possible and folding the seatbacks forward will facilitate the procedure.
Refer to Seat Operation on page 2-5.

1. Remove the aerial if it is installed.
Refer to When the Aerial on page 5-14.
2. Insert the short end of the L-shaped hexagonal wrench (Large) into the motor bracket bolt.

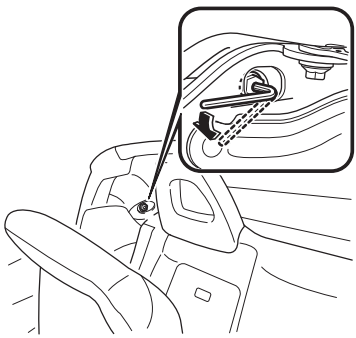


NOTE

If it is difficult to see the bolt, remove the windblocker and identify the bolt from the centre of the vehicle.



3. Turn the L-shaped hexagonal wrench (Large) anticlockwise to loosen the bolt slightly.

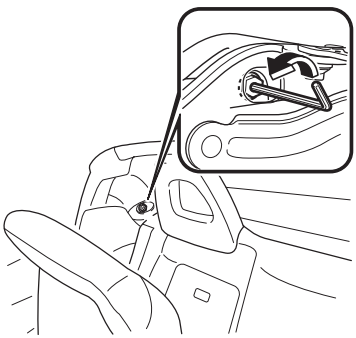


4. Remove the L-shaped hexagonal wrench (Large) once from the bolt, then insert the long end of the wrench into the bolt.

NOTE

The tip of the long end of the L-shaped hexagonal wrench can be used at an angle. Moving the wrench upward slightly will increase the clearance between the rear roof and the stored front roof and facilitate the procedure.

5. Turn the L-shaped hexagonal wrench (Large) anticlockwise 13 times or more while pressing the wrench against the bolt.

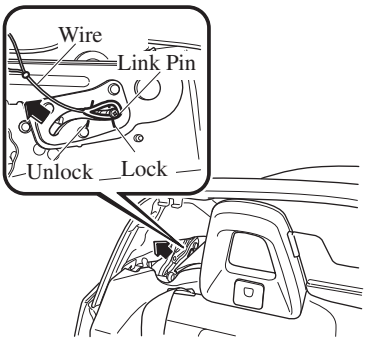


NOTE

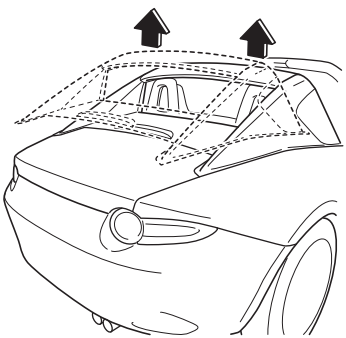
- The bolt cannot be removed completely.
- If it is hard to turn the bolt, repeat Step 3 a few times.

6. Hook the wire to the link pin shown in the figure.

7. While one person pushes the rear roof down, another person pulls the wire until a latch sound is heard and the rear roof unlocks.



8. Do the same procedure on the other side.
9. While standing on both sides of the vehicle, lift the rear roof to the position it stops while keeping the height of its left and right sides as parallel as possible.



⚠ CAUTION

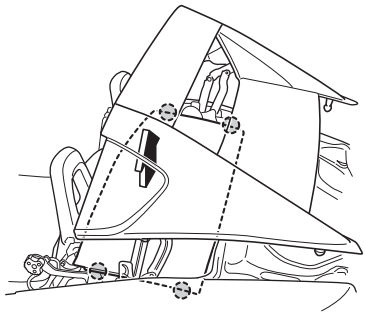
- Do not let go of the rear roof on both sides until it is fully open. The rear roof could fall if it is released too soon and cause injury.
- Do not attempt to forcefully lift the rear roof. If the rear roof is forcefully lifted without being unlocked, it could damage vehicle parts.
- Lift the rear roof with its left and right height as parallel as possible. If the rear roof is lifted with the left or right height slanted, it could deform the link mechanism.

Closing the front roof

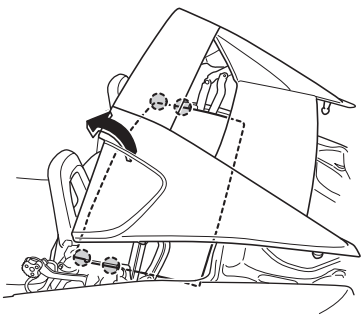
⚠ CAUTION

- Some steps in the procedure require holding your body in a strained position and if over exerted it could result in injury.
- Do the procedure being very careful not to get your hands and fingers caught while closing the front roof. Otherwise, your hands or fingers could be injured.
- Removal of the headliner is included in the procedure, however, never drive the vehicle with the headliner removed. Driving the vehicle with the headliner removed is prohibited by law. Correctly perform the procedure while following the instructions.

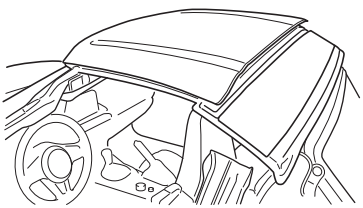
1. While standing on both sides of the vehicle, hold the front and rear sides of the front roof and pull the front roof upward.



2. Switch your hand on the rear side of the front roof to the front side and pull the front roof forward.

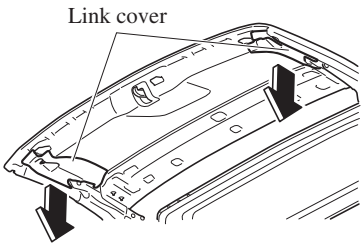


3. Stop pulling the front roof before it completely closes.

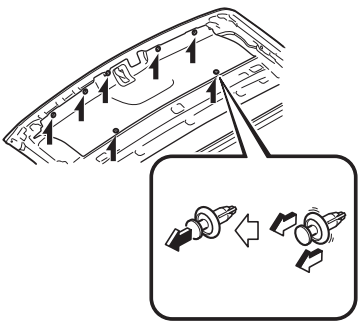


NOTE
The next step cannot be done if the front roof is closed completely.

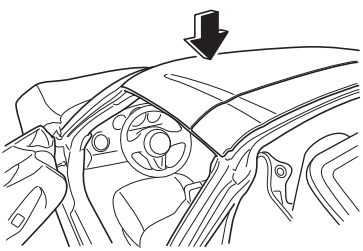
4. Remove the link covers on the left and right sides by pulling them out by hand.



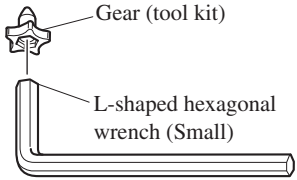
5. Remove the fasteners and the headliner.



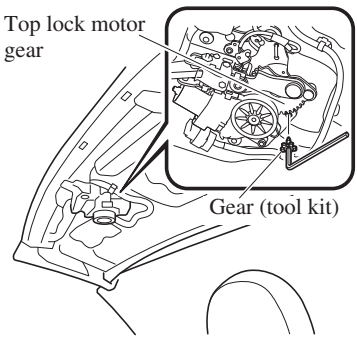
6. Lightly press the front edge of the front roof from outside of the vehicle to close the front roof completely.



7. Insert the short end of the hexagonal wrench (Small) into the gear (tool kit) and assemble.



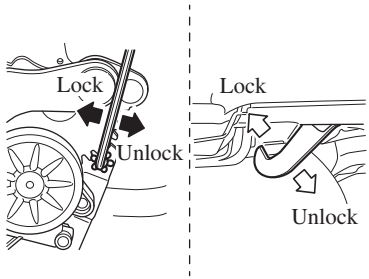
8. Insert the point of the gear (tool kit) into the hole beside the top lock motor gear with the hexagonal wrench inserted into the gear tool.



⚠ CAUTION

Insert the gear (tool kit) securely until it engages with the top lock motor gear. If the gear (tool kit) is not inserted securely, it may come off and be damaged.

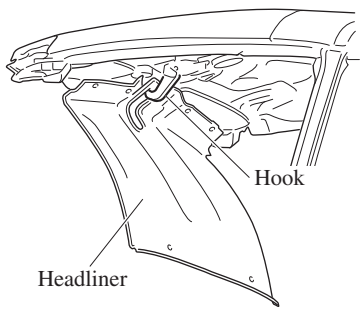
9. Rotate the hexagonal wrench and move the hook in the lock direction so that there is enough space for the opening of the headliner to be attached to the hook.



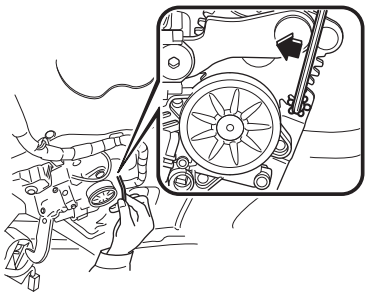
NOTE

Turning the gear (tool kit) requires some effort due to motor resistance. Slowly operate the hexagonal wrench.

10. Insert the hook into the opening of the headliner

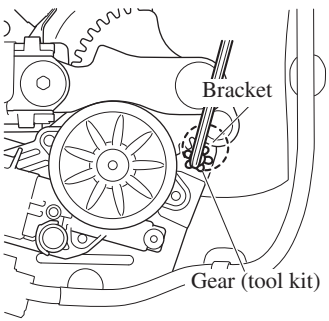


11. Turn the hexagonal wrench (Small) and gear (tool kit) anticlockwise and engage the hook with the vehicle body side.

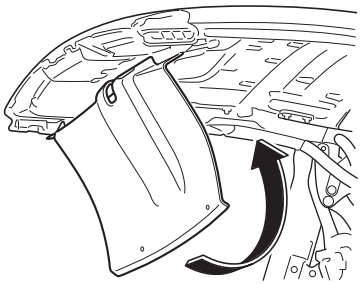


NOTE

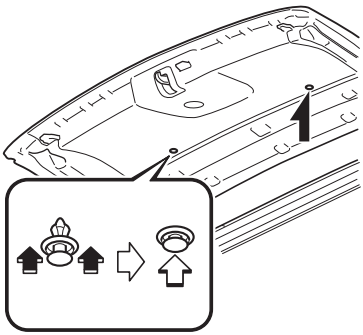
The top lock lever completely engages with the vehicle body (locked condition) at the position where the teeth of the gear (tool kit) contact the bracket.



12. Lift the rear end of the headliner with it hinged on the opening of the headliner.



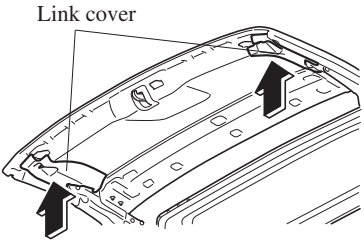
13. Install the headliner to the front roof using the fasteners at two locations.



NOTE

The fasteners in the five locations at the front of the headliner are not fastened. Do not lose the fasteners because they are needed for the required servicing at the Authorised Mazda Repairer.

14. Install the left and right link covers from the vehicle interior.

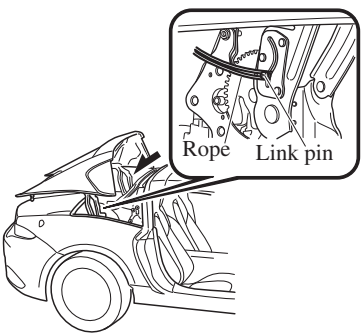


Closing the rear roof

⚠ CAUTION

- Slowly close the rear roof. If the rear roof is closed suddenly, a hand or other body part may be pinched, leading to a serious injury.
- Do not attempt to forcefully push the rear roof. Pushing the rear roof forcefully may damage vehicle parts.

1. Fold the rope in half and hook it to the link pin of the rear roof.



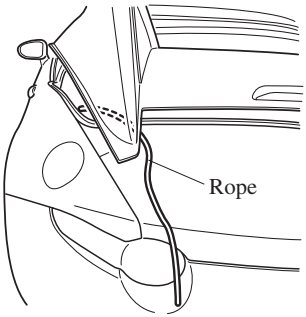
2. Do the same procedure on the other side.

3. Close the rear roof uniformly on both sides using two adults, one on each side of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Close the rear roof with its left and right positions as parallel as possible. If the rear roof is closed with its left or right height slanted, it could deform the link mechanism.

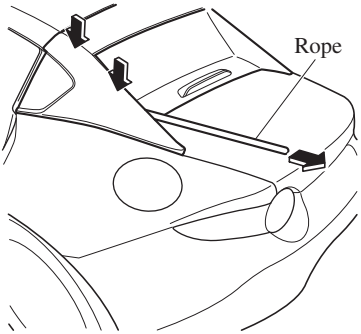
4. Slowly close the rear roof while lightly pulling the rope with one hand so that the rope does not unhook.



NOTE

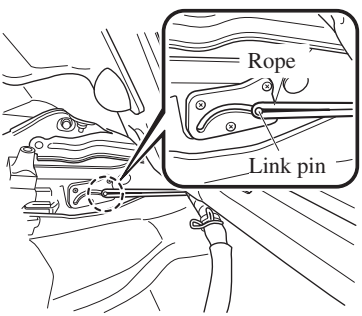
Route the rope rearward through the clearance between the rear roof and boot.

5. One person pushes the rear roof down and the other person pulls the rope strongly and straight back towards the vehicle rear until a click sound is heard.



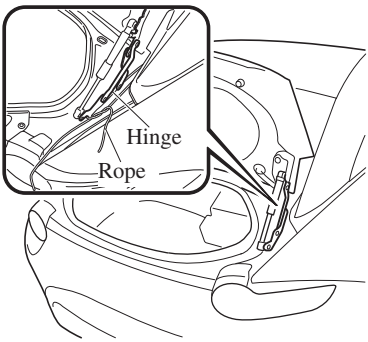
NOTE

- The rear roof is locked completely if the position where the rope is hooked is at the rear end of the bracket groove in the direction of the vehicle rear, as shown in the figure, when viewed from the vehicle interior.



- If the rear roof is not locked completely, the boot will not open even if the remote release button (if equipped), the electric boot lid opener, or the boot button on the transmitter is operated.

6. Do the same procedure on the other side.
7. Open the boot and tie the rope to the boot hinge.



8. Tie off the other side rope the same way.
9. Close the boot lid.

After finishing the procedure

After finishing the procedure, have the roof checked at an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

⚠ *WARNING*

Drive the vehicle at a speed of 40 km/h (24 mph) or lower before having the roof checked at an Authorised Mazda Repairer:
The front roof may open while the vehicle is being driven and cause an accident.

MEMO

8 Customer Information

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Warranty **8-2**
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country 8-2
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories 8-3

Cell Phones **8-4**
Cell Phones Warning 8-4

Recording of Vehicle Data **8-5**
Recording of Vehicle Data 8-5

Declaration of Conformity **8-6**
Declaration of Conformity 8-6

Electromagnetic Compatibility **8-19**
Electromagnetic Compatibility 8-19

Collection/Disposal of Old Equipment/Used Battery **8-21**
Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and Used Batteries 8-21

Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country

Registering your vehicle in a foreign country may be problematic depending on whether it meets the specific emission and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle will be driven. Consequently, your vehicle may require modifications at personal expense in order to meet the regulations.
In addition, you should be aware of the following issues:
Satisfactory vehicle servicing may be difficult or impossible in another country.

The fuel specified for your vehicle may be unavailable.

Parts, servicing techniques, and tools necessary to maintain and repair your vehicle may be unavailable.

There might not be an Authorised Mazda Dealer in the country you plan to take your vehicle.

The Mazda warranty is valid only in certain countries.

Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories

Please note that technical alterations to the original state of your Mazda vehicle can affect the safety of the vehicle. Such technical alterations include not only the use of unsuitable spare parts, but also accessories, fittings or attachments, including rims and tyres.

Genuine Mazda Parts and Genuine Mazda Accessories have been specifically designed for Mazda vehicles.
Other parts and accessories than those mentioned above have not been examined and approved by Mazda unless explicitly stated by Mazda. We cannot certify the suitability of such products. Mazda is not liable for any damage caused by the use of such products.

⚠ *WARNING*

Be very careful in choosing and installing add-on electrical equipment, such as mobile telephones, two-way radios, stereo systems, and car alarm systems:
Incorrectly choosing or installing improper add-on equipment or choosing an improper installer is dangerous. Essential systems could be damaged, causing engine stalling, air-bag (SRS) activation, ABS/TCS/DSC inactivation, or a fire in the vehicle.

Mazda assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of add-on non-genuine parts or accessories.

Cell Phones Warning

⚠ *WARNING*

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of communication equipment in vehicles in your country:
Use of any electrical devices such as cell phones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Dialing a number on a cell phone while driving also ties-up the driver's hands. Use of these devices will cause the driver to be distracted and could lead to a serious accident. If a passenger is unable to use the device, pull off the right-of-way to a safe area before use. If use of a cell phone is necessary despite this warning, use a hands-free system to at least leave the hands free to drive the vehicle. Never use a cell phone or other electrical devices while the vehicle is moving and, instead, concentrate on the full-time job of driving.

Recording of Vehicle Data

This vehicle is equipped with a computer which records the following main vehicle data related to vehicle controls, operation, and other driving conditions.

Recorded data

- Vehicle conditions such as engine speed and vehicle speed
- Driving operation conditions such as accelerator and brake pedals, and information related to the environmental circumstances while the vehicle is driven
- Malfunction diagnosis information from each on-vehicle computer
- Information related to controls of other on-vehicle computers

NOTE
The recorded data may vary depending on the vehicle grade and optional equipment. Voice and images are not recorded.

Data handling

Mazda and its subcontracting parties may obtain and use the recorded data for vehicle malfunction diagnosis, research and development, and quality improvement.
Mazda will not disclose or provide any of the obtained data to a third party unless:

- An agreement from the vehicle owner (agreements from lessor and lessee for leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other law enforcement authorities
- For statistical processing by a research institution after processing the data so that identification of the owner or the vehicle is impossible

Declaration of Conformity

▼Keyless Entry System/Immobilizer System

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

CAUTION : Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.
Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
CAUTION : Do not expose Hand Unit to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

Keyless System Radio approval Marking

[illegible]	ICASA	ICASA

OMAN - TRA R/0225/11/SKE13E-01 R/0231/11/SKE13E-01 R/0234/11/SKE13A-01 R/0233/11/SKE13J-02 [illegible]	TRA REGISTERED No: [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] DEALER No: [illegible]	MCMC [illegible]

FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
FCC
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

Declaration of Conformity

Thailand
"This telecommunication equipment is in conpliance with NTC requirements."

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA -SKE13D-01/SKE135-01/SKE134-01/ SKE133-02

Israel

א. השימוש במכשיר היינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

▼Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System

Hella KGaA Hueck & Co.

HELLA

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity Rev.1

We,

Company: Hella KGaA Hueck & Co.
Street: Rixbecker Str. 75
Location: 59552 Lippstadt
Country: Germany

declare under the sole responsibility that the following product:

Type designation: LCA 3.5 SG1 - M
LCA 3.5 SG2 - M
Type or model: —
Trade name: Hella
Serial No.: —

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC).
The product is in conformity with the following standards and/or normative documents:

Applied standards / directives	Title or description of the standard	
[illegible]	Safety of information technology equipment Assessment of electronic and electrical equipment related to human exposure restrictions for [illegible]	Health & Safety (Art. 3(1) (a)
[illegible]	Electro Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 3: Specific conditions for Short Range Devices (SRD) operating on frequencies between 7 GHz and 40 GHz	EMC (Art. 3.1 (b))
[illegible]	Road Transport and Traffic Telematics (RTTT); Short Range Radar equipment operating in the 24.00 GHz to 24.25 GHz frequency range for [illegible]	Other (incl. Art. 3(2) and voluntary

Supplementary information:

Notified Body involved	—	
Technical file held by	Gerald Zemke, E-ED-DAS-DR	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co.

Signed by or for the manufacturer:

Name: Bernhard Hlubek
Manager Design and Development
Driver Assistance Systems
Business Division Electronics

Contact:

Name: Gerald Zemke
Telephone: +49 (0) 2941 38 2009
Fax: +49 (0) 2941 38 472009
Email: Gerald.Zemke@hella.com

Lippstadt, 2015-02-18

(Signature)

Declaration of Conformity

South Africa

ICASA

TA-2015/367

United Arab Emirates

TRA
Registered No:
ER40308/15
Dealer No:
DA0053436/10

Republic of Singapore

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA103238

Oman

Approval number: TRA/TA-R/2446/15
Applicant number: D090016

[illegible]

[illegible]

Regulations for the low power radio wave radiation devices

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

Regelungen für die Low-Power Funkwellenmahlung Geräten

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

Declaration of Conformity

▼Bluetooth® Hands-Free

Type A

English	Hereby, *Johnson Controls Automotive*, declares that this **Hands-Free Telephone System** is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Finnish	*Johnson Controls Automotive* vakuuttaa täten että **Hands-Free Telephone System** tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart *Johnson Controls Automotive* dat het toestel **Hands-Free Telephone System** in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
French	Par la présente, *Johnson Controls Automotive* déclare que ce **Hands-Free Telephone System** est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions de la directive 1999/5/CE qui lui sont applicables. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Swedish	Härmed intygar *Johnson Controls Automotive* att denna **Hands-Free Telephone System** står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskaperna och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Danish	Undertegnede Johnson Controls Automotive erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **Hands-Free Telephone System** overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
German	Hiermit erklärt Johnson Controls Automotive, dass sich dieses **Hands-Free Telephone System** in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den anderen relevanten Vorschriften der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet". Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Johnson Controls Automotive ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ **Hands-Free Telephone System** ΣΥΜΦΩΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΑΛΛΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Italian	Con la presente Johnson Controls Automotive dichiara che questo **Hands-Free Telephone System** è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Spanish	Por medio de la presente Johnson Controls Automotive declara que el **Hands-Free Telephone System** cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf
Portuguese	Johnson Controls Automotive declara que este **Hands-Free Telephone System** está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE. Website: http://www.mazdahandsfree.com/EU_DoC.pdf

Declaration of Conformity

Model: MAZ

Brand: **Johnson Controls Inc.**
915 E. 32nd St., Holland. MI
49423 Michigan
United States of America
MAZ

CE 0682

FCC ID: CB2MBLUEC09

Ukraine

Jamaica This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZ."

Singapore

Complies with
IDA Standards
N1410-12

Soulh Africa

TA-2012/768
ICASA
APPROVED

Algeria ' Agréé par l'ARPT' 'Référence d'agrément '

Azerbaijan

New Caledonia "ANFR-13INF0033"

Serbia

Moldova

1024

Declaration of Conformity

Type B/Type C

1999/5/EC Directive regulatory notice:

This device has been evaluated against the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive.

Bulgarian	С настоящото Johnson Controls Inc. декларира, че AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT отговаря на съществените изисквания и другите приложими изисквания на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Croatian	Johnson Controls Inc. izjavljuje da je ova jedinica AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT sukladna bitnim zahtjevima i ostalim primjenjivim uvjetima Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Czech	Johnson Controls Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že tento AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Danish	Undertegnede Johnson Controls Inc. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart Johnson Controls Inc. dat het toestel AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
English	Hereby, Johnson Controls Inc., declares that this AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Estonian	Käesolevaga kinnitab Johnson Controls Inc. seadme AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
German	Hiermit erklärt Johnson Controls Inc., dass sich das Gerät AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Johnson Controls Inc. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Hungarian	Alulírott, Johnson Controls Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Finnish	Johnson Controls Inc. vakuuttaa täten että AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
French	Par la présente Johnson Controls Inc. déclare que l'appareil AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Icelandic	Hér með lýsir Johnson Controls Inc. yfir því að AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italian	Con la presente Johnson Controls Inc. dichiara che questo AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvian	Ar šo Johnson Controls Inc. deklarē, ka AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuanian	Šiuo Johnson Controls Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Maltese	Hawnhekk, Johnson Controls Inc., jiddikjara li dan AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT jikkonformaw mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Norwegian	Johnson Controls Inc. erklærer herved at utstyret AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polish	Niniejszym Johnson Controls Inc. oświadcza, że AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portuguese	Johnson Controls Inc. declara que este AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Declaration of Conformity

Slovak	Johnson Controls Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES
Slovenian	Johnson Controls Inc. izjavlja, da je na AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES
Spanish	Por medio de la presente Johnson Controls Inc. declara que AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE
Swedish	Härmed intygar Johnson Controls Inc. att denna AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS INFOTAINMENT HEAD UNIT står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskaperkrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (RATTE art. 3.2)	EN 300 328 v1.7.1 EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1
EMC (RATTE art. 3.1b)	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.2 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1
Health & Safety (RATTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010 + A12:2011 + AC:2011 EN 62311:2008

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body: Notified Body:

AT4 wireless, S.A.
Parque Tecnológico de Andalucía
C/ Severo Ochoa 2
29590 Campanillas – Málaga
SPAIN
Notified Body No: 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product:

CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

Declaration of Conformity

FCC ID
CB262932

CE MARK
CE 1909

MODEL - MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
BRAND - Johnson Controls, Inc.

Botswana	BOCRA REGISTERED No : TA/2013/459
Brunei	Certificate Number to be included DRG-D-BR/MM-03-1998-7494-LPD-22922
Grenada	[illegible] CL 681 / 13 - TA
Indonesia	30400/SDPPI/2013 3311
Israel	51-38319 [illegible]
Jamaica	This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU". This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – "MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU".
Jordan	The manufacturer: Johnson Controls, Inc. Equipment type: MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2013/158
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément [illegible] Date d'agrément [illegible]
Mozambique	INCM - 21ETA13 Model - MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU Manufacturer - Johnson Controls, Inc.
Nepal	Type = MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
New Caledonia	ANFR - 130/F0025
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission
Panama	ASEP DTEL No. 1201
Papua New Guinea	NICTA PNG13/0453
Peru	MTC 1300160
Philippines	NTC Type Accepted No. ESD-1307587C
Sint Maarten	RT&P - 2013/042-b/TA&2013/042-a/TA
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	NTRC - NTRC/01
Thailand	NBTC - RT.4780
Uruguay	URSEC - 431/FR/2013

Algeria	'Agréé par l'ARPT' and 'Référence d'agrément '.
Azerbaijan	AZS
Oman	OMAN - TRA R/1417/12 D100428
Singapore	Complies with IDA Standards N1995-13
South Africa	TA-2013/1184 ICASA APPROVED
UAE	TRA Registered No: 011528 Dealer No DA0038312/10
Ukraine	
Vietnam	ICT
Honduras	Frequency Range (MHz): 2400.0 – 2483.5 Output (Watts): BT: <4dBm, WLAN: <30dBm

Declaration of Conformity

CCAH14LP1640T6

Product Name:	Connectivity Master Unit
Certification Name:	MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU
Certificate Holder:	Visteon Corporation

注意！

依據 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信規定作業之無線電信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Electromagnetic Compatibility

Your Mazda has been tested and certified to the UNECE[*1] 10 regulation as related to electromagnetic compatibility. Radio Frequency (RF) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters, etc.) may only be fitted to your Mazda if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below.

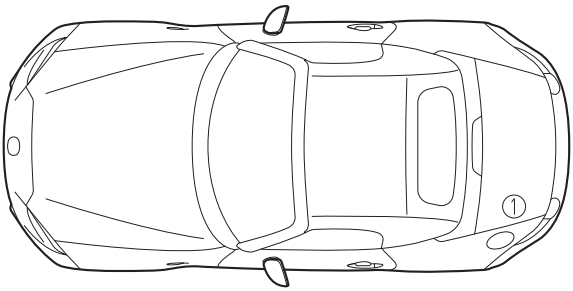
*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe.

It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the air bag system.
- Do not fasten aerial lead to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes or brake pipes. Avoid running the aerial lead parallel with the wire harness to the best extent possible.
- Keep the aerial and power leads at least 100 mm (3.9 in) from any electronic modules and the air bags.
- Avoid using the cigar lighter or accessory socket as a power source for the RF-transmitting equipment.

Electromagnetic Compatibility



Aerial positions:

1 : left of boot lid

Frequency Band (MHz)	Maximum output power (Wattage)	Aerial Positions
50 — 54	50	1
68 — 87.5	50	1
142 — 176	50	1
380 — 470	50	1
806 — 940	10	1
1200 — 1300	10	1
1710 — 1885	10	1
1885 — 2025	10	1
2400 — 2500	0.01*1	In a cabin*1

*1 Only for Bluetooth®

NOTE

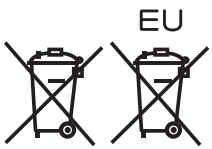
After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.
Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition ON
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and Used Batteries

When disposing your old battery, please refer to the information as follows.

▼Information on Disposal in the European Union



These crossed-out wheeled bin symbols on the products, packaging, and/or accompanying documents mean that used electronic products and batteries should not be mixed with general household waste. For proper treatment, recovery and recycling of old products and used batteries, please take them to applicable collection points, in accordance with your national legislation and the Directives 2006/66/EC.

By disposing of these products and batteries correctly, you will help to save valuable resources and prevent any potential negative effects on human health and the environment which could otherwise arise from inappropriate waste handling.

For more information about collection and recycling of old products and batteries, please contact your local municipality, your waste disposal service or the point of sales where you purchased the items.

NOTE

The bottom two letters might be used in combination with the crossed-out wheeled bin symbol. In this case it complies with the requirement established by the Directive for the chemical involved.
“Pb” and “Cd” mean lead and cadmium respectively.

Collection/Disposal of Old Equipment/Used Battery

▼Information on Disposal in Other Countries Outside the European Union

The above symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard old products and used batteries, please contact your local authorities, your waste disposal service or the point of sales where you purchased the items, and ask for the correct method of disposal.

9 Specifications

Technical information about your Mazda.

Identification Numbers **9-2**
Vehicle Information Labels 9-2

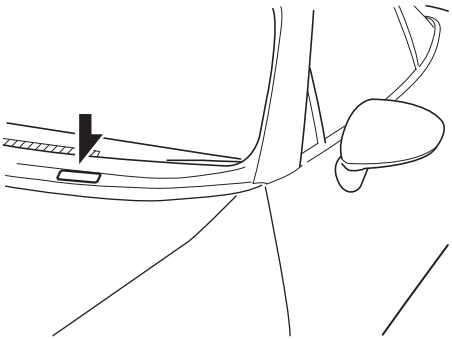
Specifications **9-4**
Specifications 9-4

Personalisation Features **9-10**
Personalisation Features 9-10

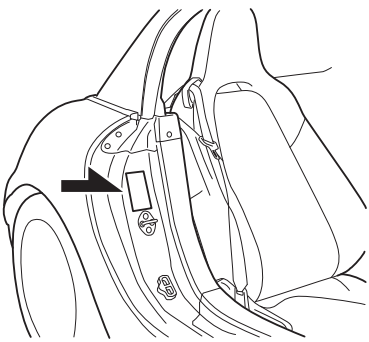
Vehicle Information Labels

▼Vehicle Identification Number (South Africa, Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)

The vehicle identification number legally identifies your vehicle. The number is on a plate attached to the cowl panel located on the left corner of the instrument panel. This plate can easily be seen through the windscreen.



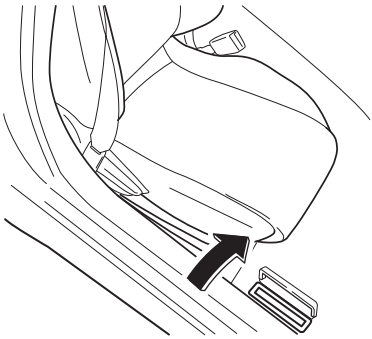
▼Model Plate



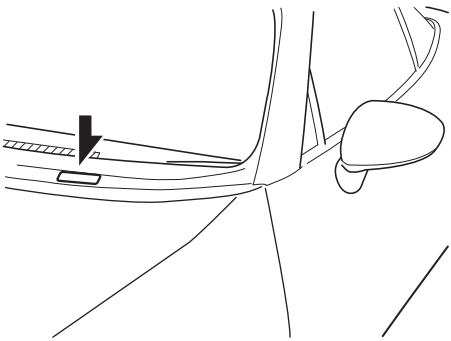
▼Chassis Number/Vehicle Identification Number (Ireland, U.K.)

Chassis Number

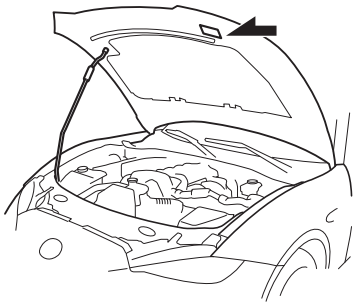
Open the cover shown in the figure to check the chassis number.



Vehicle Identification Number

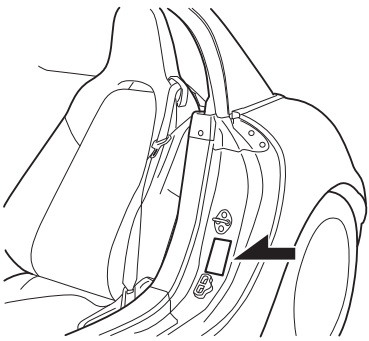


▼Vehicle Emission Control Information Label (The Philippines)

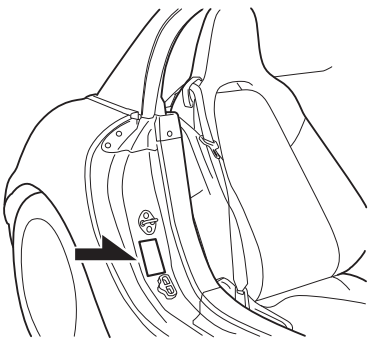


▼Tyre Pressure Label

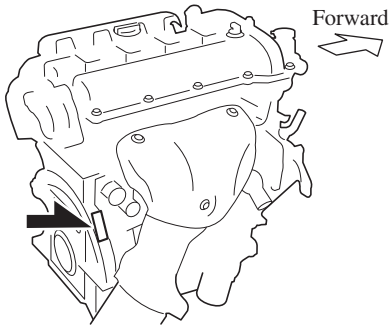
Left-hand drive model



Right-hand drive model

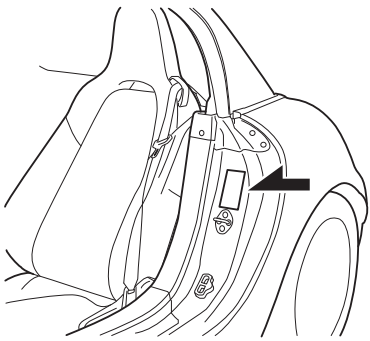


▼Engine Number



▼Conformity Plate (Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)

Production year and month are shown on this plate.



Specifications

▼Engine

Item	Specification	
	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	SKYACTIV-G 2.0
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder	
Bore × Stroke	74.5 × 85.8 mm (2.93 × 3.38 in)	83.5 × 91.2 mm (3.29 × 3.59 in)
Displacement	1,496 ml (1,496 cc)	1,998 ml (1,998 cc)
Compression ratio	13.0	

Arab Gulf Cooperation Council

Item	Specification	
	Soft top model	Retractable fastback model
Maximum engine power/revolution	118 kW/6,000 rpm	118 kW/6,000 rpm
Maximum engine torque/revolution	200 N·m/4,600 rpm	200 N·m/4,600 rpm
Maximum speed	198 km/h (123 mph)	194 km/h (121 mph)

▼Electrical System

Item	Classification	
Battery	N-55 (S)*1	
	12V-45Ah/20HR*2	
Spark-plug number	Mazda Genuine spark plug*3	PE5R-18-110 or PE5S-18-110

*1 N-55 (S) is designed for i-stop system (FOR STOP & START)/i-ELOOP system. Only N-55 (S) should be used to ensure correct operation of i-stop system (FOR STOP & START)/i-ELOOP system. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.
*2 Not for i-stop system/i-ELOOP system.
*3 The spark plugs provide the SKYACTIV-G its optimum performance. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the iridium plugs, do not use a wire brush. The fine particulate coating on the iridium alloy and platinum tips could be damaged.

▼Lubricant Quality

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Lubricant</th><th colspan="3">Classification</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Europe</th><th>Except Europe</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Engine oil*1</td><td colspan="2">Recommended Oils*2</td><td>Oil Quality</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Mazda Original Oil Supra 0W-20</td><td rowspan="5">API SG/SH/SJ/SL/SM/SN or ILSAC GF-II/GF-III/GF-IV/GF-V</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Mazda Original Oil Ultra 5W-30</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Alternative Oil Quality*3</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">API SL/SM/SN or ACEA A3/A5</td><td>0W-20</td></tr>
<tr><td>5W-30</td></tr>
<tr><td>Coolant</td><td colspan="3">FL-22 type</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manual transmission oil</td><td colspan="3">Mazda Original Long Life Gear Oil IS*4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Automatic transmission fluid</td><td colspan="3">JWS3309</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rear differential oil</td><td colspan="3">Mazda Long Life Hypoid Gear Oil SG1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Brake/Clutch fluid</td><td colspan="3">SAE J1703 or FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4</td></tr>
</table>

*1 Refer to Recommended Oil on page 6-17.
Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

*2 Mazda Original Oils are specially designed/tested for the respective engine. For optimum performance we recommend to use Mazda Original Oils at all times.

*3 If you are unable to find a Mazda Original Oil, alternative oils meeting the listed specification may also be used.

*4 Mazda Original Long Life Gear Oil IS is superior oil for optimum shift-feel. Using Mazda Original Long Life Gear Oil IS is recommended.
If Mazda Original Long Life Gear Oil IS cannot be obtained, use standard oil (API Service GL-4 (SAE 75W-90)). However, shifting in very low temperatures may become difficult.

Specifications

▼Capacities

(Approximate Quantities)

Item				Capacity
Engine oil	With oil filter replacement			4.3 L (4.5 US qt, 3.8 Imp qt)
	Without oil filter replacement			4.1 L (4.3 US qt, 3.6 Imp qt)
Coolant	SKYACTIV-G 1.5	Left-hand drive model		5.6 L (5.9 US qt, 4.9 Imp qt)
		Right-hand drive model		5.8 L (6.1 US qt, 5.1 Imp qt)
	SKYACTIV-G 2.0	Manual transmission	Left-hand drive model	6.0 L (6.3 US qt, 5.3 Imp qt)
			Right-hand drive model	6.2 L (6.6 US qt, 5.5 Imp qt)
		Automatic transmission	Saudi Arabia	6.2 L (6.6 US qt, 5.5 Imp qt)
			Right-hand drive model	6.0 L (6.3 US qt, 5.3 Imp qt)
			Except above	5.9 L (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt)
Manual transmission oil				2.0 L (2.1 US qt, 1.8 Imp qt)
Automatic transmission fluid				7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)
Rear differential oil				0.6 L (0.6 US qt, 0.5 Imp qt)
Fuel tank				45.0 L (11.9 US gal, 9.90 Imp gal)

Check oil and fluid levels with dipsticks or reservoir gauges.

▼Dimensions

Item		Vehicle specification	
		Soft top model	Retractable fastback model
Overall length		3,915 mm (154.1 in)	3,915 mm (154.1 in)
Overall width		1,735 mm (68.3 in)	1,735 mm (68.3 in)
Overall height	16 inch wheel vehicle	1,225 mm (48.2 in)	1,230 mm (48.4 in)
	17 inch wheel vehicle	1,230 mm (48.4 in)	1,235 mm (48.6 in)
Front tread		1,495 mm (58.9 in)	1,495 mm (58.9 in)
Rear tread		1,505 mm (59.3 in)	1,505 mm (59.3 in)
Wheelbase		2,310 mm (90.9 in)	2,310 mm (90.9 in)

▼Light Bulbs

Exterior light

Light bulb		Category	
		Wattage	UNECE*1(SAE)
Headlights	High beam	LED*2	— (—)
	Low beam	LED*2	— (—)
Running lights	LED type	LED*2	— (—)
	Bulb type	21	W21W (7440)
Position lights		LED*2	— (—)
Front direction indicator lights		21	WY21W (7443NA)
Side direction indicator lights		5*3	WY5W (—)
High-mount brake light		LED*2	— (—)
Rear direction indicator lights		21	WY21W (7443NA)
Brake lights		LED*2	— (—)
Tail lights		LED*2	— (—)
Reverse lights		21	W21W (7440)
Rear fog light*		21	W21W (7440)
Number plate lights		5	W5W (—)

*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe.
*2 LED is the abbreviation for Light Emitting Diode.
*3 Bulb replacement is not possible because it is built into the unit. Replace the unit.

Interior light

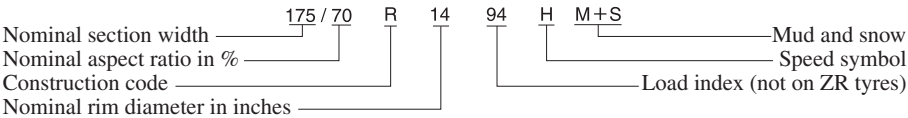
Light bulb	Category	
	Wattage	UNECE*1
Overhead light	10	—
Boot light	5	—

*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe.

Specifications

▼Tyres

Sample tyre mark and its meaning



Tyre mark information

Choose the proper tyres for your vehicle using the following tyre mark information.

Speed symbol	Maximum permissible speed
Q	Up to 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	Up to 170 km/h (105 mph)
S	Up to 180 km/h (111 mph)
T	Up to 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	Up to 200 km/h (124 mph)
H	Up to 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	Up to 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	Up to 270 km/h (167 mph)
Y	Up to 300 km/h (186 mph)
ZR	Over 240 km/h (149 mph)

Tyre and inflation pressure

NOTE

The tyres have been optimally matched with the chassis of your vehicle.
When replacing tyres, Mazda recommends that you replace tyres of the same type originally fitted to your vehicle. For details, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Check the tyre pressure label for tyre size and inflation pressure (page 6-34).
After adjusting the tyre pressure, initialization of the tyre pressure monitoring system is necessary to make the system operate normally.
Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Initialization on page 4-143.

Standard tyre

(Except Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)

Tyre size	Inflation pressure	
	Front	Rear
195/50R16 84V	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)
195/50RF16 84V	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)
205/45R17 84W	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)

(Arab Gulf Cooperation Council)

Tyre size	Inflation pressure	
	Front	Rear
195/50RF16 84V	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)

Winter tyre

Tyre size	Inflation pressure	
	Front	Rear
195/50R16*1 M+S	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)	220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)
205/45R17*2 M+S	200 kPa (2.0 bar, 29 psi)	220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)

*1 Load index and Speed Symbol: 84Q/84S/84H/84V
*2 Load index and Speed Symbol: 84Q/84S/84H/84V/84W

Wheel nut tightening torque

When installing a tyre, tighten the wheel nut to the following torque.
108—147 N·m (12—14 kgf·m, 80—108 ft·lbf)

▼Fuses

Refer to Fuses on page 6-47.

▼Brakes

If you require information regarding the wear limit specification for the brake disc plates and the measurement method, please contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The information is made freely available.

Personalisation Features

The following personalisation features can be set or changed by the customer or an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Personalisation features which can be changed differ depending on the market and specification.

Settings Change Method

① **Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen.**
A: Refer to Settings on page 5-67.
B: Refer to Fuel Economy Monitor on page 4-93.

② **Settings can be changed by operating the vehicle switches.**
C: Refer to Auto Lock/Unlock Function on page 3-17.
D: Refer to Transmitter on page 3-5.
E: Refer to Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch (With the advanced keyless function) on page 3-14.

③ **Settings can be changed by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.**

Item	Feature		Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
					①	②	③
Safety							
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) (page 4-106)	Distance by which the system uses to determine the possibility of a lane departure		Adaptive	Adaptive/ Early/ Medium/ Late	A	—	×
	Warning sensitivity (likelihood of warning)		Medium	Often/Medium/ Rare	A	—	×
	Warning beep sound		Rumbl.	Beep/Rumbl.	A	—	×
	Warning beep volume	Rumbl.	Low	High/Mid/Low	A	—	×
		Beep	Low	High/Low	A	—	×
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system (page 4-112)	Warning beep volume*1		High	High/ Low/ Off	A	—	×

Personalisation Features

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
Vehicle						
Door locks (page 3-17)	Operation condition of auto lock/unlock function	Lock: When Driving Unlock: IGN Off	Lock: When Driving Unlock: In Park/ Lock: Out of Park Unlock: In Park/ Lock: Shifting Out of Park/ Lock: When Driving Unlock: IGN Off/ Lock: When Driving/ Off	A	C	×
Keyless entry system (page 3-3)	Time for locking door automatically	30 seconds	90 seconds/ 60 seconds/ 30 seconds	A	—	×
Advanced keyless entry system (page 3-9)	Time for locking door automatically	30 seconds	90 seconds/ 60 seconds/ 30 seconds	A	—	×
	Auto-lock function operation/non-operational	Off	On/Off	A	—	×
	Beep volume when locking/unlocking	Off or Medium	High/ Medium/ Low/ Off	A	D, E	×
Illuminated entry system (page 5-124)	Time until interior lights turn off after closing door	15 seconds	60 seconds/ 30 seconds/ 15 seconds/ 7.5 seconds	A	—	×
	Time until interior lights turn off automatically when any door is not closed completely	30 minutes	60 minutes/ 30 minutes/ 10 minutes	A	—	×
Auto-wiper control (page 4-72)	Operational/non-operational	On	On/Off*2	A	—	×
Running lights (page 4-70)	Operational/non-operational	On	On/Off	—	—	×
Auto-light control (page 4-63)	Timing by which lights turn on	Medium	High/ Med. High/ Medium/ Med. Low/ Low	A	—	×

Personalisation Features

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
High Beam Control System (HBC) (page 4-103)	Operational/non-operational*3	On	On/Off	A	—	×
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) (page 4-102)	Operational/non-operational*3	On	On/Off	A	—	×
Lights-on reminder (page 7-49)	Warning beep volume	High, Low or OFF	High/Low/Off	A	—	×
Coming home light (page 4-68)	Time until headlights turn off	30 seconds	120 seconds/ 90 seconds/ 60 seconds/ 30 seconds/ Off	A	—	×
Leaving home light (page 4-69)	Operational/non-operational	On or Off	On/Off	A	—	×
Turn indicator (page 4-71)	Beep volume	High	High/Low	A	—	×
Three-flash turn signal (page 4-72)	Operational/non-operational	On or Off	On/Off	A	—	×
System						
Language	Language indicated in display	English	Depends on market*4	A	—	×
Temperature	Temperature unit indicated in display	°C	°F/°C	A	—	×
Distance	Distance unit indicated in display	mi or km	mi/km	A	—	×
Fuel Economy Monitor (page 4-93)						
Ending display	On/off	Off	On/Off	B	—	×
Fuel economy resetting procedure	Linkage/non-linkage with fuel economy reset and trip meter A reset	Off	On/Off	B	—	×

*1 Only the volume of the warning beep during Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) operation can be changed. The volume of the warning beep during Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) operation cannot be changed.
*2 If the auto-wiper control is set to Off, the wiper lever AUTO position is set to intermittent operation.
*3 Though these systems can be turned Off, doing so will defeat the purpose of the system and Mazda recommends that these systems remain On.
*4 Available only in display from the centre display.

10 Index

1

120 km/h warning beep..... 7-53

A

Accessory Socket..... 5-125
Active Bonnet Warning Beep..... 7-50
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)..... 4-102
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories 8-3
Adjustable Speed Limiter 4-122
Activation/deactivation 4-125
Adjustable speed limiter display... 4-123
Adjustable speed limiter main indication (white) 4-124
Adjustable speed limiter main indicator light (amber)..... 4-124
Adjustable speed limiter set indication (green) 4-124
Adjustable speed limiter set indicator light (green)..... 4-124
Setting the system 4-127
Speed limiter warning beep..... 4-124
Temporarily cancelling the system..... 4-128
Adjustable Speed Limiter Display..... 4-30
Advanced Key
Advanced keyless entry system 3-9
Operational range..... 3-10
Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep..... 7-49
Air Bag Systems 2-33
Air-Conditioning System 5-2
Fully automatic type..... 5-10
Manual type..... 5-5
Operating tips..... 5-2
Vent operation 5-3
Ambient Temperature Display...4-29, 4-37
Antilock Brake System (ABS)..... 4-86
Ashtray..... 5-133
Audio Control Switch
Adjusting the volume 5-70
Mute switch..... 5-71
Seek switch..... 5-70
Audio System..... 5-14
Aerial..... 5-14
Audio control switch 5-69
Audio set [Type A (non-touchscreen)]..... 5-28
Audio set [Type B/Type C (touchscreen)]..... 5-44
AUX/USB mode 5-71
Operating tips for audio system 5-14
Automatic Transmission 4-51
Active Adaptive Shift (AAS) 4-53
Direct mode..... 4-61
Driving tips..... 4-61
Manual shift mode..... 4-55
Shift-lock override 4-54
Shift-lock system..... 4-54
Shift position indication 4-52
Transmission ranges..... 4-52
Warning light..... 4-52

B

Back Trim Storage Box..... 5-132
Battery..... 6-28
Inspecting electrolyte level 6-30
Maintenance 6-30
Recharging 6-30
Replacement..... 6-30
Specifications 9-4
Battery Runs Out..... 7-20
Jump-starting..... 7-20
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)..... 4-112
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) switch 4-117
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System warning beep..... 7-54

Bluetooth® 5-90
Bluetooth® audio 5-108
Bluetooth® Hands-Free..... 5-99
Troubleshooting 5-119
Body Lubrication 6-24
Bonnet Release..... 6-14
Boot Lid 3-21
When boot lid cannot be opened... 7-55
Boot Light 5-123
Brakes
Brake assist..... 4-83
Foot brake..... 4-81
Pad wear indicator..... 4-83
Parking brake 4-82
Warning light..... 4-83

C

Capacities..... 9-6
Carbon Monoxide 3-26
Cell Phones 8-4
Child Restraint
Categories of child-restraint systems 2-21
Child-restraint precautions 2-16
Child-restraint system installation... 2-21
Child-restraint system suitability for various seat positions table..... 2-26
Installing child-restraint systems... 2-29
Clock 5-32
Coming Home Light 4-68
Console Box..... 5-131
Control Status Display 4-94
Convertible Top
Retractable Fastback 3-45
Soft top 3-37
Cruise Control..... 4-134
Cruise control switch..... 4-134
Cruise main indication (white)/ cruise set indication (green) 4-135
Cruise main indicator light (amber)/ cruise set indicator light (green)... 4-135
Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display 4-30
Cup Holder..... 5-126

D

Defogger
Mirror 4-78
Rear window 4-77
Dimensions 9-6
Direction Indicators 4-71
Door Locks..... 3-11
Drive selection 4-97
Driving In Flooded Area 3-65
Driving Tips
Automatic transmission..... 4-61
Driving in flooded area..... 3-65
Floor mat 3-61
Hazardous driving 3-60
Rocking the vehicle..... 3-62
Running-in..... 3-59
Saving fuel and protection of the environment..... 3-59
Winter driving 3-62
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)..... 4-88
DSC OFF indicator light 4-89
DSC OFF switch 4-89
TCS/DSC indicator light 4-88

E

Effectiveness Display..... 4-96
Electronic steering lock warning beep... 7-52
Emergency Starting
Push-starting..... 7-23
Starting a flooded engine..... 7-23
Emergency Stop Signal System 4-84
Emergency Towing
Towing description..... 7-27
Towing hooks 7-28
Emission Control System..... 3-25
Ending Screen Display..... 4-96

Engine
Bonnet release 6-14
Coolant 6-20
Engine compartment overview 6-16
Exhaust gas..... 3-26
Oil..... 6-17
Starting 4-5
Engine Coolant Temperature
Gauge 4-27, 4-36
Essential Information 6-2
Exhaust Gas 3-26
Exterior Care 6-53
Aluminium wheel maintenance..... 6-58
Bright-metal maintenance 6-57
Cavity protection..... 6-57
Convertible Top (Retractable Fastback)
Maintenance 6-61
Convertible Top (Soft Top)
Maintenance 6-58
Maintaining the finish 6-55
Paint damage touch-up..... 6-57
Plastic part maintenance..... 6-63
Undercoating 6-57

F

Flasher
Hazard warning 4-79
Headlights 4-63
Flat Tyre 7-3
Mounting the tyre..... 7-17
Removing a tyre 7-14
Floor Mat 3-61
Fluid
Brake/Clutch 6-22
Washer..... 6-23
Fluids
Classification 9-5
Foot Brake..... 4-81
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) 4-129
Fuel
Filler flap and cap..... 3-27
Gauge 4-27, 4-36
Requirements..... 3-24
Tank capacity 9-6
Fuel Consumption Display 4-94
Fuel Economy Monitor..... 4-93
Control status display..... 4-94
Effectiveness display..... 4-96
Ending screen display 4-96
Fuel consumption display 4-94
Fuel-Filler Flap
When fuel-filler flap cannot be
opened 7-26
Fuses 6-47
Panel description 6-50
Replacement..... 6-47

G

Gauges..... 4-24

H

Hazard Warning Flasher..... 4-79
Hazardous Driving 3-60
Head Restraint..... 2-8
Headlight Washer 4-77
Headlights
Coming home light..... 4-68
Control..... 4-63
Flashing 4-68
High-low beam..... 4-68
Leaving home light 4-69
Levelling 4-70
Running lights 4-70
Washer..... 4-77
High Beam Control System (HBC)... 4-103
High Beam Control System (HBC)
indicator light (green)..... 4-105
Hill Launch Assist (HLA)..... 4-84
Horn 4-79

I

i-ACTIVSENSE..... 4-100
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)..... 4-102
Adjustable speed limiter..... 4-122
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).... 4-112
Camera and sensors..... 4-100
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)... 4-129
High Beam Control System (HBC)..... 4-103
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-106
Radar sensors (rear)..... 4-132
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)... 4-119
i-ELOOP 4-90
Control status display..... 4-92
i-ELOOP indicator light..... 4-92
i-stop 4-13
i-stop OFF switch..... 4-21
Indicator light (Green)..... 4-18
Vehicle roll prevention function.... 4-22
Warning light (Amber)..... 4-18
i-stop warning beep..... 7-52
If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes..... 7-31
Ignition
Switch..... 4-4
Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep..... 7-51
Illuminated Entry System 5-124
Immobilizer System..... 3-53
Indicator Lights..... 4-45
Low engine coolant temperature... 4-47
Wrench 4-47
Inspecting Brake/Clutch Fluid Level... 6-22
Inspecting Coolant Level 6-20
Inspecting Engine Oil Level 6-20
Inspecting Washer Fluid Level..... 6-23
Instrument Cluster..... 4-24
Instrument Panel Illumination..... 4-28
Interior Care 6-64
Cleaning the window interiors 6-66
Instrument panel top maintenance... 6-66
Leather upholstery maintenance ... 6-65
Panel maintenance..... 6-66
Plastic part maintenance..... 6-66
Seat belt maintenance..... 6-64
Upholstery maintenance..... 6-65
Vinyl upholstery maintenance..... 6-65
Interior Lights
Boot light..... 5-123
Overhead light..... 5-123

J

Jack 7-6
Jump-Starting..... 7-20

K

Key Left-in-boot Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-52
Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) 7-52
Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep 7-51
Key Suspend Function 3-8
Keyless Entry System 3-3
Keys 3-2
Key suspend function..... 3-8
Transmitter 3-5

L

Label Information 9-2
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-106
LDWS switch 4-109
Lane Departure Warning sound 7-54
Lane-change Signals 4-72
Leaving Home Light 4-69
Light Bulbs
Replacement 6-38
Specifications 9-7
Lighting Control..... 4-63
Lights-on Reminder 7-49
Lubricant Quality 9-5

M

Maintenance
Information..... 6-2
Scheduled 6-3
Maintenance Monitor..... 6-10
Manual Transmission Operation 4-48
Message Indicated in Multi-information Display 7-46
Message Indicated on Display 7-47
Meters and Gauges..... 4-24
Mirror Defogger..... 4-78
Mirrors
Outside mirrors..... 3-30
Rearview mirror 3-32
Multi-information Display 4-33
Adjustable Speed Limiter Display ... 4-40
Average fuel economy..... 4-38
Compass Display..... 4-40
Cruise control set vehicle speed display 4-40
Current fuel economy..... 4-38
Distance-to-empty 4-38
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 4-36
Fuel gauge 4-36
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display 4-40
Maintenance monitor 4-39
Odometer and trip meter 4-35
Outside temperature display..... 4-37
Retractable Fastback Operation Display 4-41
Vehicle Speed Alarm 4-39
Warning (display indication)..... 4-41

O

Odometer and Trip Meter.....4-25, 4-35
Outside Mirrors..... 3-30
Outside Temperature Display.....4-29, 4-37
Outside temperature warning beep 7-53
Overhead Light 5-123
Overheating..... 7-24
Owner Maintenance
Closing the bonnet..... 6-15
Engine compartment overview 6-16
Key battery replacement 6-31
Opening the bonnet 6-14
Owner maintenance precautions ... 6-12

P

Parking Brake..... 4-82
Parking Sensor System 4-148
Park assist sensor system operation..... 4-150
Sensor detection range 4-150
Personalisation Features..... 9-10
Power Steering..... 4-99
Power Steering Warning Buzzer..... 7-53
Power Windows 3-34

R

Radar Sensors (Rear) 4-132
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 4-119
Rear Fog Light..... 4-70
Rear Window Defogger 4-77
Rearview Mirror..... 3-32
Recommended Oil 6-17
Recording of Vehicle Data 8-5
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country 8-2
Replacement
Fuse 6-47
Key battery..... 6-31
Light bulbs 6-38
Tyres..... 6-35
Wheel 6-36
Wiper..... 6-24
Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)... 7-52
Retractable Fastback 3-45
When the roof cannot be closed.... 7-60
Retractable fastback warning beep 7-51
Roadside Emergency Triangle Retaining Strap 7-2
Rocking the Vehicle 3-62
Running-In 3-59

S

SRS Air Bags
How the SRS air bags work 2-41
Limitations to SRS air bag 2-45
Monitoring..... 2-52
Passenger occupant classification system..... 2-47
SRS air bag deployment criteria ... 2-44
Supplementary restraint system components 2-39
Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment..... 3-59
Scheduled Maintenance 6-3
Seat..... 2-5
Seat Belt System 2-12
Emergency locking..... 2-11
Pregnant women..... 2-11
Seat belt precautions 2-9
Seat Side Box..... 5-131
Seat belt warning beep 7-50
Seats
Head restraint 2-8
Seat warmer..... 2-6
Security System
Immobilizer system..... 3-53
Theft-deterrent system 3-55
Soft top..... 3-37
Specifications 9-4
Speed Limiter Warning Beep..... 7-54
Speedometer..... 4-25
Starting the Engine..... 4-5
Steering Wheel..... 3-29
Horn..... 4-79
Storage Compartments..... 5-131
Back trim storage box 5-132
Console box..... 5-131
Seat side box 5-131
Sunvisors..... 5-123

T

Tachometer 4-26
Theft-Deterrent System 3-55
Three-flash Turn Signal 4-72
Towing
    Hook 7-28
    Towing caravans and trailers 3-66
Towing Description 7-27
Traction Control System (TCS) 4-87
    TCS/DSC indicator light 4-87
Transmitter 3-5
Trip Computer 4-30
Trip Meter 4-25, 4-35
Trouble
    Battery runs out 7-20
    Emergency starting 7-23
    Emergency towing 7-27
    Flat tyre 7-3
    Overheating 7-24
    Parking in an emergency 7-2
    When boot lid cannot be opened ... 7-55
    When fuel-filler flap cannot be opened 7-26
    When the roof cannot be closed 7-60
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Conventional Tyres) ... 4-140
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (Vehicle with Run-flat Tyres) 4-144
Tyre inflation pressure warning beep... 7-53
Tyres 6-33
    Flat tyre 7-3
    Replacing a tyre 6-35
    Replacing a wheel 6-36
    Snow tyres 3-63
    Specifications 9-8
    Tyre chains 3-64
    Tyre inflation pressure 6-34
    Tyre rotation 6-34

V

Vanity Mirrors 5-123
Vehicle Information Labels 9-2
Vehicle Speed Alarm 7-53

W

Warning Lights 4-42
Warning Sound is Activated 7-49
    120 km/h warning beep 7-53
    Active bonnet 7-50
    Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep 7-49
    Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System warning beep 7-54
    Electronic steering lock warning beep 7-52
    i-stop warning beep 7-52
    Ignition not switched off (STOP) warning beep 7-51
    Key left-in-boot warning beep (With the advanced keyless function) 7-52
    Key left-in-vehicle warning beep (With the advanced keyless function) 7-52
    Key removed from vehicle warning beep 7-51
    Lane Departure Warning sound 7-54
    Lights-on reminder 7-49
    Outside temperature warning beep ... 7-53
    Power steering warning buzzer 7-53
    Request switch inoperable warning beep (With the advanced keyless function) 7-52
    Retractable fastback warning beep ... 7-51
    Seat belt warning beep 7-50
    Speed limiter warning beep 7-54
    Tyre inflation pressure warning beep 7-53
    Vehicle speed alarm 7-53
Warranty 8-2
Windblocker 5-133

Windows
Power windows 3-34
Windscreen Washer..... 4-76
Windscreen Wipers 4-73
Winter Driving 3-62
Wiper
Replacing windscreen wiper blades..... 6-25

MEMO

8FL9 Form No. 8FL9-EE-16J

欧州(EC/UK)/一般(L/R) 英
Printed in Japan